



NZ PARLIAMENTARY COUNSEL OFFICE LENZ SYSTEM

GUIDE TO THE NEW ZEALAND LENZ SYSTEM DTDs

**SEPTEMBER 2015
PUBLIC RELEASE AS AT LENZ 16**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. THIS DOCUMENT	10
1.1. OVERVIEW	10
1.2. EXAMPLES.....	10
1.3. CONTENT MODEL DIAGRAMS	10
1.4. LENZ PUBLIC AND SYSTEM IDENTIFIERS.....	10
1.5. CHARACTER ENTITIES	11
1.5.1 OASIS Entity Files.....	11
1.5.2 Additional Character Entities	11
1.5.3 References	11
1.6. ATTRIBUTES AND ELEMENTS DECLARED IN THE LENZ DTDs BUT NOT PRESENT IN PUBLIC DATA	11
2. DTD DESIGN PRINCIPLES	13
2.1. LENZ RE-USE OF COMMON ELEMENTS.....	13
2.2. HIERARCHICAL STRUCTURE	13
2.3. ELEMENT NAMING	13
3. NZ ACT DTD.....	15
3.1. INTRODUCTION	15
3.2. ENTITIES REDEFINED	16
3.2.1 Entity: % deletion-status.meta.att	16
3.2.2 Entity: %change.tracked.elements;.....	16
3.2.3 Entity: %empowering-prov.model;.....	16
3.2.4 Entity: %authorisation.model;.....	16
3.2.5 Entity: %auto.label.att;.....	16
3.2.6 Entity: % reprints.officer.att;	17
3.3. TOP LEVEL ELEMENT	17
3.3.1 Entity: % act-stages.att	17
3.3.2 Entity: % act-terminated.att.....	17
3.3.3 Entity: % act-types.....	17
3.3.4 Entity: % reg-types	18
3.3.5 Entity: % doctype.local.att;.....	18
3.3.6 Top Level Element: act	18
3.4. MAJOR ACT ELEMENTS.....	22
3.4.1 Element cover.....	22
3.4.2 Element front	23
3.4.3 Element body.....	24
3.4.4 Element end	25
4. NZ REGULATION DTD	27
4.1. INTRODUCTION	27
4.2. ENTITIES REDEFINED	28
4.2.1 Entity: %deletion-status.meta.att;.....	28
4.2.2 Entity: % change.tracked.elements	28
4.2.3 Entity: %basic-phrase;.....	28
4.2.4 Entity: % phrase;	28
4.2.5 Entity: % reprints.officer.att;.....	28
4.3. TOP LEVEL ELEMENT	29
4.3.1 Entity: % act-types.....	29
4.3.2 Entity: % reg-types	29
4.3.3 Entity: % series-att	29
4.3.4 Entity: %reg-stages;	29

4.3.5	<i>Entity: %reg-terminated;</i>	30
4.3.6	<i>Entity: %doctype.local.atts</i>	31
4.3.7	<i>Top Level Element regulation</i>	31
4.4.	MAJOR REGULATION ELEMENTS.....	34
4.4.1	<i>Element cover</i>	34
4.4.2	<i>Element proclamation</i>	36
4.4.3	<i>Element front.</i>	37
4.4.4	<i>Element body</i>	38
4.4.5	<i>Element end</i>	39
5.	NZ BILL DTD	41
5.1.	INTRODUCTION	41
5.2.	ENTITIES REDEFINED	41
5.2.1	<i>Entity: %floating.elements;</i>	41
5.2.2	<i>Entity: %change.tracked.elements;</i>	41
5.2.3	<i>Entity: %basic-phrase;</i>	41
5.2.4	<i>Entity: %phrase;</i>	42
5.2.5	<i>Entity %notes.model;</i>	42
5.3.	TOP LEVEL ELEMENT BILL	42
5.3.1	<i>Entity: %reprints.officer.att;</i>	42
5.3.2	<i>Entity: %act-types</i>	42
5.3.3	<i>Entity: %reg-types</i>	42
5.3.4	<i>Entity %bill-types;</i>	43
5.3.5	<i>Entity %bill-stages;</i>	43
5.3.6	<i>Entity: %bill-terminated;</i>	43
5.3.7	<i>Entity: %doctype.local.atts</i>	44
5.3.8	<i>Element bill</i>	45
5.4.	MAJOR BILL ELEMENTS.....	47
5.4.1	<i>Element billdetail</i>	47
5.4.2	<i>Element cover</i>	49
5.4.3	<i>Element front</i>	49
5.4.4	<i>Element body</i>	50
5.4.5	<i>Element end</i>	51
5.5.	GENERAL BILL ELEMENTS	51
5.5.1	<i>Element ocboxnote</i>	51
5.5.2	<i>Element repnote</i>	52
5.5.3	<i>Element billnote</i>	52
5.5.4	<i>Element member</i>	53
5.5.5	<i>Element billtype</i>	53
5.6.	COMMENTARY ELEMENTS	54
5.6.1	<i>Element commentary</i>	54
5.6.2	<i>Element comm.lev1</i>	55
5.6.3	<i>Element comm.lev2</i>	55
5.6.4	<i>Element comm.lev3</i>	56
5.6.5	<i>Element comm.appendix</i>	56
5.6.6	<i>Element comm.quote.leg</i>	57
6.	NZ SOP DTD	59
6.1.	INTRODUCTION	59
6.2.	ENTITIES REDEFINED	59
6.2.1	<i>Entity: %change.tracked.elements;</i>	59
6.2.2	<i>Entity: %basic-phrase;</i>	59
6.2.3	<i>Entity: %phrase;</i>	59
6.2.4	<i>Entity %notes.model;</i>	60
6.3.	ENTITIES DEFINED.....	60

6.3.1	Entity: %sop.structure	60
6.4.	TOP LEVEL ELEMENT	60
6.4.1	Entity: % reprints.officer.att;	60
6.4.2	Entity %sop.stages;	60
6.4.3	Entity %sop-terminated;.....	60
6.4.4	Entity: % act-types.....	61
6.4.5	Entity: % reg-types	61
6.4.6	Entity: % doctype.local.atts.....	61
6.4.7	Top Level Element sop.....	62
6.5.	MAJOR SOP ELEMENTS.....	64
6.5.1	Element body.....	64
6.6.	GENERAL SOP ELEMENTS	65
6.6.1	Element sop.split.....	65
6.6.2	Element sop.amend.....	66
6.6.3	Element sop.part.....	67
6.6.4	Element sop.subpart	68
6.6.5	Element billref.....	68
6.6.6	Element billref.alt.....	69
6.6.7	Element motion.....	69
6.6.8	Element clause.ref.....	70
6.6.9	Element sop.newenact	70
6.6.10	Element sop.para.....	71
6.6.11	Element instrument.amend	73
7.	NZ BILL-SOP DTD	76
7.1.	INTRODUCTION	76
7.2.	ENTITIES REDEFINED	76
7.2.1	Entity: %bill-types;.....	76
7.2.2	Entity: %billsop-stages;	76
7.2.3	Entity: %billsop-terminated;.....	76
7.2.4	Element explnote.....	77
7.3.	TOP LEVEL ELEMENT SOP	78
7.3.1	Entity: %sop-stages;	78
7.3.2	Entity: %sop-terminated;	78
7.3.3	Entity: %sop-local-atts;	78
7.3.4	Entity: %sop-atts;	78
7.3.5	Element sop.....	78
7.4.	MAJOR BILL-SOP ELEMENTS.....	81
7.4.1	Element bill.sop.body	81
7.5.	GENERAL BILL-SOP ELEMENTS	82
7.5.1	Element date.....	82
7.5.2	Element billref.....	82
7.5.3	Element billref.alt.....	82
7.5.4	Element motion.....	82
8.	NZ CORE DTD	83
8.1.	INTRODUCTION	83
8.2.	DOCUMENTUM ATTRIBUTES	83
8.2.1	Entity %dctmatts;.....	83
8.2.2	Entity % dctlminkatts;	84
8.3.	NZGLS ATTRIBUTES:	85
8.3.1	Entity %nzgls.atts;	85
8.4.	FORMAT RELATED ENTITIES.....	86
8.4.1	Entity %font-size;.....	86
8.4.2	Entity %leading;	86

8.5.	CORE ENTITIES	86
8.5.1	Entity %href.att;	86
8.5.2	Entity %id.att;	86
8.5.3	Entity %lang.att;	87
8.5.4	Entity %security-types;	87
8.5.5	Entity %footer-types;	87
8.5.6	Entity %jurisdiction.att;	88
8.5.7	Entity %prov-types;	89
8.6.	GLOBAL ATTRIBUTES	89
8.6.1	Entity %global.att;	89
8.7.	STATUS RELATED ENTITIES	91
8.7.1	Entity %deletion-status.meta.att;	91
8.8.	PROCESSING ATTRIBUTES ENTITIES	91
8.8.1	Entity %processing.att;	91
	CHANGE TRACKING	92
8.8.2	Overview	92
8.8.3	Entity %insertion-types;	92
8.8.4	Entity %struckout-types;	93
8.8.5	Entity %changetrack-types;	93
8.8.6	Entity %insertion.att;	94
8.8.7	Entity %struckout.att;	94
8.8.8	Entity %standard-statuses.meta.att;	95
8.8.9	Element insertwords	96
8.8.10	Element struckoutwords	97
8.8.11	Entity %change.tracked.elements;	98
8.9.	FLOATING ELEMENTS	99
8.9.1	Element omitted-provs	99
8.9.2	Element option	99
8.9.3	Entity %floating.elements;	101
8.10.	PHRASE LEVEL ENTITIES FOR INLINE ELEMENTS	101
8.10.1	Entity %basic-phrase;	101
8.10.2	Entity %phrase;	101
8.11.	INLINE ELEMENTS	101
8.11.1	Element fraction	101
8.11.2	Element numerator	102
8.11.3	Element denominator	103
8.11.4	Element emphasis	104
8.11.5	Element subscript	105
8.11.6	Element superscript	105
8.11.7	Element field	106
8.11.8	Element leader	107
8.11.9	Element def-term	108
8.11.10	Element quote.in	109
8.11.11	Element citation	110
8.11.12	Element leg-title	111
8.11.13	Element brk	111
8.11.14	Element brk.header	112
8.11.15	Element graphic.inline	112
8.12.	ENTITIES RELATED TO TABLE MODELS.	114
8.12.1	Entity %yesorno;	114
8.12.2	Entity %titles; (Table title)	114
8.12.3	Entity %paracon;	114
8.12.4	Entitis % tbl.tgroup.att, % tbl.thead.att, % tbl.tbody.att, % tbl.colspec.att;	115
8.12.5	Entity %tbl.entry.att;	115
8.12.6	Entity %tbl.row.att;	115

8.12.7	Entity %tbl.table.att;.....	115
8.13.	MAJOR STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS.....	116
8.13.1	Entity: %body.....	116
8.13.2	Entity: %reprints.officer.att.....	116
8.13.3	Element part.....	117
8.13.4	Element subpart.....	119
8.13.5	Element external-document.....	120
8.14.	TITLES.....	121
8.14.1	Element title.....	121
8.14.2	Element title.alt.....	122
8.14.3	Element title.former.....	123
8.14.4	Element long-title.....	124
8.15.	HEADINGS AND SUBHEADINGS.....	125
8.15.1	Element heading.....	125
8.15.2	Element subheading.....	126
8.16.	CROSSHEADINGS.....	128
8.16.1	Element crosshead.....	128
8.16.2	Element ird-crosshead.....	130
8.16.3	Element subprov.crosshead.....	131
8.16.4	Element label-para.crosshead.....	133
8.17.	LABELS.....	134
8.17.1	Element label.....	134
8.18.	PROVISION RELATED STRUCTURES.....	136
8.18.1	Overview.....	136
8.18.2	Element prov.....	136
8.18.3	Element prov.body.....	137
8.18.4	Element subprov.....	138
8.18.5	Element example.....	139
8.18.6	Element cf (compare).....	140
8.19.	PARAGRAPHS.....	141
8.19.1	Entity %structure;.....	141
8.19.2	Element para.....	141
8.19.3	Element proviso.....	143
8.19.4	Element text.....	144
8.19.5	Element def-para.....	146
8.19.6	Element label-para.....	147
8.20.	SCHEDULES.....	148
8.20.1	Overview.....	148
8.20.2	Entity %schedule-types;.....	148
8.20.3	Entity %struct-types;.....	148
8.20.4	Element schedule.group.....	149
8.20.5	Element schedule.....	150
8.20.6	Element schedule.provisions.....	153
8.20.7	Element schedule.misc.....	155
8.20.8	Element schedule.forms.....	156
8.20.9	Element schedule.amendments.....	157
8.20.10	Element schedule.amendments.group1.....	158
8.20.11	Element schedule.amendments.group2.....	160
8.20.12	Element schedule.amendments.group3.....	161
8.20.13	Element head1.....	162
8.20.14	Element head2.....	164
8.20.15	Elements head3, head4, head5, head6,.....	165
8.20.16	Element empowering-prov.....	167
8.21.	CONVENTIONS AND TREATIES.....	167
8.21.1	Overview.....	167

8.21.2	<i>Entity %conv-types;</i>	168
8.21.3	<i>Element conv</i>	168
8.21.4	<i>Element conv.front</i>	169
8.21.5	<i>Element conv.body</i>	170
8.21.6	<i>Element conv.end</i>	171
8.22.	FORMS.....	172
8.22.1	<i>Element form</i>	172
8.22.2	<i>Element authorisation</i>	173
8.22.3	<i>Element form.body</i>	174
8.23.	PREAMBLES.....	174
8.23.1	<i>Overview</i>	174
8.23.2	<i>Element preamble</i>	174
8.23.3	<i>Element preamble-block (level 1 structure)</i>	175
8.23.4	<i>Elements preamble.headlev2 and preamble.headlev3</i>	177
8.24.	ELEMENTS RELATING TO ACTS.....	178
8.24.1	<i>Element enactment</i>	178
8.24.2	<i>Element assent</i>	179
8.24.3	<i>Element commencement</i>	179
8.25.	ELEMENTS RELATING TO REGULATIONS.....	180
8.25.1	<i>Element pursuant</i>	180
8.25.2	<i>Element gg</i>	180
8.25.3	<i>Element made</i>	181
8.25.4	<i>Element made.at</i>	182
8.25.5	<i>Element made.present</i>	182
8.25.6	<i>Element promulgation</i>	183
8.25.7	<i>Element gazette-date</i>	184
8.25.8	<i>Element issue-authority</i>	185
8.26.	ELEMENTS RELATING TO PROSPECTIVE CONSOLIDATIONS.....	186
8.26.1	<i>Element pcnote</i>	186
8.26.2	<i>Element legdetail</i>	186
8.26.3	<i>Element key</i>	187
8.27.	ELEMENTS RELATING TO AMENDING LEGISLATION.....	189
8.27.1	<i>Element amend</i>	189
8.27.2	<i>Element amend.in</i>	191
8.28.	ELEMENTS USED BY IRD.....	192
8.28.1	<i>Element ird-crosshead</i>	192
8.28.2	<i>Element ird.aids</i>	192
8.28.3	<i>Element term.list</i>	193
8.28.4	<i>Element term</i>	193
8.28.5	<i>Element readers-notes</i>	194
8.29.	ADMINISTERING OFFICE.....	195
8.29.1	<i>Element admin-office</i>	195
8.29.2	<i>Element ministry</i>	195
8.30.	QUOTED MATERIAL.....	196
8.30.1	<i>Element quote</i>	196
8.30.2	<i>Element quoted-heading</i>	197
8.30.3	<i>Element follow-text</i>	198
8.31.	SIGNATURE BLOCK AND ASSENT-BLOCK.....	199
8.31.1	<i>Element signature-block</i>	199
8.31.2	<i>Element assent-block</i>	200
8.31.3	<i>Element sig.para</i>	201
8.31.4	<i>Element sig.officer</i>	202
8.31.5	<i>Element sig.separator</i>	203
8.32.	EQUATIONS.....	204
8.32.1	<i>Element eqn</i>	204

8.32.2	<i>Element eqn-line</i>	205
8.32.3	<i>Element variable-def</i>	206
8.32.4	<i>Element variable</i>	207
8.33.	FIGURES AND GRAPHICS.....	207
8.33.1	<i>Element figure</i>	207
8.33.2	<i>Element graphic</i>	208
8.33.3	<i>Element graphic-text</i>	210
8.34.	LISTS.....	210
8.34.1	<i>Element list</i>	210
8.34.2	<i>Element item</i>	212
8.35.	TABLE OF CONTENTS	213
8.35.1	<i>Element Contents</i>	213
8.35.2	<i>Element contents-note</i>	214
8.35.3	<i>Element toc</i>	214
8.36.	CROSS REFERENCES	215
8.36.1	<i>Element intref</i>	215
8.36.2	<i>Element extref</i>	216
8.36.3	<i>Element pageref</i>	217
8.37.	FOOTNOTES.....	218
8.37.1	<i>Element footnote</i>	218
8.37.2	<i>Element footnote-ref</i>	219
8.38.	NOTES ELEMENTS	219
8.38.1	<i>Element notes</i>	219
8.38.2	<i>Element history</i>	221
8.38.3	<i>Element history-note</i>	222
8.38.4	<i>Element amended-provision</i>	223
8.38.5	<i>Element amendment-date</i>	223
8.38.6	<i>Element amending-operation</i>	224
8.38.7	<i>Element amending-provision</i>	224
8.38.8	<i>Element amending-leg</i>	225
8.38.9	<i>Element amending-instruction</i>	225
8.38.10	<i>Element editorial-note</i>	226
8.38.11	<i>Element query-note</i>	227
8.39.	AMENDS NOTES.....	227
8.39.1	<i>Overview</i>	227
8.39.2	<i>Element amends-note</i>	228
8.39.3	<i>Element amends-effective</i>	228
8.39.4	<i>Element amends-affect</i>	229
8.39.5	<i>Element amends-text</i>	230
8.39.6	<i>Element event</i>	230
8.39.7	<i>Element authority</i>	231
8.39.8	<i>Element range</i>	231
8.40.	LEGISLATION HISTORY	232
8.40.1	<i>Element leg-history</i>	232
8.40.2	<i>Element history-item</i>	233
8.40.3	<i>Element description</i>	234
8.40.4	<i>Element date</i>	235
8.40.5	<i>Element date.text</i>	235
8.41.	EXPLANATORY NOTES	236
8.41.1	<i>Element explnote</i>	236
8.41.2	<i>Element explnote.group</i>	238
8.41.3	<i>Element explnote.ris</i>	239
8.41.4	<i>Element explnote.subgroup</i>	240
8.41.5	<i>Element explnote.part</i>	241
8.41.6	<i>Element explnote.subpart</i>	242

8.41.7	<i>Elements explnote.crosshead, explnote.ird-crosshead, explnote.subhead1, explnote.subhead2</i>	243
8.41.8	<i>Element clause.desc</i>	244
8.41.9	<i>Element amend.clause.desc</i>	245
8.42.	REPRINTS	246
8.42.1	<i>Overview</i>	246
8.42.2	<i>No Square Brackets or Ellipses</i>	246
8.42.3	<i>Element reprint-date</i>	246
8.42.4	<i>Element cover.reprint-note</i>	247
8.42.5	<i>Element end.reprint-note</i>	247
8.42.6	<i>Element reprint.index</i>	248
8.42.7	<i>Element reprint.notes</i>	249
8.42.8	<i>Element reprint.note</i>	249
8.42.9	<i>Element reprint.amend</i>	250
8.43.	SKELETONS	250
8.43.1	<i>Entity %skeleton.meta.att;</i>	250
8.43.2	<i>Element skeletons</i>	251
8.43.3	<i>Element skeleton.act</i>	252
8.43.4	<i>Element skeleton.act.cover</i>	253
8.43.5	<i>Element skeleton.act.front</i>	254
8.43.6	<i>Element skeleton.act.body</i>	254
8.43.7	<i>Element skeleton.reg</i>	255
8.43.8	<i>Element skeleton.reg.cover</i>	256
8.43.9	<i>Element skeleton.reg.front</i>	257
8.43.10	<i>Element skeleton.reg.body</i>	258
8.43.11	<i>Element skeleton.reg.end</i>	258
9.	TABLE DTD	260
9.1.	INTRODUCTION	260
9.2.	ENTITIES	260
9.3.	TABLE ELEMENTS	261
9.3.1	<i>Element table</i>	261
9.3.2	<i>Element tgroup</i>	262
9.3.3	<i>Element colspec</i>	263
9.3.4	<i>Element thead</i>	264
9.3.5	<i>Element tbody</i>	265
9.3.6	<i>Element row</i>	266
9.3.7	<i>Element entry</i>	267
APPENDIX I – INTENDED USE OF AMENDS-NOTE		270
PURPOSE OF AMENDS-NOTE		270
DESIGN OF AMENDS-NOTE		270
<i>Content model</i>		270
<i>Identification of the amending content object</i>		270
<i>Identification of the amended content object</i>		271
<i>The date on which the amendment takes place</i>		273
<i>Replacement Text</i>		274
ANTICIPATED REVISIONS OF THE DEFINITION OF AMENDS-NOTE		276
WORKED EXAMPLE		276
GLOSSARY		279
ALPHABETIC INDEX OF ELEMENTS		283

1. THIS DOCUMENT

1.1. Overview

This publically released version of the DTD Guide describes each of the DTDs in the New Zealand PCO's LENZ DTD set. It is a slightly amended version of a PCO working document. It is provided as general information to anyone using the LENZ DTD set. This document may contain passing references to PCO internal documents, which will not be provided. It may not be updated for every DTD release.

1.2. Examples

Examples are used to illustrate the use of each element. The examples are intended to be illustrative only and may not be complete or valid, particularly where an element containing many sub-elements is being illustrated.

XML comments are sometimes used in the examples to aid understanding. The format of an XML comment is as follows:

```
<!--This is a comment-->
```

1.3. Content Model Diagrams

Content model diagrams have been provided as a visual illustration for some DTD elements.

1.4. LENZ Public and System Identifiers

Both Public and System Identifiers are used in the DTDs. This allows for XML compliance. While some applications are flexible in being able to interpret Public Identifiers, others such as Documentum require the System identifier. Most XML parsers seem to ignore the Public Identifiers.

Public Identifiers for DTDs:

```
"-//NZPCO//DTD Legislation Act/EN"  
"-//NZPCO//DTD Statutory Regulation/EN"  
"-//NZPCO//DTD Legislation Bill/EN"  
"-//NZPCO//DTD SOP/EN"  
"-//NZPCO//DTD Core Elements/EN"  
"-//OASIS//DTD XML Exchange Table Model 19990315/EN"
```

Public Identifiers for ISO Character Entity sets:

```
"//ENTITIES Numeric and Special Graphic//EN/XML"  
"//ENTITIES Publishing//EN/XML"  
"//ENTITIES General Technical//EN/XML"  
"//ENTITIES Added Latin 1//EN/XML"  
"//ENTITIES Added Latin 2//EN/XML"  
"//ENTITIES Diacritical Marks//EN/XML"  
"//ENTITIES Greek Letters//EN/XML"  
"//ENTITIES Greek Symbols//EN/XML"  
"//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Binary Operators//EN/XML"
```

1.5. Character Entities

1.5.1 OASIS Entity Files

The following ISO character entity files cater for all special characters required in NZ legislation, including macrons.

&ISO-num;	ISO 8879-1986//ENTITIES Numeric and Special Graphic//EN
&ISO-pub;	ISO 8879-1986//ENTITIES Publishing//EN
&ISO-tech;	ISO 8879-1986//ENTITIES General Technical//EN
&ISO-lat1;	ISO 8879-1986//ENTITIES Added Latin 1//EN
&ISO-lat2;	ISO 8879-1986//ENTITIES Added Latin 2//EN
&ISO-dia;	ISO 8879-1986//ENTITIES Diacritical Marks//EN
&ISO-grk1;	ISO 8879-1986//ENTITIES Greek Letters//EN
&ISO-grk2;	ISO 8879-1986//ENTITIES Greek Symbols//EN
&ISO-amsb	ISO 8879:1986//ENTITIES Added Math Symbols: Binary Operators//EN

The System Identifiers point to a set of *.ent files:

```
" iso-num.ent"
" iso-pub.ent"
" iso-tech.ent"
" iso-lat1.ent"
" iso-lat2.ent"
" iso-dia.ent"
" iso-grk1.ent"
" iso-grk2.ent"
" iso-amsb.ent"
```

1.5.2 Additional Character Entities

The following additional character entity declarations have been included at the end of the Core DTD file:

```
<!ENTITY euro "&#x20AC;"> <!-- euro symbol: € -->
```

1.5.3 References

For an introduction and general reference to character entities see <http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/specs/wd-docbook-xmlcharent-0.3.html>

For a list of character references, their names, and glyphs see the *Unicode Relational Database Utility* at <http://rocky.uta.edu/doran/urdu/search.cgi?map=sgml>.

For details about the representation of character entities in browsers see *Entities for Symbols and Greek Letters* at <http://www.htmlhelp.com/reference/html40/entities/symbols.html>

1.6. Attributes and elements declared in the LENZ DTDs but not present in public data

The elements listed below are declared in the LENZ DTDs but are removed from data that is published to the NZL website.

- //@official
- //@pco.num
- //@drafted.by
- //@drafters.name
- //@revision.no

- //@security
- //@agency.code
- //@date.instructed
- //@instructing.office
- //@reprints.officer
- //@reprints.no
- //@doc.id
- //@doc.title
- //@doc.context
- //@assent-copy
- //@date.instructed
- //@instructing.office
- //@official
- //@in.amend
- //@pco.suffix
- Any LENZ component-specific XML namespaced elements

2. DTD DESIGN PRINCIPLES

2.1. LENZ Re-use of Common elements

Where possible common elements have been defined in the Table DTD and in the NZ Core DTD for use in each of the “Top-Level” DTDs. Where necessary, elements are redefined as required in the top-level DTDs to overrule their base-level definitions.

Within the DTDs, each file to be used is referenced via a defined System identifier and/or a Public identifier as in the following example:

```
<!ENTITY % NZCore PUBLIC "-//NZPCO//DTD Core Elements//EN"
  "NZCore.dtd" >
%NZCore;
```

Lower level, or fragment DTDs are called by the higher level DTDs. The fragment DTD File is included into the higher level DTD by a statement such as “%NZCore;”. In effect the parser simply picks up the Core DTD and pastes it into the higher level DTD at the point where “%NZCore” appears.

Entities defined in a lower level DTD may be redefined (or overwritten) by a definition in the higher level DTD. The parser uses the first occurrence of each entity definition. Hence entity declarations and redefinitions must appear in the correct order.

2.2. Hierarchical structure

The DTDs define a hierarchical model for legislation to reflect its semantic structure. The hierarchical model serves the following objectives:

- (a) To support the generation of a Table of Contents (TOC) for print and electronic publications.
- (b) To support the generation of unique identifiers for numbered objects in the legislation.
- (c) To provide for flexible editing and publishing of legislation in convenient components.
- (d) To facilitate manipulation of logical structures by editors or applications.

2.3. Element naming

Generic element names have been used in the DTDs. For example elements <prov>, <subprov> and related elements use the generic terms “prov” and “subprov” to refer to items that may variously be known as “clauses” (in Bills), sections (in Acts), rules (in a Statutory Regulation of type “Rule”), and so on.

Conventional names for provisions can vary with context within a document. For example, provisions in the body of an Act are called “sections”, but those found within a schedule of that Act may be called “clauses”, “articles” etc. A @prov-type attribute has been provided for use in schedules to signal the required mapping in the drafting applications.

The name of clauses in Regulations varies according to the type of instrument, as defined by its title. The numbering pattern is however common

Regulations	Orders and Notices	Rules
Part		
1 (regulation)	1 (clause)	1 (rule)
(1) (subclause)	(1) (subclause)	(1) (subclause)
(a) (paragraph)	(a) (paragraph)	(a) (paragraph)
(i) (subparagraph)	(i) (subparagraph)	(i) (subparagraph)
(A) (sub-subparagraph)	(A) (sub-subparagraph)	(A) (sub-subparagraph)

Bylaws	Codes	
(to be confirmed)		
1 (bylaw)	1 (clause)	
(1) (subclause)	(1) (subclause)	
(a) (paragraph)	(a) (paragraph)	
(i) (subparagraph)	(i) (subparagraph)	
(A) (sub-subparagraph)	(A) (sub-subparagraph)	

3. NZ ACT DTD

3.1. Introduction

This DTD contains the high level structures used in New Zealand Acts. The core body of elements being organised by the Act DTD are found in the Core DTD.

This DTD provides for Acts in the following formats:

- Assent copy (strictly speaking the legislation is not an Act until it has been assented. However, for structural purposes the Assent copies have all the characteristics of an Act, and comply with the Act DTD).
- Statute copy: as published in the annual volumes.
- Electronic compilation: An “E-print”.
- Reprint (a paper reprint).
- Draft reprint
- Prospective Consolidation.
- Repealed, expired or spent versions.

The nzact DTD caters for the following Act types:

Type	Examples
public	<i>Property (Relationships) Act 1976</i> [1976 No 166].
local	<i>Masterton Trust Lands Act 1966</i> [1966 No 27]. <i>Far North District Council (Rating and Loans Validation) Act 1995</i> [1995–5]. <i>Ashburton Borough Cemetery Act 1955</i> [1955-2]. <i>Auckland Harbour Board Act 1912</i> [1912-22]. <i>Wellington Harbour Board Act 1879</i> [1879-13].
private	<i>Eastwoodhill Trust Act 1975</i> [1975 No 1]. <i>General Finance Limited Act 1988</i> [1988 No 2]. <i>Museum of Transport and Technology Act 2000</i> [2000-1]. <i>General Finance Limited Act 1988</i> [1988-2].
provincial	<i>Education Reserves Ordinance 1864</i> [1864, Sess. 19, No 184].
imperial	<i>Naval Prize Act 1864</i> . [1864-25].

Public Identifier:

"-//NZPCO//DTD Legislation Act/EN"

Shared Components:

The Act DTD calls the NZCore DTD. The NZCore DTD in turn calls the Table DTD and the OASIS Character Entities.

3.2. Entities Redefined

3.2.1 Entity: % deletion-status.meta.att

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % deletion-status.meta.att "deletion-status (not-in-force
| repealed | expired | spent) #IMPLIED" >
```

Description:

Provides the status of structures (Part, Provision, etc) in the Act. This is needed for example to identify repealed structures in the Table of Contents.

3.2.2 Entity: %change.tracked.elements;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % change.tracked.elements "struckoutwords | insertwords" >
```

Description:

Used to collect the two change tracking elements together under a single entity.

A duplicate definition is required in this DTD so that % change.tracked.elements; is available to be used in the declaration of the entity %empowering-prov.model; and %authorisation.model;.

3.2.3 Entity: %empowering-prov.model;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % empowering-prov.model "(#PCDATA | citation
| %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
```

Description:

Describes which provision(s) the piece of legislation is “empowering”.

This entity is redefined here so that element <changeable> is excluded from use in Acts.

3.2.4 Entity: %authorisation.model;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % authorisation.model "(#PCDATA | citation
| %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
```

Description:

Describes which provision(s) the piece of legislation is "authorising" legislation in relation to a form. This element is used exclusively in forms.

This entity is redefined here so that element <changeable> is excluded from use in Acts.

3.2.5 Entity: %auto.label.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % auto.label.att "auto.number (yes | no | never) 'no'
restart.at CDATA #IMPLIED" >
```

Description:

Resets the auto numbering properties to ‘no’ for Acts

3.2.6 Entity: % reprints.officer.att;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % reprints.officer.att "reprints.officer CDATA #IMPLIED">

Description:

This entity is redefined here so that Acts and chunk elements of Acts will have a reprints.officer attribute.

3.3. Top Level Element

3.3.1 Entity: % act-stages.att

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % act-stages " (assent | in-force | not-in-force | prospective-consolidation | reprint-draft | reprint) ">

Description:

The stage attribute caters for the following stages in the life-cycle of an Act:

Stage	Description
assent	Assent copy. Act as assented
in-force	Act is in force
not-in-force	Act is not yet in force
prospective-consolidation	Act is a prospective consolidation
reprint-draft	Act is a draft reprint
reprint	An official reprint

3.3.2 Entity: % act-terminated.att

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % act-terminated "(repealed | expired | spent)" >

Description:

The terminated attribute caters for the following end states in the Act life-cycle:

Stage	Description
repealed	Act has been repealed by another Act.
expired	Act has expired.
spent	Act is spent.

3.3.3 Entity: % act-types

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % act-types "(public | local | private | provincial |

imperial)">

Description:

This is a duplicate of the same entity declared in all other DTD files. Duplication necessary due to absence from DTD architecture of an atomic declarations file.

3.3.4 Entity: % reg-types

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reg-types "(letterspatent | bylaw | determination |
direction | notice | order | proclamation |
regulation | rule | warrant )">
```

Description:

This is a duplicate of the same entity declared in all other DTD files. Duplication necessary due to absence from DTD architecture of an atomic declarations file.

3.3.5 Entity: % doctype.local.atts

Declaration:

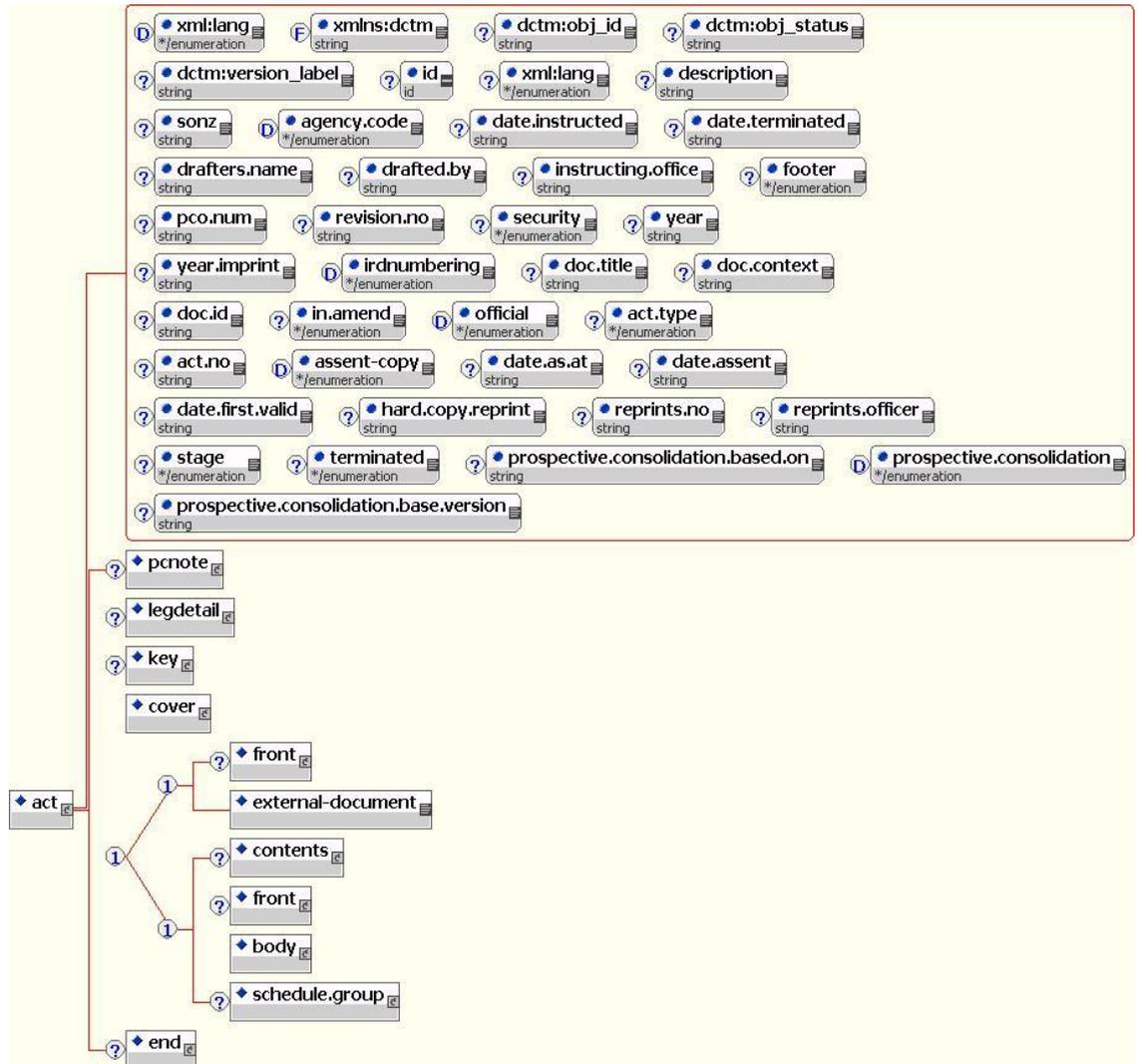
```
<!ENTITY % doctype.local.atts
"act.type          %act-types;      'public'
act.no             CDATA            #IMPLIED
assent-copy       (yes | no)       'yes'
date.as.at        CDATA            #IMPLIED
date.assent       CDATA            #IMPLIED
date.first.valid  CDATA            #IMPLIED
hard.copy.reprint CDATA            #IMPLIED
reprints.no       CDATA            #IMPLIED
%reprints.officer.att;
stage             %act-stages;      'assent'
terminated        %act-terminated; #IMPLIED
prospective.consolidation.based.on CDATA #IMPLIED
prospective.consolidation (T | F)  #IMPLIED
prospective.consolidation.base.version CDATA #IMPLIED">
```

Description:

This entity is used in conjunction with %global.atts (declared in nzcore.dtd) to provide declaration of metadata attributes for all whole-document and chunk attribute lists.

3.3.6 Top Level Element: act

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % act.model "(pcnote? , legdetail? , key? , cover , ((front? , external-document) | (contents? , front? , body , schedule.group?)) , end?)">
```

```
<!ENTITY % act.atts "
    %global.atts;
    %doctype.local.atts;">
```

```
<!ELEMENT act %act.model;>
```

```
<!ATTLIST act %act.atts ;>
```

Description:

This is the top-level element in the Act DTD.

Note that if element /act/external-document is to be used, then elements /act/contents, /act/body and /act/schedule.group may not be. This is to minimise the possibility of human error creating discrepancies between the content and formatting of:

- Substantive content of published hardcopy and website PDF - which will be as in the third party document referenced by the @fileref attribute of element //external-document; and
- Substantive content of published HTML - which would depend on hand-crafted replication in XML of the content of third party document.

Example of Use:

```
<!DOCTYPE act PUBLIC "-//NZPCO//DTD Legislation Act/EN"
"nzact.dtd">
<act id="ACT-NZL-PUB.1999-143"
act.type="public"
act.no="143">
<cover>
...
</act>
```

See Glossary: Acts

Children: pcnote legdetail key cover contents front external-document body
 schedule.group end

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label	Documentum related attributes. See Section 8.2.
id	Unique identifier for the document
description sonz	NZ Government Locator Service Attributes. See %nzgls.att; at section 8.3.
agency.code	Values: (IRD PCO OC) default PCO
date.instructed	Date instructed. Note: this attribute is thought to be redundant in Acts.
date.terminated	Date terminated
drafters.name	Name/s of user/s whose profile of the document includes the element bearing the attribute.
drafted.by	Name/s of the document's drafter/s.
instructing.office	Instructing office
footer	Values (draft-confidence draft-provisional gazette-only gazette-draft-confidence gazette-draft-provisional prospective-consolidation draft-consultation unofficial-reprint) See %footer-types; at 8.5.5 .
pco.num	PCO's number
revision.no	Revision number
security	Allowed values: (in.confidence sensitive confidential restricted secret top.secret).

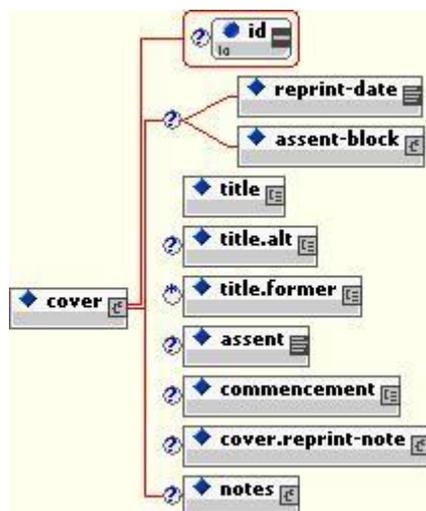
Attribute	Description
	See section 8.5.4
year	The year of publication of the document. Format is "YYYY"
year.imprint	The year to be used in imprint for hardcopy/PDF renditions.
irdnumbering	Whether the document uses Income Tax Act-style numbering. Significant only if autonumbering is applied.
act.type	Values: (public local private provincial imperial). See Section 4.1 above
act.no	Number of the act. Format is normally a digit from 1 to 999. No zero padding.
assent-copy	Whether the current version of the Act is the assent copy or not.
date.as.at	Date to which amendments have been consolidated into the current version of the Act
date.assent	Date of assent.
date.first.valid	Date from which the particular version of the act is valid.
hard.copy.reprint	
official	yes: Act has been officialised by PCO. Default value. no: Act has not been officialised. Note that attribute @official also functions as a selector for inclusion of optional "imprint" component in renditions.
reprints.no	Reprint tracking number for draft reprint
reprints.officer	Reprint Officer
stage	Allowed values: (assent in-force not-in-force prospective-consolidation reprint-draft reprint) See Section 4.3.1 above
terminated	Allowed values: (repealed expired spent) See Section 3.3.2 above.
irdnumbering	Default is "no". If value is "yes" then autonumbering tools should apply IRD-style numbering to the element and its descendants.
doc.title	See 8.6.
doc.context	See 8.6.
doc.id	See 8.6.
in.amend	See 8.6.
prospective.consolidation.based.on	The XML Id of the document on which the prospective consolidation is based.

Attribute	Description
prospective.consolidation	T /F, set to T (true) if the document is a prospective consolidation Note that this attribute is redundant. Its meaning duplicates that of @stage="prospective-consolidation". However dependencies have accrued in code written to customise functionality for prospective consolidations.
prospective.consolidation.base.version	The Documentum ID of the specific version of the document on which the prospective consolidation is based.

3.4. Major Act Elements

3.4.1 Element cover

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % cover.model
  "((reprint-date | assent-block)?, title, title.alt?,
  title.former*, assent?, commencement?,
  cover.reprint-note?, notes?)" >
<!ENTITY % cover.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT cover %cover.model; >
<!ATTLIST cover %cover.atts; >

```

Description:

This is a container element modeling information that appears on the cover of an Act.

Technical Note:

Element ./title.alt allows for possibility of two titles.

In Acts whose title has been amended, element //title.former provides storage of the former titles. Content of //title.former may be suppressed in renditions since its main purpose to provide the metadata that will allow systems to re-direct users that look or search for the document under one of its former titles.

A reprint contains a Cover Note (<cover.reprint.note>), which itself contains the Administering Office (<admin-office>). An Act as enacted, or a Regulation as made, shows the Administering Office at the end of the document.

Example of Use:

```
<cover>
<title>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001</title>
<reference>2001 No 5</reference>
<assent>3 April 2001</assent>
<commencement>see <intref>section 2</intref></commencement>
</cover>
```

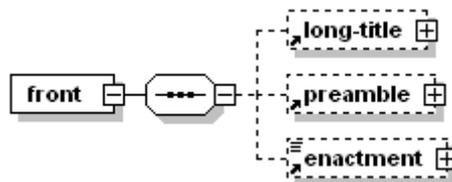
Children: reprint-date assent-block title title.alt assent commencement cover.reprint-note notes

Used by: act

Attributes: id

3.4.2 Element front

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % front.model "(long-title?, preamble?, enactment?)" >
<!ENTITY % front.atts "%id.atts;
                    %lang.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT front %front.model; >
<!ATTLIST front %front.atts; >
```

Description:

Used in <act> element. This is a container element for information that appears as part of "front" or "introductory" sections.

Example of Use:

```
<front>
<enactment>BE IT ENACTED by the Parliament of New Zealand as follows:</enactment>
</front>
```

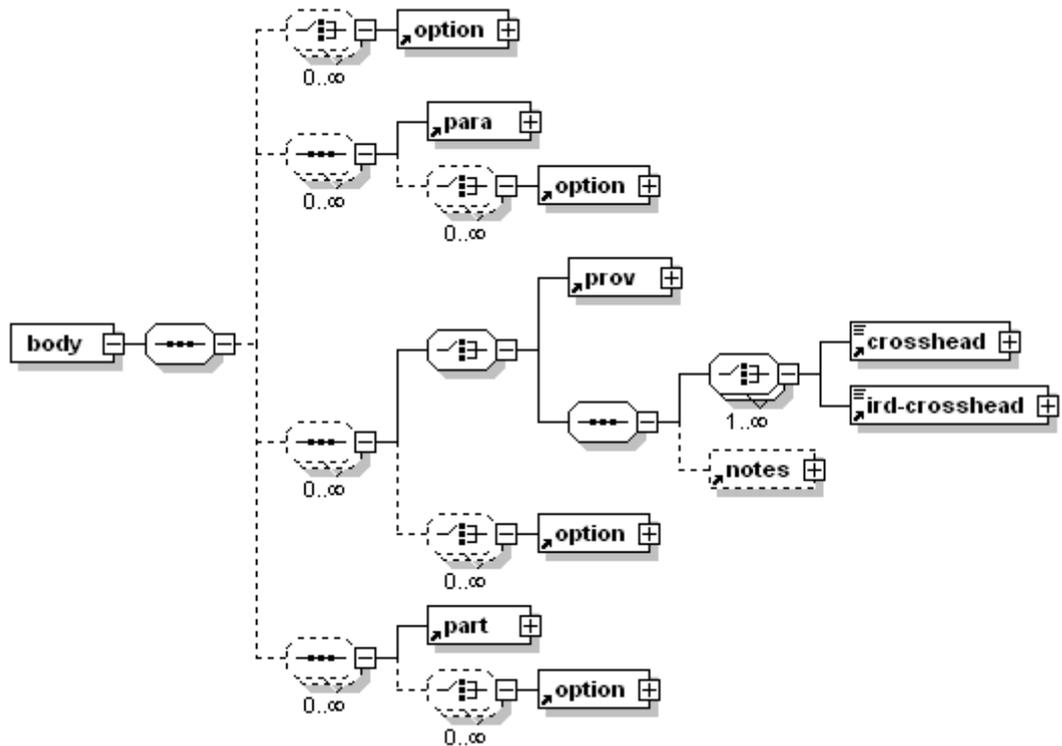
Children: long-title preamble enactment

Used in: act

Attributes: id xml:lang

3.4.3 Element body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % body.atts "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    prov-type %prov-types; #REQUIRED" >
<!ELEMENT body (%body.model); >
<!ATTLIST body %body.atts; >
```

Description:

Used in <act> element. This is a container element for information that appears in the body of an Act. Note that the content model uses parameter entity %body.model, which is declared in the Core DTD.

Example of Use:

```
<body prov-type="section">
<prov><label>1</label><heading>Short Title and commencement</heading>
<prov.body>
...
</prov.body>
</prov>
<part id="ACT-NZL-PUB.1976-166.BDY.PT.1">
<label>1</label><heading>Outline of This Act</heading>
...
</part>
</body>
```

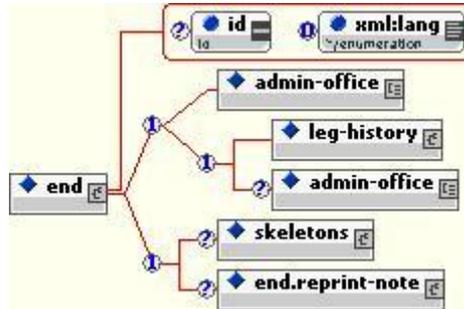
Children: option para prov crosshead ird-crosshead notes part

Used in: act skeleton.act skeleton.reg

Attributes: id xml:lang prov-type

3.4.4 Element end

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % end.model "((admin-office | (leg-history,
    admin-office?)) | (skeletons?,
    end.reprint-note?))"><!ENTITY % end.atts "%id.atts;
    %lang.atts;"
    >
<!ELEMENT end %end.model;
    >
<!ATTLIST end %end.atts;
    >
```

Description:

Used in <act> element. This is a container element for information that appears in the back of an Act.

Example of Use: Act as assented

```
<end>
<leg-history><heading>Legislative History</heading>
<history-item>
<date>24 March 1998</date>
<description>Introduction and first reading (Bill 109-1)</description>
</history-item>
...
<admin-office>This Act is administered in the <ministry>Ministry of Justice </ministry>.</admin-office>
</end>
```

Example of Use: Act reprinted

```
<end>
<skeletons>
<skeleton.act type="public" year="1983" act.no="28">
...
</skeleton.act>
<skeleton.act type="public" year="1987" act.no="151">
...
</skeleton.act>
<skeleton.act type="public" year="2001" act.no="5">
...
</skeleton.act>
</skeletons>
<end.reprint-note>
...
</end.reprint-note>
</end>
```

Children: leg-history admin-office skeletons end.reprint-note

Used in: act

Attributes: id xml:lang

4. NZ REGULATION DTD

4.1. Introduction

The NZ Regulation DTD contains the high level structural models to capture the documents making up the statutory regulations series. The NZRegs DTD uses the core structures as set out in the NZCore DTD (as described below). There is enough variance between Statutory Regulations series and Acts to require a separate DTD.

The NZ Regulation DTD provides for Regulations in the following formats:

- Draft Regulations and Signature Copy: strictly speaking the legislation is not a Regulation until it has been made. However, for structural purposes the Signature Copy has all of the characteristics of a made Regulation.
- Statute copy: As published in the annual volumes.
- Electronic compilation: an “E-print”
- Reprint (a paper reprint).
- Draft reprint
- Prospective consolidation.
- Revoked, expired or spent versions.

The NZReg DTD caters for the following regulation types:

Type	Description/ example
letterspatent	<i>Annexation of the Kermadec Group 1887</i>
bylaw	<i>Abel Tasman National Park Bylaws 1981 (SR1981/62).</i>
determination	<i>Civil List (Annuities) Determination 2001</i>
direction	
notice	<i>Accident Insurance (Accredited Employers Framework) Amendment Notice 2000. (SR 2000/121)</i>
order	<i>Takeovers Code Approval Order Extension of the Boundaries of the Colony of New Zealand to the Cook Group 1901</i> <i>Accident Compensation (increased Amounts) Order 1992 (SR 1992/112)</i> <i>Samoa Death Duties Order Amendment Ordinance 1955</i>
proclamation	<i>Coinage Proclamation 1939</i>
regulation	<i>Misuse of Drug Regulations 1977 (SR 1977/37)</i>
rule	<i>Court of Appeal Civil Rules 1997 (SR 1997/180)</i>
warrant	<i>New Zealand Armed Forces Award (SR 1985/89)</i>

Public Identifier:

"-//NZPCO//DTD Statutory Regulation//EN"

Shared Components:

The Reg DTD calls the NZCore DTD . The NZCore DTD in turn calls the Table DTD and the ISO Character Entities.

4.2. Entities Redefined

4.2.1 Entity: %deletion-status.meta.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % deletion-status.meta.att "deletion-status (not-in-force
| revoked | expired | spent) #IMPLIED" >
```

Description:

Provides the status of structures in the the Regulation. This attribute will be used for compilation and Reprints to indicate that a provision or part is no longer in force.

4.2.2 Entity: % change.tracked.elements

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % change.tracked.elements "struckoutwords | insertwords" >
```

Description:

Used to collect the two change tracking elements together under a single entity.

A duplicate definition is required in this DTD so that % change.tracked.elements; is available to be used in the declaration of the entity %basic-phrase;

4.2.3 Entity: %basic-phrase;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % basic-phrase "#PCDATA | emphasis | superscript |
subscript | fraction | %change.tracked.elements;" >
```

Description:

Unchanged from the declaration in the Core DTD, but is required in the Regulation DTD because it is used in the redefinition of %phrase;.

4.2.4 Entity: % phrase;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % phrase "%basic-phrase; | footnote | footnote-ref |
field | leader | def-term | citation | quote.in |
graphic.inline | changeable">
```

Description:

In order to cater for Draft Regulations as well as Regulations, the addition of element <changeable> is required.

4.2.5 Entity: % reprints.officer.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reprints.officer.att "reprints.officer CDATA #IMPLIED">
```

Description:

This entity is redefined here so that Regulations and chunk elements of Regulations will have a reprints.officer attribute.

4.3. Top Level Element

4.3.1 Entity: % act-types

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % act-types "(public | local | private | provincial | imperial)">
```

Description:

This is a duplicate of the same entity declared in all other DTD files. Duplication necessary due to absence from DTD architecture of an atomic declarations file.

4.3.2 Entity: % reg-types

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reg-types "(letterspatent | bylaw | determination | direction | notice | order | proclamation | regulation | rule | warrant )">
```

Description:

This is a duplicate of the same entity declared in all other DTD files. Duplication necessary due to absence from DTD architecture of an atomic declarations file.

4.3.3 Entity: % series-att

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % series-att "series (statutory-regulation | legislative-instrument) 'statutory-regulation' ">
```

Description:

This declares the @series attribute applied to the /regulation element (via %doctype.local.atts, see Section 4.3.6) and /skeleton.reg (see Section 8.43.7) to differentiate Statutory Regulation from Legislative Instrument documents.

4.3.4 Entity: %reg-stages;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reg-stages "(draft | consultation-draft | signature | signature-non-gg | not-in-force | in-force | prospective-consolidation | reprint-draft | reprint)">
```

Description:

The stage attribute defines the stages in the life cycle of a Regulation.

stage	Description/ example
draft	Draft Regulation
consultation-	Consultation draft of Regulation.

stage	Description/ example
draft	
signature	Signature Copy when signer is Governor-General.
signature-non-gg	Signature copy when signer is not the Governor-General.
not-in-force	Regulation is not yet in force.
in-force	Regulation is in force.
prospective-consolidation	Regulation is a prospective consolidation.
reprint-draft	Regulation is a draft reprint.
reprint	Official reprint of the Regulation.

4.3.5 Entity: %reg-terminated;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % reg-terminated "(expired | revoked | spent | disallowed)" >

Description:

The terminated attribute defines the end states in the Regulation life cycle.

stage	Description/ example
expired	The Regulation has expired.
revoked	The Regulation has been revoked by another Regulation or Act.
spent	The Regulation is spent
disallowed	The Regulations have been disallowed.

4.3.6 Entity: %doctype.local.atts

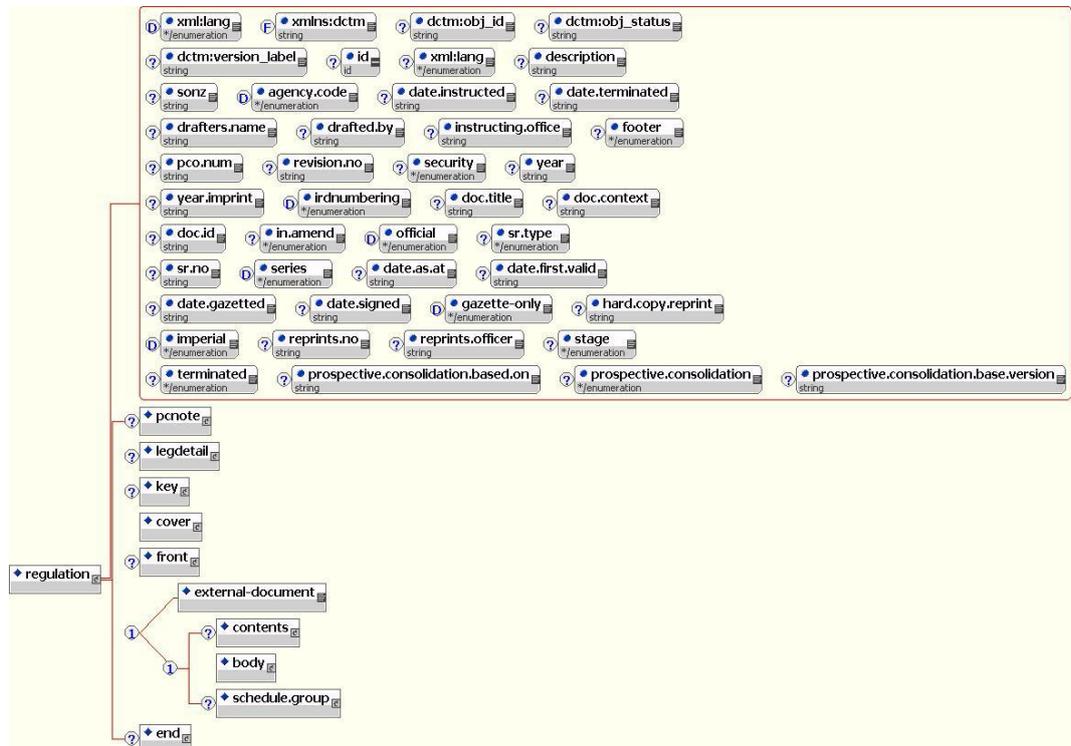
Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY %doctype.local.atts
"sr.type %reg-types; 'regulation'
sr.no CDATA #IMPLIED
%series-att;
date.as.at CDATA #IMPLIED
date.first.valid CDATA #IMPLIED
date.gazetted CDATA #IMPLIED
date.signed CDATA #IMPLIED
gazette-only (yes | no) 'no'
hard.copy.reprint CDATA #IMPLIED
imperial (yes | no) 'no'
reprints.no CDATA #IMPLIED
%reprints.officer.att;
stage %reg-stages; 'draft'
terminated %reg-terminated; #IMPLIED
prospective.consolidation.based.on CDATA #IMPLIED
prospective.consolidation (T | F) #IMPLIED
prospective.consolidation.base.version CDATA #IMPLIED">
```

This entity is used in conjunction with %global.atts (declared in nzcore.dtd) to provide declaration of metadata attributes for all whole-document and chunk attribute lists.

4.3.7 Top Level Element regulation

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % regulation.model "(pcnote? , legdetail? , key? , cover , front? , (external-document | (contents? , body , schedule.group?)) , end?)">
<!ENTITY % regulation.atts "
%global.atts;
```

```
%doctype.local.atts;">
<!ELEMENT regulation %regulation.model;>
<!ATTLIST regulation %regulation.atts; >
```

Description:

The top-level element of the NZ Reg DTD.

Note that if element /regulation/external-document is to be used, then elements /regulation/contents, /regulation/body and /regulation/schedule.group may not be. This is to minimise the possibility of human error creating discrepancies between the content and formatting of:

- Substantive content of published hardcopy and website PDF - which will be as in the third party document referenced by the @fileref attribute of element //external-document; and
- Substantive content of published HTML - which would depend on hand-crafted replication in XML of the content of third party document.

Technical Note:

Whether or not the Regulation is a signature copy is determined from the stage attribute.

Example of Use:

```
<!DOCTYPE regulation PUBLIC "-//NZPCO//DTD Statutory Regulation//EN"
"nzreg.dtd">
<regulation id="REG-NZL-PUB.2000-263"
type="regulation"
sr.no="263">
...
</regulation>
```

Children: pcnote legdetail key cover contents front body schedule.group end

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label	Documentum related attributes. See Section 8.2.
id	Unique identifier for the document
description sonz	NZ Government Locator Service Attributes. See %nzgls.atts; at section 8.3.
agency.code	Values: (IRD PCO OC) default PCO
date.instructed	Date Instructed. Note: this attribute is thought to be redundant to Acts.
date.terminated	Date terminated
drafters.name	Name/s of user/s whose profile of the document includes the element bearing the attribute.
drafted.by	Name/s of the document's drafter/s.
instructing.office	Instructing office
footer	Values (draft-confidence draft-provisional gazette-only

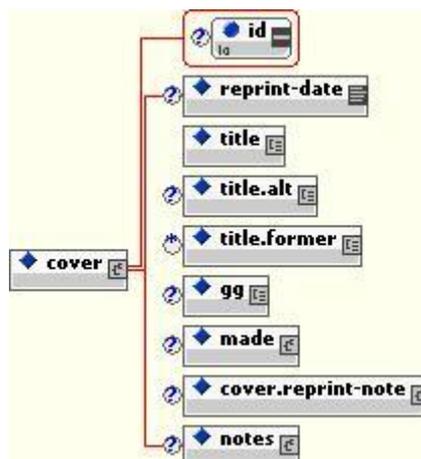
Attribute	Description
	gazette-draft-confidence gazette-draft-provisional prospective-consolidation draft-consultation unofficial-reprint) See %footer-types; at 8.5.5 .
pco.num	PCO's number
revision.no	Revision number
security	Allowed values: (in.confidence sensitive confidential restricted secret top.secret). See section 8.5.4
year	The year of publication of the document. Format is "YYYY"
year.imprint	The year to be used in imprint for hardcopy/PDF renditions.
irdnumbering	Whether the document uses Income Tax Act-style numbering. Significant only if autonumbering is applied.
sr.type	Values: (letterspatent bylaw determination direction notice order proclamation regulation rule warrant). See sections 5.1 and 8.5.9 .
sr.no	Number of the Regulation as given in the SR series. Format is normally a digit from 1 to 999. No zero padding.
date.as.at	
date.first.valid	Date from which the particular version of the document is valid.
date.gazetted	Date of publication in the <i>Gazette</i> .
date.signed	
gazette-only	Specified when publishing a Royal Warrant as a Gazette Notice. Default is blank (also "No") To convert a regulation into a Gazette, the user must modify the attributes of the first <meta> tag in the regulation and change the default value of the gazette attribute from (blank) to "yes".
hard.copy.reprint	
imperial	yes: is an imperial regulation no: default value: is not imperial This attribute is for use primarily by the CMS and web publication systems to enable imperial Regulations to be identified as such. (Unlike imperial Acts, imperial regs may have one of several type attribute values and hence cannot be identified by that attribute)
official	yes: Regulation has been officialised by PCO. Default value. no: Regulation has not been officialised. Note that attribute @official also functions as a selector for inclusion of optional "imprint" component in renditions.
reprints.no	Reprint tracking number for draft reprint
reprints.officer	Reprint Officer

Attribute	Description
stage	Values: (draft consultation-draft signature signature-non-gg not-in-force in-force prospective-consolidation reprint-draft reprint) See element See section 5.3.1 .
terminated	Allowed values: (expired revoked spent disallowed) See Section 4.3.5 above.
doc.title	See 8.6.
doc.context	See 8.6.
doc.id	See 8.6.
in.amend	See 8.6.
prospective.consolidation.based.on	The XML Id of the document on which the prospective consolidation is based.
prospective.consolidation	T /F, set toT (true) if the document is a prospective consolidation Note that this attribute is redundant. Its meaning duplicates that of @stage="prospective-consolidation". However dependencies have accrued in code written to customise functionality for prospective consolidations.
prospective.consolidation.base.version	The Documentum ID of the specific version of the document on which the prospective consolidation is based.

4.4. Major Regulation Elements

4.4.1 Element cover

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % cover.model "(reprint-date?, title, title.alt?, title.former*, gg?, made?, cover.reprint-note?, notes?)">
<!ENTITY % cover.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT cover %cover.model; >
```

<!ATTLIST cover %cover.atts; >

Description:

This is a container element, used to model information on the cover of a Regulation.

Technical Note:

Element <title.alt> allows for possibility of two titles.

In Regulations whose title has been amended, element //title.former provides storage of the former titles. Content of //title.former may be suppressed in renditions since its main purpose to provide the metadata that will allow systems to re-direct users that look or search for the document under one of its former titles.

The SR reference that appears on the front cover of a new or reprinted Regulation (in the format "SR YYYY/NNN") is derived from the @year and @sr.no.

A reprint contains a Cover Note (cover.reprint.note), which itself contains the Administering Office (admin-office). An Act as enacted, or a Regulation as made, shows the Administering Office at the end of the document.

Example of Use:

```
<cover><!--Reprint-->
<reprint-date>Reprint as at 11 February 2005</reprint-date>
<title>Misuse of Drugs Regulations 1977</title>
<gg>Denis Blundell, Governor-General</gg>
<made><heading>Order in Council</heading>
<made.at>At the Government House at Wellington this 8th day of March 1977</made.at>
<made.present>Present:<br/>His Excellency the Governor-General in Council</made.present>
</made>
<cover.reprint-note>
...
</cover.reprint-note>
</cover>
```

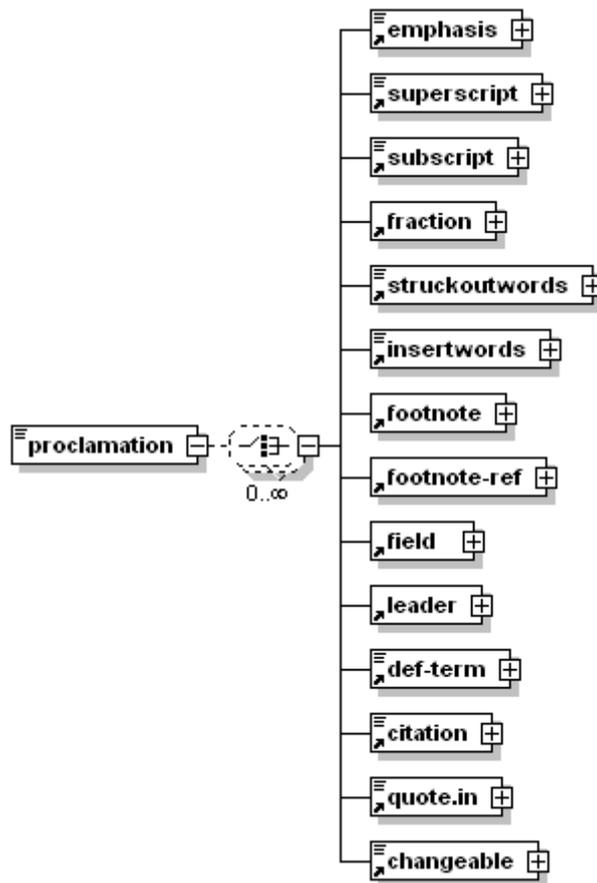
Children: reprint-date title title.alt gg made cover.reprint-note notes

Used in: regulation

Attributes: id

4.4.2 Element proclamation

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % proclamation.model "(%phrase;)*"          >
<!ENTITY % proclamation.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att;">id.att
<!ELEMENT proclamation %proclamation.model;          >
<!ATTLIST proclamation %proclamation.atts;          >
    
```

Description:

This element is used where the legislation in question has some form of patriotic rhetoric in its closing section. Typically this is found in older Statutory Regulations.

Example of Use:

```

<proclamation>God save the King!</proclamation>
    
```

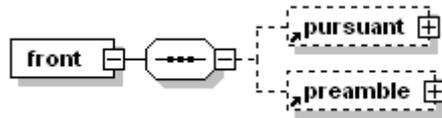
Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
 footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in changeable

Used in: end

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 deletion-status quote id

4.4.3 Element front.

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % front.model "(, preamble?, pursuant?)" >
<!ENTITY % front.atts "%id.att;
                    %lang.att;" >
<!ELEMENT front %front.model; >
<!ATTLIST front %front.atts; >
```

Description:

Used in the <regulation> element. This is a container element to model information that appears as part of "front" or "introductory" sections.

Example of Use:

```
<front>
<pursuant>
<para><text>PURSUANT to <citation>sections <extref>407</extref> and <extref>412</extref> of the <leg-
title>Accident Insurance Act 1998</leg-title></citation>, His Excellency the Governor-General, acting on the
advice and with the consent of the Executive Council, makes the following regulations.</text></para>
</pursuant>
</front>
```

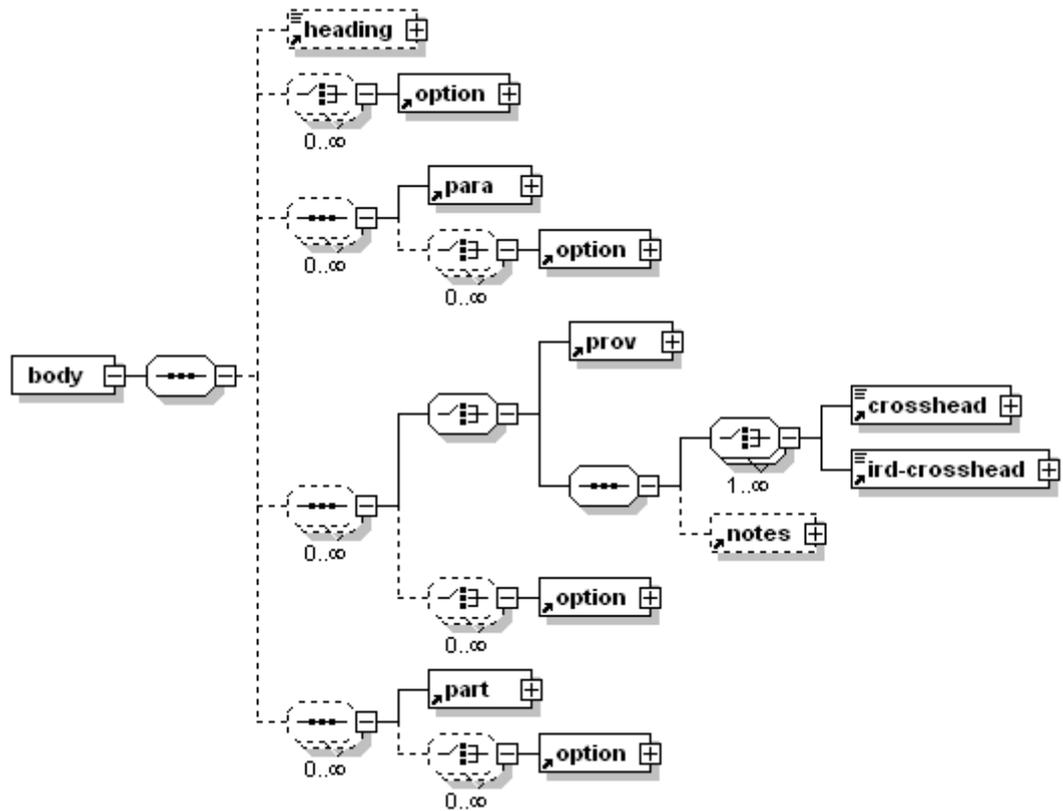
Children: pursuant preamble

Used in: regulation

Attributes: id xml:lang

4.4.4 Element body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % body.atts "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    prov-type %prov-types; #REQUIRED" >
<!ELEMENT body (heading?, %body.model;) >
<!ATTLIST body %body.atts; >
```

Description:

Used in regulation element. This is a container element to model information that appears in the body of a Regulation. Note that the content model uses parameter entity %body.model, which is declared in the Core DTD.

Example of Use:

```
<body prov-type="regulation">
<heading>Regulations</heading>
<part><label>1</label>
<heading>Preliminary</heading>
...
</body>
```

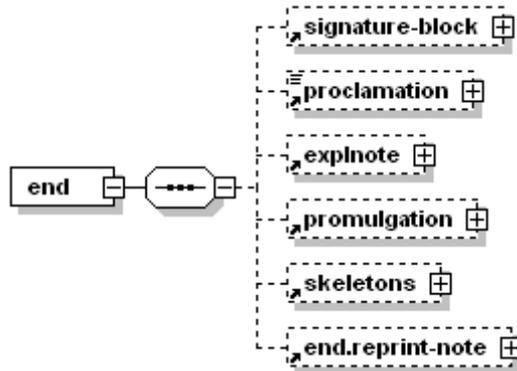
Children: heading option para prov crosshead ird-crosshead notes part

Used in: regulation skeleton.act skeleton.reg

Attributes: id xml:lang prov-type

4.4.5 Element end

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % end.model "(signature-block?, proclamation?, explnote?,
    promulgation?, skeletons?, end.reprint-note?)">
<!ENTITY % end.atts "%id.atts;
    %lang.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT end %end.model; >
<!ATTLIST end %end.atts; >
```

Description:

Used in regulation element. This is a container element to model information that appears in the back of a Regulation (such as appendices etc).

Example of Use: (Regulation as made)

```
<end>
<signature-block>
...
</signature-block>
<explnote><heading>Explanatory Note</heading>
<para><text><emphasis>This note is not part of the regulations...</emphasis></text></para>
...
</explnote>
<promulgation>
<issue-authority>Issued under the authority of the <citation><leg-title>Acts and Regulations Publication Act
1989</leg-title></citation>.</issue-authority>
<gazette-date>Date of notification in <emphasis>Gazette</emphasis>: 14 December 2000.</gazette-date>
<admin-office>These regulations are administered in the <ministry>Department of
Labour</ministry>.</admin-office>
</promulgation>
</end>
```

Example of Use: (Regulation as reprinted)

```
<end>
<promulgation>
<issue-authority>Issued under the authority of the <citation><leg-title>Acts and Regulations Publication Act
1989</leg-title></citation>.</issue-authority>
<gazette-date>Date of notification in <emphasis>Gazette</emphasis>: 14 March 1977.</gazette-date>
</promulgation>
<skeletons>
...
</skeletons>
<end.reprint-note>
...
```

</end.reprint-note>
</end>

Children: signature-block proclamation explnote promulgation skeletons
end.reprint-note

Used in: regulation

Attributes: id xml:lang

5. NZ BILL DTD

5.1. Introduction

The Bill DTD is at one level structurally very similar to the Act DTD. Bills are in general structurally the same as the Acts they become, however there is the requirement to capture all the information associated with the passage of a Bill through its stages of becoming an Act. This additional information includes the following cover material:

- Explanatory notes,
- Commentary, including the clause-by-clause analysis,
- Committee recommendations
- Change tracking, indicating the information introduced, removed and amended in the bill for each reading in parliament.

Public Identifier:

"-//NZPCO//DTD Legislation Bill//EN"

Shared Components:

The Bill DTD calls the NZ Core DTD and redefines specific entities as required. The NZCore DTD in turn calls the other common shared components, the Table DTD and the ISO Character Entities.

5.2. Entities Redefined

5.2.1 Entity: %floating.elements;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % floating.elements "option | omitted-provs">
```

Description:

This one entity acts to encapsulate the allowed “floating” structures of elements <option> and <omitted-provs>. See Core DTD definitions at sections 8.9.

5.2.2 Entity: %change.tracked.elements;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % change.tracked.elements "struckoutwords | insertwords" >
```

Description:

Used to collect the two change tracking elements together under a single entity.

A duplicate definition is required in this DTD so that %change.tracked.elements; is available to be used in the declaration of the entity %basic-phrase;

5.2.3 Entity: %basic-phrase;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % basic-phrase "#PCDATA | emphasis | superscript |  
subscript | fraction | %change.tracked.elements;" >
```

Description:

Unchanged from the declaration in the Core DTD, but a duplicate definition is required in this DTD so that %basic-phrase; is available to be used in the declaration of the entity %phrase;

5.2.4 Entity: %phrase;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % phrase "%basic-phrase;
| footnote | footnote-ref | field | leader
| def-term | citation | quote.in | graphic.inline |
changeable" >
```

Description:

In order to cater for Bills, the addition of element <changeable> is required.

5.2.5 Entity %notes.model;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % notes.model "((ird.aids | option)*,
amends-note*, query-note?)">
```

Description:

%notes.model; is redefined so that query notes but not history or editorial notes are available in Bills.

5.3. Top Level Element bill

5.3.1 Entity: % reprints.officer.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reprints.officer.att "">
```

Description:

This entity is redefined here so that Bills and chunk elements of Bills will not have a reprints.officer attribute.

5.3.2 Entity: % act-types

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % act-types "(public | local | private | provincial |
imperial)">
```

Description:

This is a duplicate of the same entity declared in all other DTD files. Duplication necessary due to absence from DTD architecture of an atomic declarations file.

5.3.3 Entity: % reg-types

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reg-types "(letterspatent | bylaw | determination |
direction | notice | order | proclamation |
regulation | rule | warrant )">
```

Description:

This is a duplicate of the same entity declared in all other DTD files. Duplication necessary due to absence from DTD architecture of an atomic declarations file.

5.3.4 Entity %bill-types;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % bill-types "(government | member | private | local)" >

Description:

Allowable types of Bill.

Type	Description
Government Bill	Government Bills are introduced by a Minister of the Crown
Local Bill	Local Bills deal with matters confined to a particular locality, and may be introduced by a Minister or a Private member..
Private Bills	Private legislation is for the benefit of individuals.
Member’s Bill;	Private member’s bill (not to be confused with a private bill)

5.3.5 Entity %bill-stages;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % bill-stages "(bill-draft | consultation-draft | clauses-draft | 1 | sc-draft | subsequent-sc-draft | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5)" >

Description:

Stages of Bill in the order in which they would normally occur:

Stage	Description
bill-draft	Draft Bill
consultation-draft	Consultation draft of Bill.
clauses-draft	Docment is a set of draft Bill clauses.
1	Bill Bar 1 introduced
sc-draft	Select Committee draft
subsequent-sc-draft	Subsequent Select Committee Draft.
2	Bill Bar 2
3	Bill Bar 3
4	Bill Bar 4
5	Bill Bar 5

5.3.6 Entity: %bill-terminated;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % bill-terminated "(withdrawn | lapsed | defeated | discharged | vetoed)" >

Description:

The terminated attribute defines the end states in the life-cycle for Bills that are not enacted.

stage	Description/ example
withdrawn	The Bill has been withdrawn.
lapsed	The Bill has lapsed.
defeated	The Bill has been defeated.
discharged	The Bill has been discharged.
vetoed	The Bill has been vetoed.

5.3.7 Entity: %doctype.local.atts

Declaration:

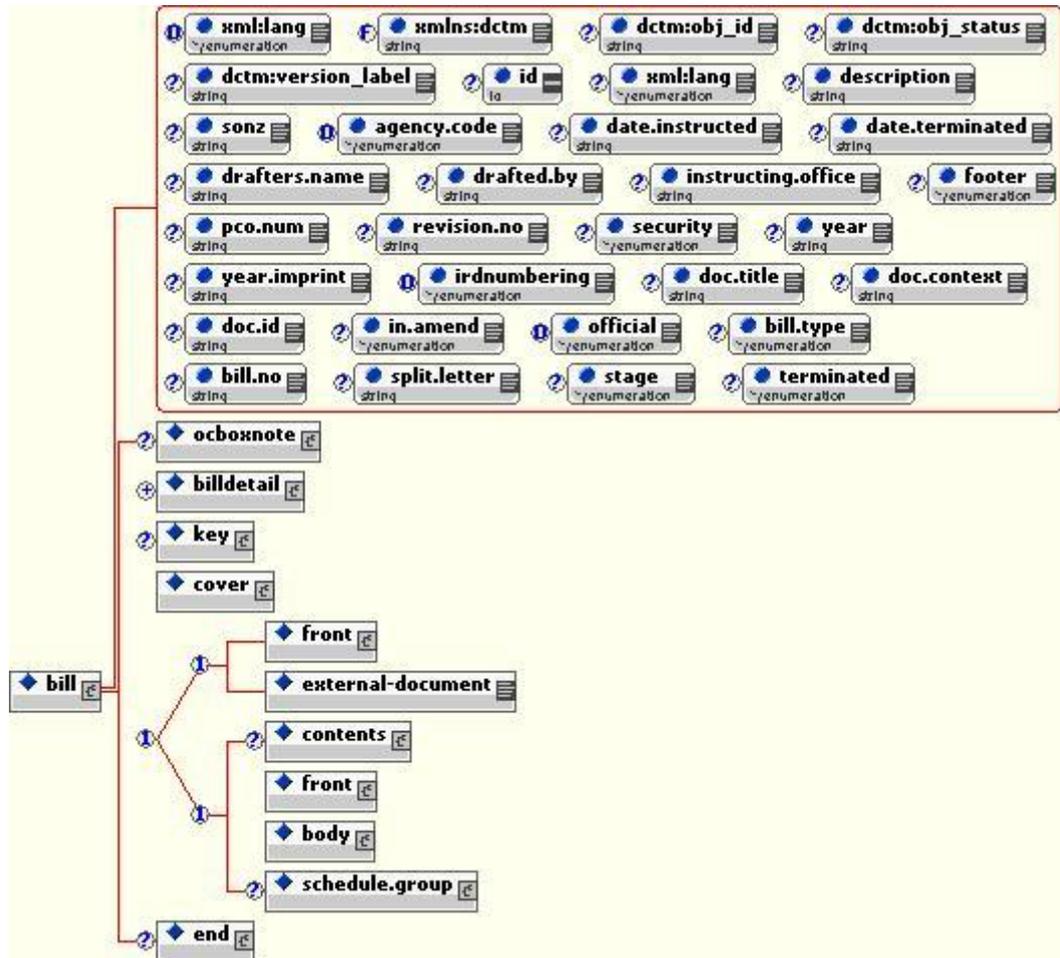
```
<!ENTITY %doctype.local.atts
"bill.type      %bill-types;  'government'
bill.no         CDATA        #IMPLIED
split.letter    CDATA        #IMPLIED
stage          %bill-stages;  'bill-draft'
terminated      %bill-terminated; #IMPLIED" >
```

Description:

This entity is used in conjunction with %global.atts (declared in nzcore.dtd) to provide declaration of metadata attributes for all whole-document and chunk attribute lists.

5.3.8 Element bill

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % bill.model "(ocboxnote? , billdetail+ , key? , cover , ((front , external-document) | (contents? , front , body , schedule.group?)) , end?)">
<ENTITY % bill.atts "
  %global.atts;
  %doctype.local.atts;">
<ELEMENT bill %bill.model;>
<!ATTLIST bill %bill.atts; >
```

Description:

The top level element for a Bill.

Note that if element /bill/external-document is to be used, then elements /bill/contents, /bill/body and /bill/schedule.group may not be. This is to minimise the possibility of human error creating discrepancies between the content and formatting of:

- Substantive content of published hardcopy and website PDF - which will be as in the third party document referenced by the @fileref attribute of element //external-document; and
- Substantive content of published HTML - which would depend on hand-crafted replication in XML of the content of third party document.

Example of use:

```
<!DOCTYPE bill PUBLIC "-//NZPCO//DTD Legislation Bills//EN"
"nzbill.dtd">
<bill id="nzleg.bill.pco109.2005"
    bill.type="member"
    year="2005"
    bill.no="106"
    stage="1">
...
</bill>
```

Children: ocheckboxnote billdetail key cover toc front body schedule.group end

Attributes:

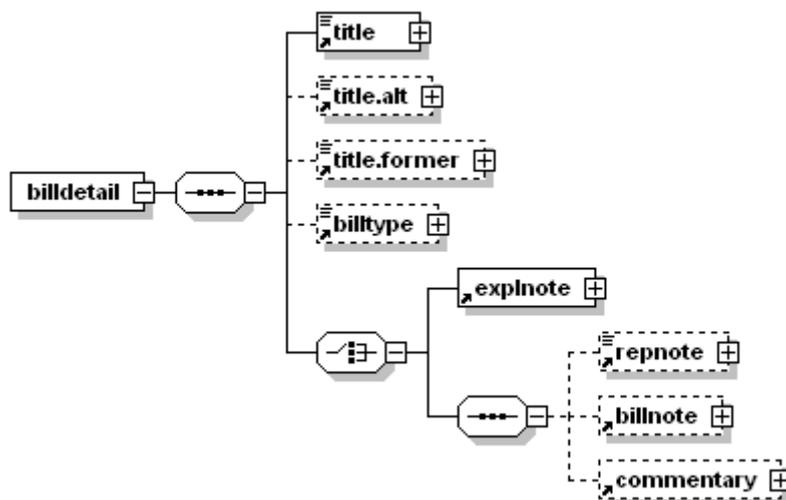
Attribute	Description
xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label	Documentum related attributes. See Section 8.2.
id	Unique identifier for the document
description sonz	NZ Government Locator Service Attributes. See %nzgls.att; at section 8.3.
agency.code	Values: (IRD PCO OC) default PCO
date.instructed	Date Instructed. Note: this attribute is thought to be redundant to Acts.
date.terminated	Date terminated
drafters.name	Name/s of user/s whose profile of the document includes the element bearing the attribute.
drafted.by	Name/s of the document's drafter/s.
instructing.office	Instructing office
footer	Values (draft-confidence draft-provisional gazette-only gazette-draft-confidence gazette-draft-provisional prospective-consolidation draft-consultation unofficial-reprint) See %footer-types; at 8.5.5 .
pco.num	PCO's number
revision.no	Revision number
security	Allowed values: (in.confidence sensitive confidential restricted secret top.secret). See Section 8.5.4
year	The year of publication of the document. Format is "YYYY"
bill.type	Values (government member private local) See section 6.3.1 .
bill.no	Bill number, as per the number in the ID, but without zero padding.

Attribute	Description
irdnumbering	Values (yes no) default is no. used by the Authoring Tool to identify IRD drafted documents with specific autonumbering characteristics
split.letter	This attribute stores the letter of the split bill. The attribute is located immediately beneath the stage attribute.
stage	Stage of the Bill. Values: "(bill-draft 1 sc-draft 2 3 4 5 withdrawn lapsed defeated discharged vetoed) See Section 5.3.5 .
terminated	Allowed values: (withdrawn lapsed defeated discharged vetoed) See Section 5.3.6 above.
doc.title	See 8.6.
doc.context	See 8.6.
doc.id	See 8.6.
in.amend	See 8.6.
official	Attribute @official functions as a selector for inclusion of optional "imprint" component in renditions.

5.4. Major Bill Elements

5.4.1 Element billdetail

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % billdetail.model "(title, title.alt?, title.former?,
    billtype?,
    (explnote | (reptime?, billnote?, commentary?)))" >
<!ENTITY % billdetail.atts "%lang.att;
    %id.att;" >id.att
<!ELEMENT billdetail %billdetail.model; >
<!ATTLIST billdetail %billdetail.atts; >
    
```

Description:

Contains the information that appears at the front of a Bill at various stages, such as Explanatory Notes and Commentary.

A Bill may sometimes contain an additional Commentary or an additional Explanatory Note in Māori. In these cases the <billdetail> element is duplicated and the first instance is in Māori.

A Bill may sometimes contain multiple commentaries in English. In these cases the <billdetail> element is duplicated and the <billtype> and <billref> elements are included only on the first instance.

Example of Use: Bar -1

```
<billdetail>
<title>Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill</title>
<billtype>Government Bill</billtype>
<explnote><heading>Explanatory Note</heading>
<explnote-group><heading>General Policy Statement</heading>
<para><text>This Bill amends the ...</text></para>
...
</explnote>
</billdetail>
```

Example of Use: Bar -2

```
<billdetail>
<title>Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill</title>
<billtype>Government Bill</billtype>
<reptime>As reported from the Government Administration Committee</reptime>
<commentary><heading>Commentary</heading>
...
</commentary>
</billdetail>
```

Example of Use: Māori Commentary, Bar-2

```
<billdetail>
<title>Ngati Tuwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) Claims Settlement Bill</title>
<billtype>He Pire Kawanatanga</billtype>
<reptime>Te purongo e ai ki te Komiti Whiriwhiri Take Maori</reptime>
<commentary><heading>Te Whakatakitaki</heading>
...
</commentary>
</billdetail/>
```

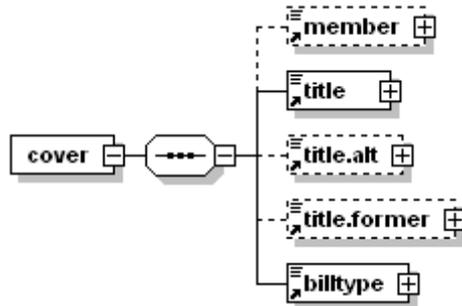
Children: title title.alt title.former billtype explnote reptime billnote commentary

Used in: bill

Attributes: xml:lang id

5.4.2 Element cover

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % cover.model "(member?, title, title.alt?, title.former?,
                           billtype)"
                           >
<!ENTITY % cover.atts "%id.att;"
                           >
<!ELEMENT cover %cover.model;
                           >
<!ATTLIST cover %cover.atts;
                           >
```

Description:

This is a container element, used to model information that appears on the cover of a Bill.

Example of Use:

```
<cover>
<member>Hon D A M Graham</member>
<title>Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill</title>
<billtype>Government Bill</billtype>
</cover>
```

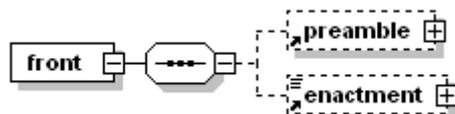
Children: member title title.alt title.former billtype

Used in: bill

Attributes: id

5.4.3 Element front

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % front.model "(preamble?, enactment?)"
                           >
<!ENTITY % front.atts "%id.att;
                       %lang.att;"
                           >
<!ELEMENT front %front.model;
                           >
<!ATTLIST front %front.atts;
                           >
```

Description:

Used in element bill. This is a container element to model the information that appears in the “front” or “introductory” sections.

Example of Use:

```
<front>
<enactment>BE IT ENACTED by the Parliament of New Zealand as follows:</enactment>
</front>
```

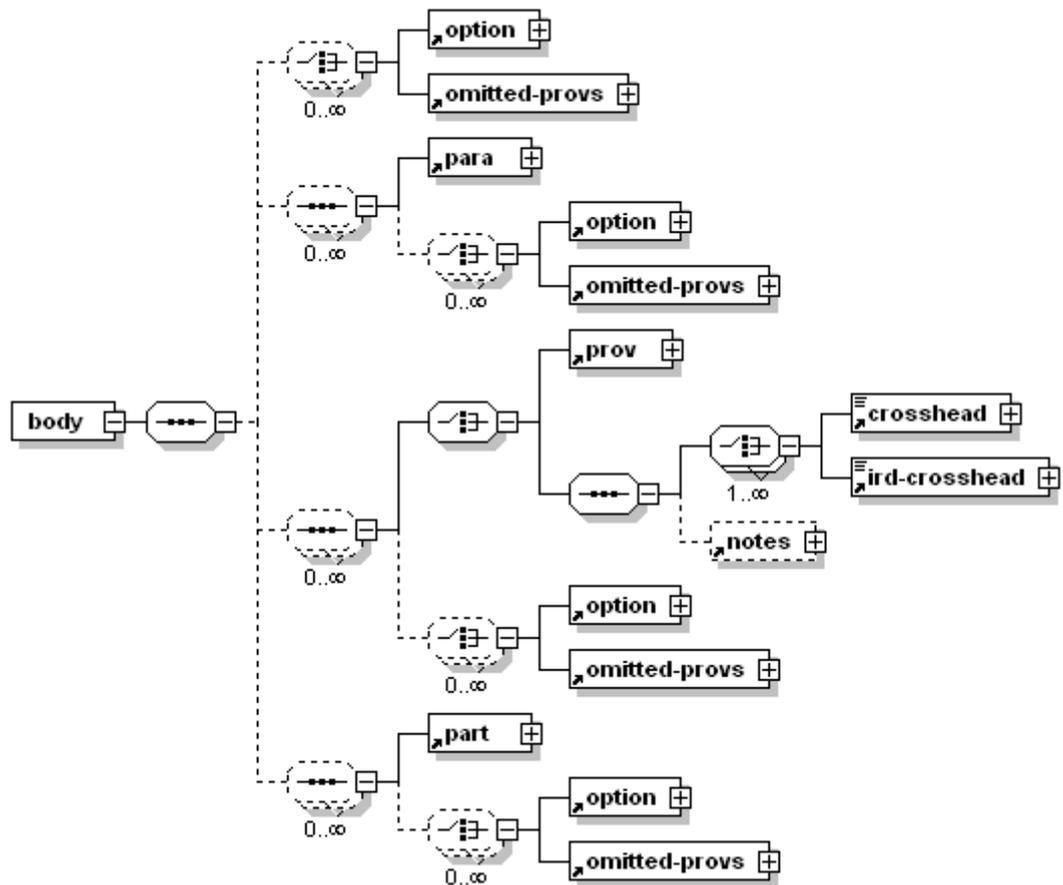
Children: preamble enactment

Used in: bill

Attributes: id xml:lang

5.4.4 Element body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % body.atts "%id.att;
                    %lang.att;
                    prov-type %prov-types; 'clause'" >
<!ELEMENT body (%body.model;) >
<!ATTLIST body %body.atts; >
```

Description:

The body of the Bill. Note that the content model uses parameter entity %body.model, which is declared in the Core DTD.

Technical Notes:

The default of the @prov-type in the body is set to “clause”.

Example of Use:

```
<body prov-type="clause">
<prov><label>1</label><heading>Short Title and commencement</heading>
<prov.body>
...
</body>
```

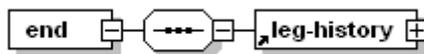
Children: option omitted-provs para prov crosshead ird-crosshead notes part

Used in: bill skeleton.act skeleton.reg

Attributes: id xml:lang prov-type

5.4.5 Element end

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % end.model "(leg-history)" >
<!ENTITY % end.atts "%id.att;
%lang.att;" >
<!ELEMENT end %end.model; >
<!ATTLIST end %end.atts; >
```

Description:

This is a container element to model the information that appears in the back of a Bill.

Example of Use:

```
<end>
<leg-history><heading>Legislative History</heading>
<history-item><date>24 March 1998</date>
<description>Introduction and first reading (Bill 109-1)</description>
</history-item>
<history-item><date>6 May 1998</date>
<description>Second reading and referral to Government Administration Committee</description>
</history-item>
<history-item><date>15 September 1999</date>
<description>Reported from Government Administration Committee (Bill 109-2)</description>
</history-item>
</leg-history>
</end>
```

Children: leg-history

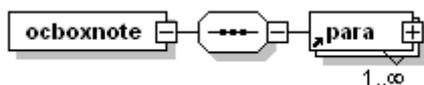
Used in: bill

Attributes: id xml:lang

5.5. General Bill Elements

5.5.1 Element ocboxnote

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % ocboxnote.model "(para+)" >
<!ENTITY % ocboxnote.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT ocboxnote %ocboxnote.model; >
<!ATTLIST ocboxnote %ocboxnote.atts; >
```

Description:

This is a box note that is sometimes placed on the front of a Bill by the Office of the Clerk if a replacement printing is ordered due to an error in the original printing.

Example of Use:

```
<ocboxnote>
<para><text>This printing of the bill replaces the earlier version of the Ngati Tuwharetoa (Bay of Plenty)
Claims Settlement Bill as reported from the Maori Affairs Committee (Bill 220-2). The earlier printing
contained errors in the <quote.in>Contents</quote.in> pages, which have now been
corrected</text></para>
</ocboxnote>
```

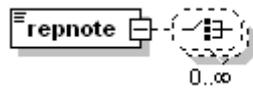
Children: para

Used in: bill

Attributes: id

5.5.2 Element repnote

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % repnote.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % repnote.atts "%lang.att;
%id.att;" >id.att
<!ELEMENT repnote %repnote.model; >
<!ATTLIST repnote %repnote.atts; >
```

Description:

Note referring to the Select Committee that is reporting the Bill.

Example of Use:

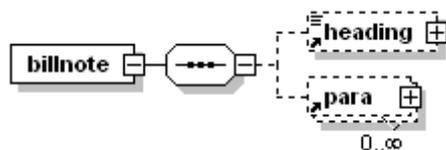
```
<repnote>As reported from the Government Administration Committee</repnote>
```

Used in: billdetail

Attributes: xml:lang id

5.5.3 Element billnote

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % billnote.model "(heading?, para*)" >
```

```
<!ENTITY % billnote.atts "%lang.atts;
                        %id.atts;" >id.atts
<!ELEMENT billnote %billnote.model; >
<!ATTLIST billnote %billnote.atts; >
```

Description:

This is an optional note provided to cover the situation for a bill where the COWH has rejected, outright, the majority amendments proposed by the select committee, and the subsequent proposed amendments are removed from the bill. The note is added to the cover sheet between the reptime and the optional commentary, in preparation for the next reading.

Example of Use:

```
<billnote>
<para><text>This Bill was formerly part of the Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill as reported from the
Justice and Electoral Committee. ...</text>
</para>
<list>
<item><para><text>This bill, comprising clauses 1 to 57 and the Schedules</text></para></item>
<item><para><text>The Administration Amendment Bill, comprising clauses 59 to
68</text></para></item>
...
</list></para>
</billnote>
```

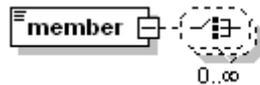
Children: heading para

Used in: billdetail

Attributes: xml:lang id

5.5.4 Element member

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % member.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % member.atts "%id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT member %member.model; >
<!ATTLIST member %member.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used to capture the name of the member who is sponsoring the bill.

Example of Use:

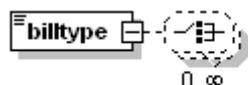
```
<member>The Hon Margaret Wilson</member>
```

Used in: cover

Attributes: id

5.5.5 Element billtype

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % billtype.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % billtype.atts "%lang.att;
                        %id.att;" >id.att
<!ELEMENT billtype %billtype.model; >
<!ATTLIST billtype %billtype.atts; >
```

Description:

Declares the type of the Bill. Appears in the <billdetail> element on the front page of the Bill, and appears again prior to the Table of Contents. The Bill type will typically be “Government Bill” (or Local, Private, Member), but may also be the Māori equivalents, for example “He Pire Kāwanatanga”.

Example of Use: Māori

```
<billtype xml:lang="mi-NZ">He Pire Kāwanatanga</billtype>
```

Example of Use: English

```
<billtype xml:lang="en-NZ">Government Bill</billtype>
```

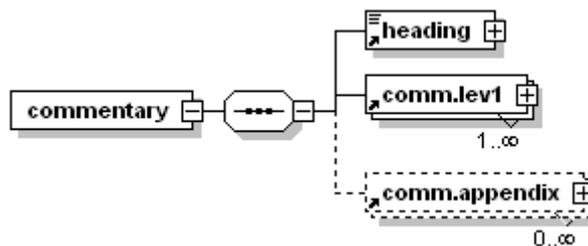
Used in: billdetail cover

Attributes: xml:lang id

5.6. Commentary Elements

5.6.1 Element commentary

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % commentary.model "(heading, comm.lev1+, comm.appendix*)">
<!ENTITY % commentary.atts
        "%global.atts;
        %doctype.local.atts;">
<!ELEMENT commentary %commentary.model; >
<!ATTLIST commentary %commentary.atts; >
```

Description:

The commentary from the select committee.

Example of Use:

```
<commentary><heading>Commentary</heading>
<comm.lev1><heading>Recommendation</heading>
<para><text>The Government Adminstrating Committee has examined the Matrimonial Property
Amendment Bill and recommends that it be passed with the amendments shown in the bill.</text></para>
</comm.lev1>
...
</commentary>
```

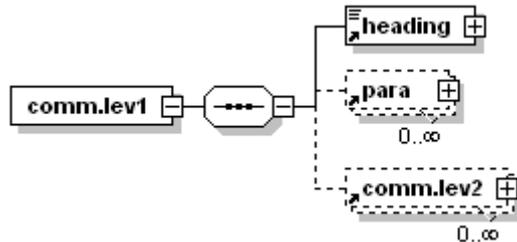
Children: heading comm.lev1 comm.appendix

Used in: billdetail

Attributes: xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label id xml:lang description sonz agency.code date.instructed date.terminated drafters.name drafted.by instructing.office footer pco.num revision.no security year year.imprint irdnumbering doc.title doc.context doc.id in.amend bill.type bill.no split.letter stage terminated

5.6.2 Element comm.lev1

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<<ENTITY % comm.lev1.model
    "(heading, (para | comm.quote.leg)*, comm.lev2*)" >
<!ENTITY % comm.lev1.atts "%id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT comm.lev1 %comm.lev1.model; >
<!ATTLIST comm.lev1 %comm.lev1.atts; >
```

Description:

The commentary from the select committee.

Example of Use:

```
<comm.lev1><heading>Recommendation</heading>
<para><text>The Government Administrating Committee has examined the Matrimonial Property
Amendment Bill and recommends that it be passed with the amendments shown in the bill.</text></para>
</comm.lev1>
```

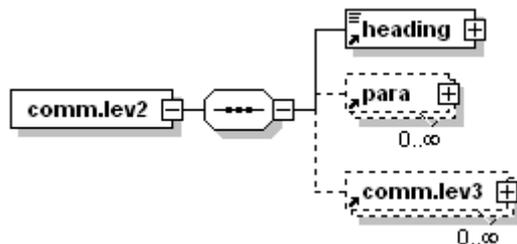
Children: heading para comm.lev2

Used in: commentary

Attributes: id

5.6.3 Element comm.lev2

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % comm.lev2.model "(heading, para*, comm.lev3*)" >
<!ELEMENT comm.lev2 %comm.lev2.model; >
<!ATTLIST comm.lev2 %comm.lev1.atts; >
```

Description:

Level 2 structure for the commentary from the select committee.

Example of Use:

```
<comm.lev2><heading>Background to the bill</heading>
<para><text>The Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill was introduced on 24 March 1998.
...</text></para>
...
</comm.lev2>
```

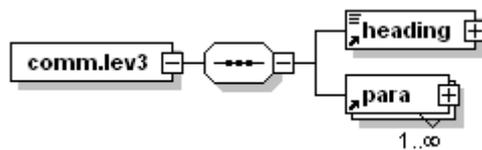
Children: heading para comm.lev3

Used in: comm.appendix comm.lev1

Attributes: id

5.6.4 Element comm.lev3

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % comm.lev3.model "(heading, para+)" >
<!ELEMENT comm.lev3 %comm.lev3.model; >
<!ATTLIST comm.lev3 %comm.lev1.att; >
```

Description:

Level 3 structure for the commentary from the select committee.

Example of Use:

```
<comm.lev3><heading>Level 3 Heading</heading>
<para><text>Level 3 Para</text></para>
...
</comm.lev3>
```

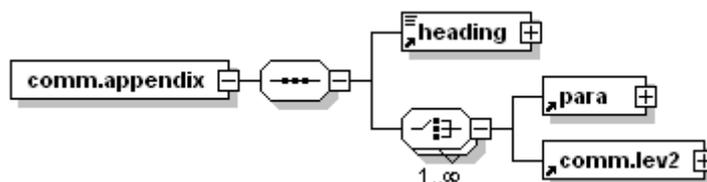
Children: heading para

Used in: comm.lev2

Attributes: id

5.6.5 Element comm.appendix

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % comm.appendix.model "(heading, (para | comm.lev2)+)" >
<!ELEMENT comm.appendix %comm.appendix.model; >
<!ATTLIST comm.appendix %comm.lev1.att; >
```

Description:

An Appendix in a commentary.

Technical Notes:

This additional element is useful to drive distinct formatting on the Appendix Heading, which commences on a new page in the printed Bill.

Example of Use:

```
<comm.appendix><heading>Appendix</heading>
<comm.lev2><heading>Committee process</heading>
<para><text>The Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill and Supplementary Order Paper No 25 were
referred ...</text></para>
<para><text>We received advice from the Ministry of Justice and the Ministry of Women&apos;s
Affairs.</text></para></comm.lev2>
<comm.lev2><heading>Committee membership</heading>
<para><list label-type="none">
<item><para><text>Tim Barnett (Chairperson)</text></para></item>
...
</list></para>
<para><text>Anne Tolley replaced Hon Clem Simich for much of this item of business.</text></para>
<para><text>Dianne Yates replaced Damien O&apos;s Connor for much of this item of
business.</text></para></comm.lev2>
</comm.appendix>
```

Children: heading para level2

Used in: commentary

Attributes: id

5.6.6 Element comm.quote.leg

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % comm.quote.leg.model "ANY" >
<!ENTITY % comm.quote.leg.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT comm.quote.leg %comm.quote.leg.model; >
<ATTLIST comm.quote.leg %comm.quote.leg.atts; >
```

Description:

An extract of legislation quoted in a commentary.

Technical Notes:

The content of element comm.quote.leg is to be populated by copy/paste of the extract of legislation after the commentary has been converted to XML.

Example of Use:

```
<comm.lev1>
<heading>Interesting Bits of the Cats and Dogs Act</heading>
<para>
<text>An interesting bit of the Cats and Dogs Act is section 337ZZZH, in which cats are forbidden to eat dog
food, particularly given the subsequent section 403:</text>
</para>
<comm.quote.leg>
<prov><label>337ZZZH</label><heading>Consumption of Dog Food</heading>
<prov.body>
```

```
<subprov><label></label>
<para><text>Cats may not eat Dog Food.</text></para>
</subprov>
</prov.body>
</prov>
<para><text>&hellip;</text></para>
<prov><label>403</label><heading>Dog Food</heading>
<prov.body>
<subprov><label></label>
<para><text>All food shall be deemed to be Dog Food.</text></para>
</subprov>
</prov.body>
</prov>
</comm.quote.leg>
</comm.lev1>
```

Children: Use of an "ANY" content model means that any elements declared in the DTD may be used inside element comm.quote.leg.

Used in: comm.lev1 comm.lev2 comm.lev3 comm.appendix

Attributes: id

6. NZ SOP DTD

6.1. Introduction

The SOP DTD contains high level elements required for the drafting and publication of a Supplementary Order Paper (SOP), and also provides coverage for splitting SOPs.

The use of common elements in the SOP and Bill DTDs supports cut-and-paste style operations between these two types of documents.

Public Identifier:

"-//NZPCO//DTD SOP//EN"

Shared Components:

The SOP DTD calls the NZ Core DTD and redefines specific entities as required. The NZ Core DTD in turn calls the other common shared components, the Table DTD and the ISO Character Entities.

6.2. Entities Redefined

6.2.1 Entity: %change.tracked.elements;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % change.tracked.elements "struckoutwords | insertwords" >
```

Description:

Used to collect the two change tracking elements together under a single entity.

A duplicate definition is required in this DTD so that %change.tracked.elements; is available to be used in the declaration of the entity %basic-phrase;

6.2.2 Entity: %basic-phrase;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % basic-phrase "#PCDATA | emphasis | superscript |  
subscript | fraction | %change.tracked.elements;" >
```

Description:

Unchanged from the declaration in the Core DTD, but is required in the Bill DTD because it is used in the redefinition of %phrase;

6.2.3 Entity: %phrase;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % phrase "%basic-phrase;  
| footnote | footnote-ref | field | leader  
| def-term | citation | quote.in | graphic.inline |  
changeable" >
```

Description:

In order to cater for Bills, the addition of element <changeable> is required.

6.2.4 Entity %notes.model;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % notes.model "((ird.aids | option)*, query-note?)">

Description:

%notes.model; is redefined so that query notes but not history or editorial notes are available in SOPs.

6.3. Entities Defined

6.3.1 Entity: %sop.structure

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % sop.structure "eqn | figure | graphic | table | list | label-para | label-para.crosshead | def-para | (instrument.amend, follow-text?) | (quote, follow-text?)" >

Description:

Used in element <sop.para>. The %sop.structure; entity contains the <instrument.amend> structure, rather than the <amend> structure, due to the nested amendments when amending an amending instrument. Where for the purposes of this DTD, an amending instrument may be either an SOP or a Bill.

6.4. Top Level Element

6.4.1 Entity: % reprints.officer.att;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % reprints.officer.att "">

Description:

This entity is redefined here so that SOPs and chunk elements of SOPs will not have a reprints.officer attribute.

6.4.2 Entity %sop.stages;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % sop-stages "(draft | consultation-draft | published)">

Description:

The stages of an SOP.

6.4.3 Entity %sop-terminated;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % sop-terminated "(superseded | withdrawn)">

Description:

The end states in the lifecycle for SOPs that do not make it all the way through to publication.

6.4.4 Entity: % act-types

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % act-types "(public | local | private | provincial |
    imperial)">
```

Description:

This is a duplicate of the same entity declared in all other DTD files. Duplication necessary due to absence from DTD architecture of an atomic declarations file.

6.4.5 Entity: % reg-types

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reg-types "(letterspatent | bylaw | determination |
    direction | notice | order | proclamation |
    regulation | rule | warrant )">
```

Description:

This is a duplicate of the same entity declared in all other DTD files. Duplication necessary due to absence from DTD architecture of an atomic declarations file.

6.4.6 Entity: % doctype.local.atts

Declaration:

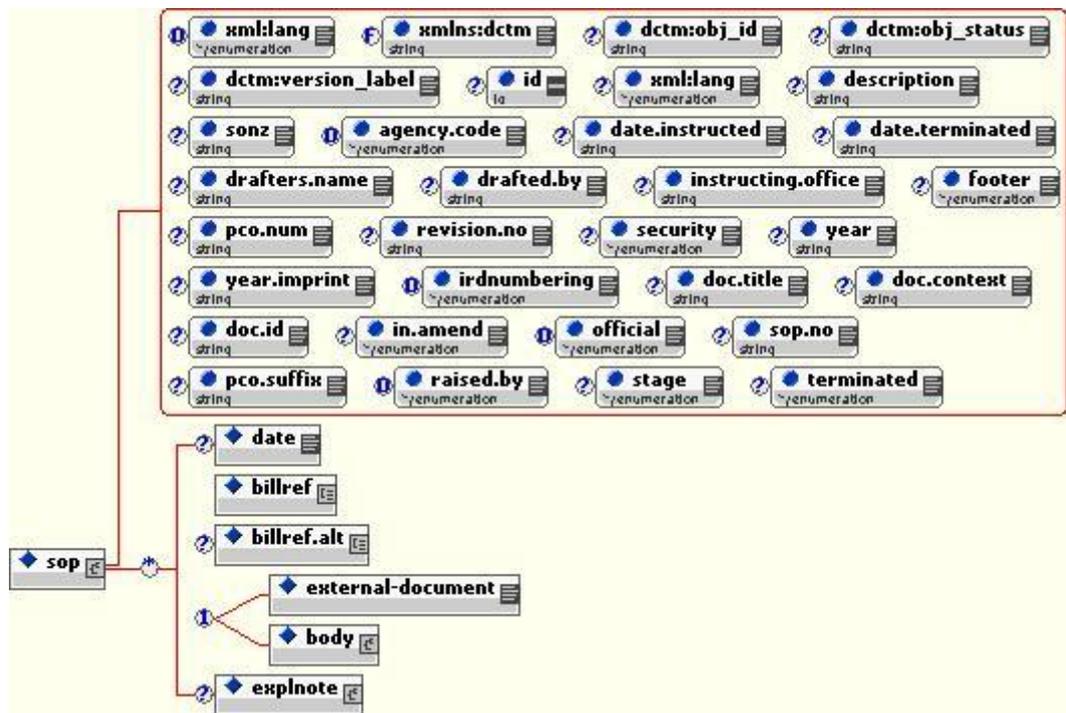
```
<!ENTITY % doctype.local.atts
"sop.no          CDATA          #IMPLIED
pco.suffix      CDATA          #IMPLIED
raised.by       (Government | Members ) 'Government'
stage           %sop-stages;   'draft'
terminated      %sop-terminated; #IMPLIED" >
">
```

Description:

This entity is used in conjunction with %global.atts (declared in nzcore.dtd) to provide declaration of metadata attributes for all whole-document and chunk attribute lists.

6.4.7 Top Level Element sop

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % sop.model "(date? , billref , billref.alt? , (external-document | body) , explnote?)*">
<ENTITY % sop.atts " %global.atts;
%doctype.local.atts;">
<ELEMENT sop %sop.model;>
<!ATTLIST sop %sop.atts ;>
```

Description:

This is the top-level element in the SOP DTD.

Note that if element /sop/external-document is to be used, then elements /sop/contents, /sop/body and /sop/schedule.group may not be. This is to minimise the possibility of human error creating discrepancies between the content and formatting of:

- Substantive content of published hardcopy and website PDF - which will be as in the third party document referenced by the @fileref attribute of element //external-document; and
- Substantive content of published HTML - which would depend on hand-crafted replication in XML of the content of third party document.

Example of Use:

```
<sop sop.type="sop">
<date>Tuesday, 16 May 2000</date>
<billref>Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill</billref>
...
</sop>
```

Children: date billref billref.alt body explnote

Attributes:

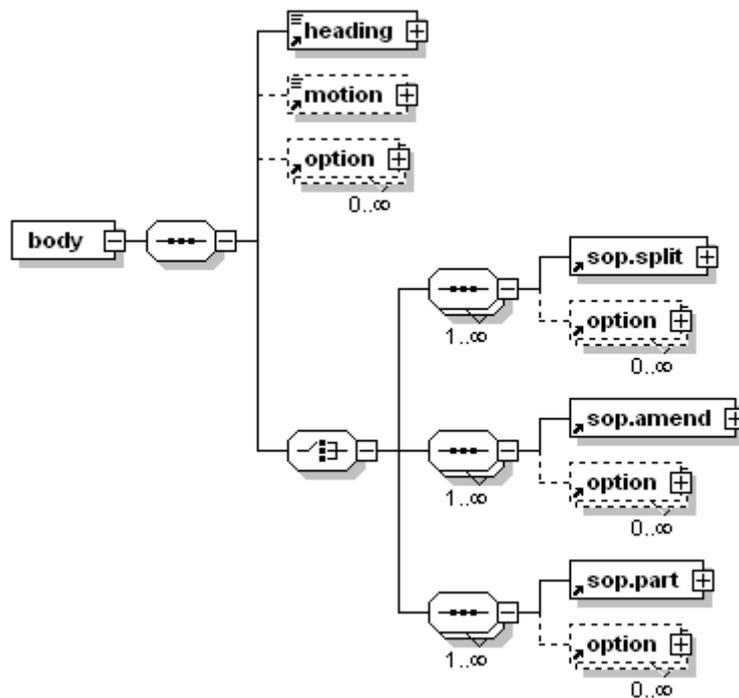
Attribute	Description
xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label	Documentum related attributes. See Section 8.2.
id	Unique identifier for the document
description sonz	NZ Government Locater Service Attributes. See %nzgls.atts; at section 8.3.
agency.code	Values: (IRD PCO OC) default PCO
date.instructed	Date Instructed. Note: this attribute is thought to be redundant to Acts.
date.terminated	Date Terminated
drafters.name	Name/s of user/s whose profile of the document includes the element bearing the attribute.
drafted.by	Name/s of the document's drafter/s.
instructing.office	Instructing Office
footer	Values (draft-confidence draft-provisional gazette-only gazette-draft-confidence gazette-draft-provisional prospective-consolidation draft-consultation unofficial-reprint) See %footer-types; at 8.5.5 .
pco.num	PCO's Number
revision.no	Revision Number
security	Allowed values: (in.confidence sensitive confidential restricted secret top.secret). See Section 8.5.4
year	The year of publication of the document. Format is "YYYY"
sop.no	The SOP number
pco.suffix	PCO's suffix
raised.by	Values (government member) default 'government'. Identifies whether the SOP was raised by the government or by a member.
stage	Stage of the SOP. Allowed values. (draft consultation-draft published) See Section 7.4.1 .
terminated	Allowed values: (superseded withdrawn) See Section 6.4.3 above.
doc.title	See 8.6.
doc.context	See 8.6.
doc.id	See 8.6.

Attribute	Description
in.amend	See 8.6.
official	Attribute @official functions as a selector for inclusion of optional "imprint" component in renditions.

6.5. Major SOP Elements

6.5.1 Element body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % body.model "(heading, motion?, option*,
((sop.split, option*)+ |
(sop.amend, option*)+ |
(sop.part, option*)+))">
```

```
...
<!ENTITY % body.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT body %body.model; >
<!ATTLIST body %body.atts; >
```

Description:

Used to define the body of an SOP. Note that the content model uses a locally declared parameter entity %body.model, overriding that declared in the Core DTD.

Example of Use:

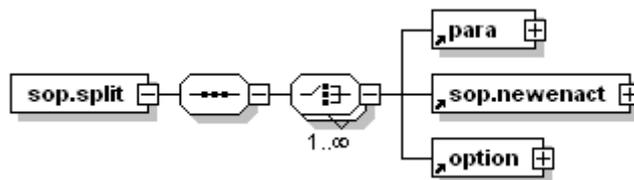
```
<body>
<heading>Proposed Amendments</heading>
<motion>Hon Margaret Wilson, in Committee, to move the following
amendments:</motion>
<sop.amends>
...
</sop.amends>
```

...
 </body>
Children: heading motion option sop.split sop.amend sop.part
Used in: sop
Attributes: id

6.6. General SOP Elements

6.6.1 Element sop.split

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sop.split.model "  
    ((para | sop.newenact | option)+  
    ">  
<!ENTITY % sop.split.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;  
    %id.att;" >id.att  
<!ELEMENT sop.split %sop.split.model; >  
<!ATTLIST sop.split %sop.split.atts; >
```

Description:

The model for a splitting SOP.

Example of Use:

```
<sop.split>  

<para><text>That <extref>clauses 1 and 2, Part 1</extref>, and the <extref>Schedules 1 to 3</extref> be a  

separate Bill, and that the enacting words, <extref>clauses 1 and 2</extref>, and the heading to  

<extref>Part 1</extref> there be substituted the following enacting words and clauses:</text></para>  

<sop.newenact>  

<enactment>The Parliament of new Zealand Enacts as Follows: </enactment>  

<prov><label>1</label><heading>Title</heading>  

<prov.body>  

<para><text>This Act is the Industry New Zealand Act <changeable>2000</changeable></text>  

</para></prov.body>  

</prov>  

<prov><label>2</label><heading>Commencement</heading>  

<prov.body>  

<para><text>This Act comes into force ...</text></para>  

</prov.body></prov>  

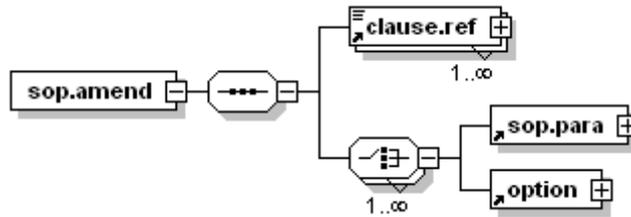
</sop.newenact>  

</sop.split>
```

Children: para option sop.newenact
Used in: body
Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id

6.6.2 Element sop.amend

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sop.amend.model "
    (clause.ref+, (sop para | option)+)
">
<!ENTITY % sop.amend.atts "%id.atts;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;">
<!ELEMENT sop.amend %sop.amend.model; >
<!ATTLIST sop.amend %sop.amend.atts; >
```

Description:

A SOP (other than a break-up SOP) consists of a series of amendments. Element <sop.amend> models each of those amendments. Multiple clause refs are sometimes required.

Example of Use:

```
<sop.amend><clause.ref>Clause 1</clause.ref>
<sop para><text>To omit from line 5 on page 4 the words <amend.in>Matrimonial Property</amend.in>,
and substitute the words <amend.in>Property (Relationships)</amend.in>.</text>
</sop para>
</sop.amend>
```

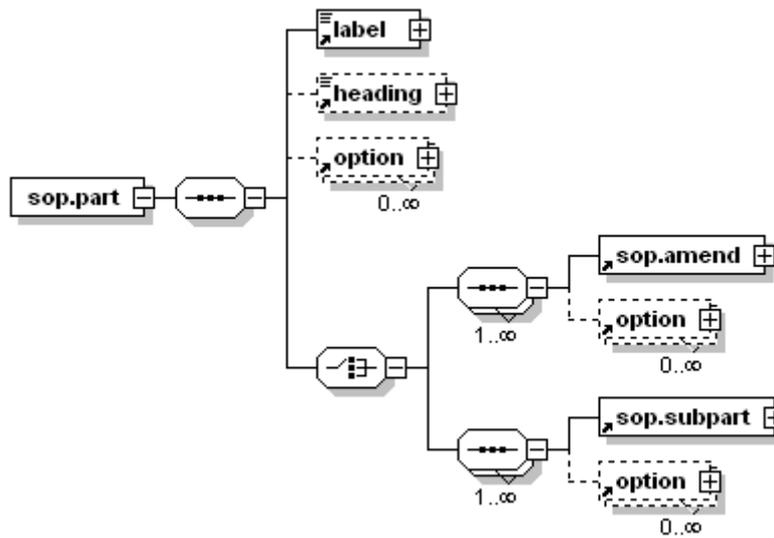
Children: clause.ref option sop para

Used in: body

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id quote

6.6.3 Element sop.part

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % sop.part.model "(label, heading?, option*,
                           ((sop.amend, option*)+ |
                            (sop.subpart, option*)+))" >
<!ENTITY % sop.part.atts "%id.att;
                          %standard-statuses.meta.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT sop.part %sop.part.model; >
<!ATTLIST sop.part %sop.part.atts; >
    
```

Description:

Used to define the SOP Part model to retain label and heading but allow <sop.amend> and <sop.subpart> structures.

Example of Use:

```

<sop.part><label>1</label><heading>Crimes Act 1961</heading>
<sop.amend><clause.ref>Clause 5</clause.ref>
<sop.para><text>To insert the proposed <amend.in>new section 7A(1)(d)</amend.in>, of the principal
Act...</text></sop.para>
</sop.amend>
</sop.part>
    
```

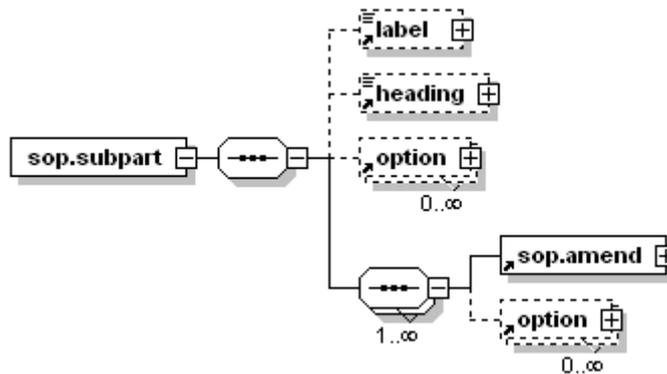
Children: label heading option sop.amend sop.subpart

Used in: body

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id quote

6.6.4 Element sop.subpart

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sop.subpart.model "(label?, heading?, option*,
(sop.amend, option*)+)">
<!ENTITY % sop.subpart.atts "%id.att;
%standard-statuses.meta.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT sop.subpart %sop.subpart.model; >
<!ATTLIST sop.subpart %sop.subpart.atts; >
```

Description:

Used to define the SOP Subpart model to retain label and heading but allow <sop.amend> structures.

Example of Use:

Not available

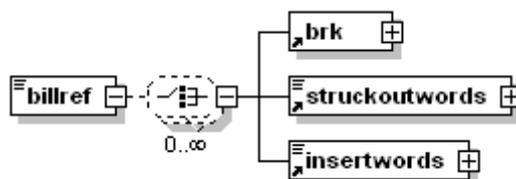
Children: label heading option sop.amend

Used in: sop.part

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id quote

6.6.5 Element billref

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT billref %title.model; >
<!ATTLIST billref %title.atts; >
```

Description:

The title of the Bill to which the SOP applies.

Example of Use:

```
<billref>Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill</billref>
```

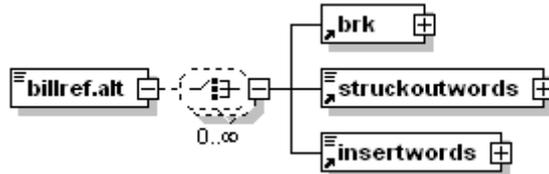
Children: brk struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: sop

Attributes: id

6.6.6 Element billref.alt

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT billref.alt %title.model; >
<!ATTLIST billref.alt %title.atts; >
```

Description:

The alternative Māori title of the Bill to which the SOP applies.

Example of Use:

```
<billref>The name of the Bill</billref>
<billref.alt>The Maori name of the Bill</billref.alt>
```

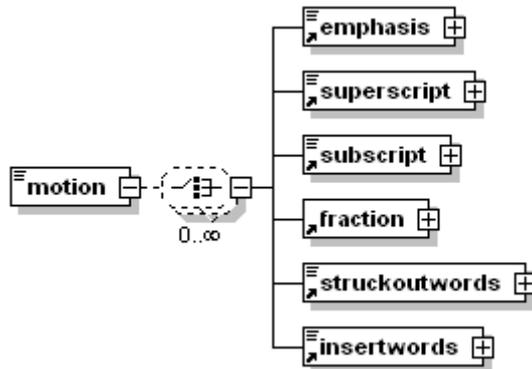
Children: brk struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: sop

Attributes: id

6.6.7 Element motion

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % motion.model "(%basic-phrase;)*" >
<!ENTITY % motion.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT motion %motion.model; >
<!ATTLIST motion %motion.atts; >
```

Description:

In an SOP amendments are moved by a member.

Example of Use:

```
<motion>Hon Margaret Wilson, in Committee, to move the following
```


Example of Use:

```

<sop.newenact>
<enactment>The Parliament of new Zealand Enacts as Follows:
</enactment>
<prov><label>1</label><heading>Title</heading>
<prov.body>
<para><text>This Act is the Industry New Zealand Act <changeable>2000</changeable></text>
</para></prov.body>
</prov>
<prov><label>2</label><heading>Commencement</heading>
<prov.body>
<para><text>This Act comes into force ...</text></para>
</prov.body></prov>
</sop.newenact>
    
```

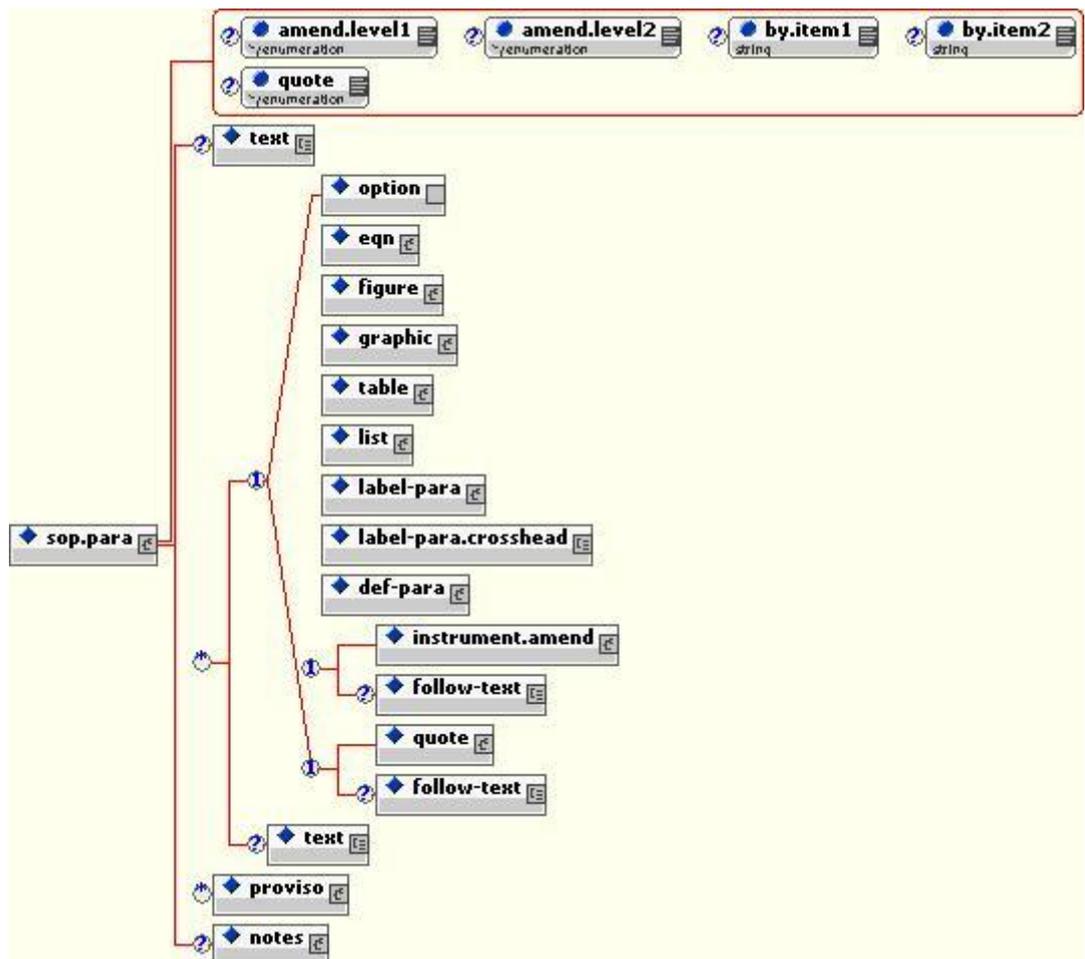
Children: enactment option prov

Used in: sop.split

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id quote

6.6.10 Element sop.para

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % sop.para.model "(text?, ((%sop.structure;), text?)*,
proviso*, notes?)"
    >
    
```

```

<!ENTITY % sop.newenact.att "standard-statuses.meta.att;
                        %id.att;"          >id.att
<!ELEMENT sop.para    %sop.para.model;    >
<!ATTLIST sop.para %sop.para.att;        >

```

Description:

The basic paragraph model used in an SOP.

Technical Notes:

In SOPs the paragraph model has been extended from that used elsewhere in legislation. The `sop.structure` entity contains the `<instrument.amend>` structure, rather than the `<amend>` structure, due to the nested amendments when amending an amending instrument. Where for the purposes of this DTD, an amending instrument may be either an SOP or a Bill.

Example of Use: Simple example:

```

<sop.para><text>To omit from line 5 on page 4 the words <amend.in>Matrimonial
Property</amend.in>, and substitute the words <amend.in>Property
(Relationships)</amend.in>.</text></sop.para>

```

Example of Use: Complex Example:

```

<sop.para><text>To omit subclause (2) (all the words in line 8 on page 4), and substitute the following
subclause:</text>
<instrument.amend>
<subprov><label>2</label>
<para><text>Except as provided in<changeable>section 22(2)</changeable>, this Act comes into force on
<changeable>1 February 2002</changeable>.</text></para>
</subprov>
</instrument.amend>
</sop.para>

```

Children: text option eqn figure graphic table list label-para label-para.crosshead def-para instrument.amend quote follow-text proviso notes

Used in: sop.amend

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id

6.6.11 Element instrument.amend
Diagram:

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % instrument.amend.model "(%amend.model; |
      (amend, follow-text?))" >
<!ENTITY % instrument.amend.atts "
      open.quote (yes | no) 'no'
      close.quote (yes | no) 'no'
      increment (1 | 2 | 3) #IMPLIED
      %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
      %id.attid.att; " >
<!ELEMENT instrument.amend %instrument.amend.model; >
<!ATTLIST instrument.amend %instrument.amend.atts; >
```

Description:

Used for the markup of an amending provision (or subprovision, or other structure) in the SOP that is to be inserted into the amending instrument (usually a Bill).

Example of Use:

```
<instrument.amend>
<subprov><label>2</label>
<para><text>Except as provided in <changeable>section 22(2)</changeable>,
this Act comes into force on <changeable>1 June 2001</changeable>.</text></para>
</subprov>
</instrument.amend>
```

Children: part subpart schedule.group schedule head3 head4 head5 head6
empowering-prov contents head2 head1 conv form prov crosshead ird-crosshead
subprov subprov.crosshead para def-para label-para.crosshead label-para proviso table
figure eqn list preamble-block preamble preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 title
title.alt heading long-title option amend follow-text cf

Used in: sop.para

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
open.quote	If an opening quote is required at the start of the element or elements that are to be inserted into the Bill, then @open.quote is set to 'yes'.
close.quote	If a closing quote is required at the end of the element or elements that are to be inserted into the Bill, then @close.quote is set to 'yes'.
increment	Enables drafters to insert a single <label-para> element (as per a paragraph), the application then "increments" the indentation level to ensure correct formatting. The indent increment applies to all children of the <amend> (See section 8.27.1)or <instrument.amend> element.
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.
quote	See section 8.8
id	

7. NZ BILL-SOP DTD

7.1. Introduction

The Bill-SOP DTD contains high level elements required for the drafting and publication of a Supplementary Order Paper (SOP) that incorporates the content of the Bill it amends. This document type is known as a Bill-SOP.

Public Identifier:

"-//NZPCO//DTD Legislation Bill-SOP//EN"

Shared Components:

The Bill-SOP DTD calls the NZ Bill DTD, redefining specific entities as required. The NZ Bill DTD in turn calls the NZ Core DTD, itself redefining specific entities as required. The NZ Core DTD in turn calls the other common shared components, the Table DTD and the ISO Character Entities.

7.2. Entities Redefined

Certain parameter entities from the Bill and SOP DTDs are copied verbatim from those DTDs in order for their values to be available within the Bill-SOP DTD. These are not, strictly speaking, redefinitions but are noted as they create forward dependencies on their respective origin DTDs.

7.2.1 Entity: %bill-types;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % bill-types "(government | member | private | local)">
```

Description:

Unchanged from the declaration in the Bill DTD, the parameter entity %bill-types; is required in this DTD so that its value can be used in the redeclaration for //explnote. See 5.3.4 .

7.2.2 Entity: %billsop-stages;

Declaration:

```
<!-- combine @stage from both Bills and SOPs -->  
<!ENTITY % billsop-stages "(bill-draft | consultation-draft |  
clauses-draft | 1 | sc-draft | subsequent-sc-draft |  
2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | draft | published)">
```

Description:

Merges the enumerated values of @stage declared by %bill-stages; (see Section 5.3.5) and %sop-stages; (see Section 6.4.2) for use as the declared value of @stage on //explnote.

7.2.3 Entity: %billsop-terminated;

Declaration:

```
<!-- combine @terminated from both Bills and SOPs -->  
<!ENTITY % billsop-terminated "(withdrawn | lapsed | defeated |  
discharged | vetoed | superseded)">
```

Description:

Merges the enumerated values of @terminated declared by %bill-terminated; (see Section 5.3.6) and %sop-terminated; (see Section 6.4.3) for use as the declared value of @terminated on //explnote.

7.2.4 Element explnote

Declaration:

```
<!ATTLIST explnote
  sop.no          CDATA          #IMPLIED
  pco.suffix     CDATA          #IMPLIED
  raised.by      (Government | Members) 'Government'

  bill.type      %bill-types;   #IMPLIED
  bill.no        CDATA          #IMPLIED
  split.letter   CDATA          #IMPLIED

  stage          %billsop-stages; #IMPLIED
  terminated     %billsop-terminated; #IMPLIED
```

Description:

A purpose of the Bill-SOP DTD is to allow re-use of Bill content within a SOP document. Element <explnote> occurs in both the native SOP and re-used Bill content of a Bill-SOP. Because the attributes defined for element <explnote> in the separate SOP and Bill document types differ, and DTDs do not support context-dependent declarations, the Bill-SOP declaration of the ATTLIST for element <explnote> must declare the merged attributes and attribute values of both.

Apart from attributes there are no changes to the content model or other aspects of <explnote>. See Section 8.41.

Attributes:

Attribute	Origin	Description
sop.no	SOP	The SOP number
pco.suffix	SOP	PCO's suffix
raised.by	SOP	Values (government member) default 'government'. Identifies whether the SOP was raised by the government or by a member.
bill.type	Bill	Values (government member private local) See Section 5.3.4
bill.no	Bill	Bill number, as per the number in the ID, but without zero padding.
split.letter	Bill	This attribute stores the letter of the split bill. The attribute is located immediately beneath the stage attribute.
stage	both	The stage of the Bill-SOP. Allowed values are defined by %billsop-stages; See Section 7.2.2 above.
terminated	both	The end states in the life-cycle for Bill-SOPs that are not enacted. Allowed values are defined by %billsop-terminated; See Section 7.2.3 above.

7.3. Top Level Element sop

7.3.1 Entity: %sop-stages;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sop-stages "(draft | consultation-draft | published)">
```

Description:

Unchanged from the declaration in the SOP DTD, the parameter entity %sop-stages; is required in this DTD so that its value can be used in the declaration of the entity %sop.local.atts;. See 6.4.2

7.3.2 Entity: %sop-terminated;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sop-terminated "(superseded | withdrawn)">
```

Description:

Unchanged from the declaration in the SOP DTD, the parameter entity %sop-terminated; is required in this DTD so that its value can be used in the declaration of the entity %sop.local.atts;.. See 6.4.3

7.3.3 Entity: %sop-local-atts;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sop.local.atts
"sop.no          CDATA          #IMPLIED
pco.suffix      CDATA          #IMPLIED
raised.by       (Government | Members) 'Government'
stage           %sop-stages;   'draft'
terminated      %sop-terminated; #IMPLIED" >
```

Description:

Because the parameter entity %doctype.local.atts; is used in both the Bill and SOP DTDs, %sop-local-atts; duplicates the declared value used in the SOP DTD to allow the existing declaration of %doctype.local.atts; declared within the Bill DTD to function unchanged within Bill content.

7.3.4 Entity: %sop-atts;

Declaration:

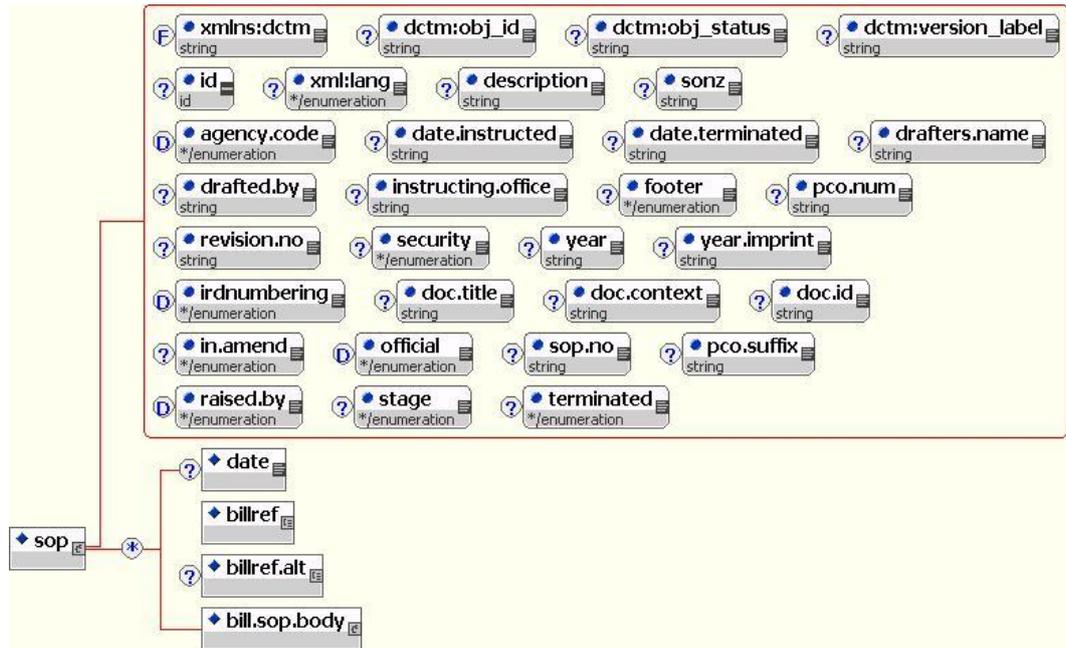
```
<!ENTITY % sop.atts
"%global.atts;
%sop.local.atts;" >
```

Description:

Declares the value of the attribute list for <sop>.

7.3.5 Element sop

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % bill.sop.model
    "(date?, billref, billref.alt?, bill.sop.body)*" >
<!ENTITY % sop.atts
    "%global.atts;
    %sop.local.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT sop %bill.sop.model; >
<!ATTLIST sop
    %sop.atts; >
```

Description:

This is the top-level element in the Bill-SOP DTD.

Example of Use:

```
<sop sop.no="999" agency.code="PCO" pco.num="16203" pco.suffix="0001">
<date>Wednesday, 14 July</date>
<billref>Crimes (Internationally Protected Persons, United Nations and Associated Personnel, and
Hostages) Act 1980</billref>
<bill.sop.body>
<heading>Proposed Amendments</heading>
<bill agency.code="PCO" bill.no="" bill.type="government"
    official="yes" pco.num="16203" revision.no="12">
...
</bill>
</bill.sop.body>
</sop>
```

Children: date billref billref.alt bill.sop.body

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label	Documentum related attributes. See Section 8.2.

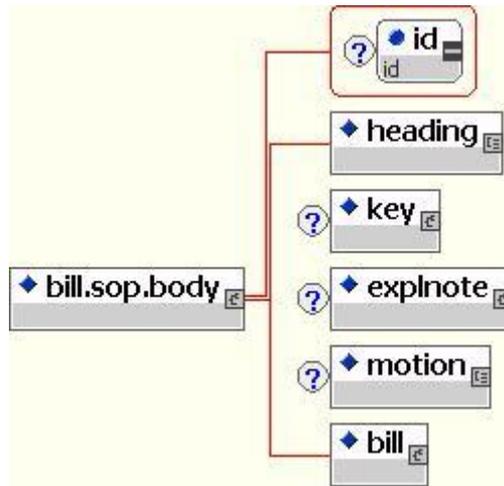
Attribute	Description
id	Unique identifier for the document
xml:lang	Language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ) default en-NZ See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
description sonz	NZ Government Locator Service Attributes. See %nzgls.att; at section 8.3.
agency.code	Values: (IRD PCO OC) default PCO
date.instructed	Date Instructed
date.terminated	Date Terminated
drafters.name	Name/s of user/s whose profile of the document includes the element bearing the attribute.
drafted.by	Name/s of the document's drafter/s.
instructing.office	Instructing Office
footer	Values (draft-confidence draft-provisional gazette-only gazette-draft-confidence gazette-draft-provisional prospective-consolidation draft-consultation unofficial-reprint) See %footer-types; at 8.5.5 .
pco.num	PCO's Number
revision.no	Revision Number
security	Allowed values: (in.confidence sensitive confidential restricted secret top.secret). See Section 8.5.4
year	The year of publication of the document. Format is "YYYY"
year.imprint	The year to be used in imprint for hardcopy/PDF renditions.
irdnumbering	Whether the document uses Income Tax Act-style numbering. Significant only if autonumbering is applied.
doc.title	See 8.6.
doc.context	See 8.6.
doc.id	See 9.6.
in.amend	See 8.6.
official	Attribute @official functions as a selector for inclusion of optional "imprint" component in renditions.
sop.no	The SOP number
pco.suffix	PCO's suffix
raised.by	Values (government member) default 'government'. Identifies whether the SOP was raised by the government or by a member.
stage	Stage of the SOP. Allowed values. (draft consultation-draft published)

Attribute	Description
	See Section 7.3.1 above.
terminated	Allowed values: (superseded withdrawn) See Section 7.3.2 above6.4.3 above.

7.4. Major Bill-SOP Elements

7.4.1 Element bill.sop.body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<IELEMENT bill.sop.body (heading, key?, explnote?, motion?, bill) >
```

Description:

Used as a replacement for /body in Bill-SOP documents, /bill.sop.body is the main wrapper element containing the Bill and its prefatory content.

Example of Use:

```
<sop>
  <date> Tuesday, 16 May 2000</date>
  <billref> Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill</billref>
  <bill.sop.body>
    <heading>Proposed Amendments</heading>
    <motion>Hon Margaret Wilson, in Committee,
      to move the following amendments:</motion>
    <bill>
      ...
    </bill>
  </bill.sop.body>
</sop>
```

Children:

heading key explnote motion bill

Used in:

sop (only in Bill-SOP documents)

Attributes: id

7.5. General Bill-SOP Elements

7.5.1 Element date

The /date element is defined in the Core DTD, see Section 8.40.4 .

When used in the context of a Bill-SOP document, it is generated as part of the Bill-to-Bill-SOP transformation. Its text content is initially set to the creation date of the Bill-SOP document.

7.5.2 Element billref

The /billref element is the same as defined in the SOP DTD, see Section 6.6.5 .

When used in the context of a Bill-SOP document, it is generated as part of the Bill-to-Bill-SOP transformation, with the title of the Bill as its content.

7.5.3 Element billref.alt

The /billref.alt element is the same as defined in the SOP DTD, see Section 6.6.6 .

7.5.4 Element motion

The /motion element is the same as defined in the SOP DTD, see Section 6.6.7 .

When used in the context of a Bill-SOP document, it is generated as part of the Bill-to-Bill-SOP transformation, with its text content initially set to:

“The Honourable Minister, in Committee, to propose the amendments shown in the following document.”

Used in:

bill.sop.body

8. NZ CORE DTD

8.1. Introduction

The core DTD contains common elements for the main components of all NZ Bills, Acts, Statutory Regulations and SOPs . It allows common elements to be defined once, and used in several master DTDs. The definitions of core elements may be overridden and redefined in the master DTDs as necessary.

Elements relating to Table structures are also common to the higher level DTDs. However, these are found in the Table DTD described in Section 9.

Public Identifier:

"-//NZPCO//DTD Core Elements//EN"

Shared Components:

The Core DTD calls in the Table DTD component. Also the ISO Character Entity Sets.

8.2. Documentum Attributes

8.2.1 Entity %dctmatts;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % dctmatts "
  xmlns:dctm      CDATA #FIXED
  'http://www.documentum.com'
  dctm:obj_id     CDATA #IMPLIED
  dctm:obj_status CDATA #IMPLIED
  dctm:version_label CDATA #IMPLIED">
```

Description:

For the purposes of the Documentum Content Management System, a DTD for an application must declare the attributes listed below. When objects representing chunks of a source document are checked out, Documentum adds these attributes to the root element for each object. The attributes have two purposes.

- The XML editors use the attributes to make text read-only and indicate changes when text is edited.
- Documentum uses the attributes to process objects on import and check in.

The attributes are declared using the entity %dctmatts.

Attribute	Value	Identifies
xmlns:dctm	http://www.documentum.com.	DCTM namespace URI declaration
dctm:obj_id	Value of r_object_id	Object ID of the object in Documentum
dctm:version_label	Value of r_version_label	Version label of the object in Documentum

Attribute	Value	Identifies
dctm:obj_status	default	The modification status of the document. This attribute is set to “default” if the object is checked out. If the object status is “default” on check in, the object is versioned.
	read-only	The attribute is set to “read-only” if the object is not checked out. The XML editors will make the content read-only.
	changed	The attribute is set to “changed” by an editing application. If the object status is “changed” on check in, the object is versioned.
	unchanged	If the attribute value is “unchanged” on check in, the object is not versioned..

8.2.2 Entity % dctmlinkatts;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % dctmlinkatts "
    xmlns:dctm      CDATA #FIXED
    'http://www.documentum.com'
    dctm:link_obj_id  CDATA #IMPLIED
    dctm:link_obj_status CDATA #IMPLIED
    dctm:link_version_label CDATA #IMPLIED">
```

Description:

For the purposes of the Documentum Content Management System, a DTD for an application must declare the attributes listed below. When linked objects representing a source document are checked out, Documentum adds the attributes declared below to the root element for each object. The attributes have two purposes.

- The XML editors use the attributes to make text read-only and indicate changes when text is edited
- Documentum uses the attributes to process objects on import and check in.

The attributes are declared using the entity %dctmlinkatts;

Attribute	Value	Identifies
xmlns:dctm	http://www.documentum.com.	DCTM namespace URI declaration
dctm:link_obj_id	Value of r_object_id	Object ID of the linked object in Documentum
dctm:link_version_label	Value of r_version_label	Version label of the linked object in Documentum

Attribute	Value	Identifies
dctm:link_obj_status	default	The modification status of the linked object. This attribute is set to “default” if the object is checked out. If the object status is “default” on check in, the object is versioned.
	read-only	The attribute is set to “read-only” if the object is not checked out. The XML editors will make the content read-only.
	changed	The attribute is set to “changed” by an editing application. If the object status is “changed” on check in, the object is versioned.
	unchanged	If the attribute value is “unchanged” on check in, the object is not versioned..

8.3. NZGLS Attributes:

8.3.1 Entity %nzgls.att;

Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % nzgls.att "
    description CDATA #IMPLIED
    sonz CDATA #IMPLIED
">
```

Description:

These attributes are declared for inclusion in the global metatypes. They will be used by PCO for storing required NZGLS metadata.

See the *New Zealand Government Locator Service (NZGLS) Metadata Standard and Reference Manual* (Version 2.0, 31 August 2001).

Attribute	Description
description	A textual description of the content or purpose of the resource or service. <i>See NZGLS Reference Manual, Section G.</i>
sonz	This attribute is for the PCO subject values stored against the document. Values are sourced from the "Subjects of New Zealand" thesaurus (SONZ). Up to five values can be stored for each document. This metadata is to be included in all xml files so that the files supplied for the e-government portal are NZGLS (New Zealand Government Locator Service) compliant - refer section F: The Subject Element". <i>See NZGLS Reference Manual, Section G.</i>

8.4. Format Related Entities

8.4.1 Entity %font-size;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % font-size "  
    (6|6.5|7|7.5|8|8.5|9|9.5|10|10.5|11|11.5|12|12.5|13|13.5|14)  
    ">
```

Description:

Used to provide detailed control over formatting of font size in Tables and in Signature Blocks.

8.4.2 Entity %leading;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % leading "  
    (6|6.5|7|7.5|8|8.5|9|9.5|10|10.5|11|11.5|12|12.5|13|13.5|14)  
    ">
```

Description:

Used to provide detailed control over formatting of leading size in Tables and in Signature Blocks.

8.5. Core Entities

8.5.1 Entity %href.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % href.att "href CDATA #IMPLIED" >
```

Description:

This attribute indicates that the element in question links to another element. The element being linked to may be within the document or in another document, and is referenced via its ID attribute. This attribute must have the value of the ID attribute to which the element is linking.

8.5.2 Entity %id.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % id.att "id ID #IMPLIED" >
```

Description:

The implied ID attribute is used for several purposes:

- Firstly, it is used to support linking between and within documents.
- Secondly, it is used for the insertion of annotations into legislative material.
- Thirdly, it is used for the naming of files under the NZ LENZ DTDs.

IDs are generated automatically, and are not normally inserted by drafters or compilers.

8.5.3 Entity %lang.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % lang.att "xml:lang (en-NZ | mi-NZ) 'en-NZ'" >
```

Description:

The xml:lang attribute is used for two purposes:

- For external purposes to generate language related attributes on Web output.
- For internal purposes as a means of identifying Māori language material in the legislation set.

The country code is NZ for New Zealand

The language codes are “en-NZ” for English and “mi-NZ” for Māori.

Using the %lang.att; entity the xml:lang attribute can be added to any element type declaration that needs a language attribute. In XML documents that will be published to the web, the xml:lang attribute should be included at the highest level.

Technical Notes:

Language Codes are defined in ISO/IEC 639:1988 two letter contraction.

Country codes are defined in ISO 3166.

Since the LENZ DTDs will support only two languages, the values of xml:lang have been defined with a name token group as the declared value.

8.5.4 Entity %security-types;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % security-types "(in-confidence | sensitive | confidential | restricted | secret | top-secret)" >
```

Description:

Defines the allowed security levels for a document:

Value	Description
in-confidence	In confidence
sensitive	Sensitive
confidential	Confidential
restricted	Restricted
secret	Secret
top-secret	Top Secret

8.5.5 Entity %footer-types;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % footer-types "(draft-confidence | draft-provisional | gazette-only | gazette-draft-confidence | gazette-draft-provisional | prospective-consolidation | draft-consultation | unofficial-reprint)" >
```

Description:

Defines the available footer types. In order for a footer to be inserted, an attribute is available to the <act>, <bill>, <sop> and <regulation> elements, which allows users to select, from a drop down list, text that is to be inserted into the footer of each page of the document. The footer must only appear on Bills when using draft or RT stylesheets, and in regulations and SOPs using the draft stylesheet.

The available values, and the footer text to be generated based on these values, are as follows:

Value	Footer Text
draft-confidence	Draft in confidence
draft-provisional	Provisional draft only
gazette-only	Gazette only
gazette-draft-confidence	Gazette only - Draft in confidence
gazette-draft-provisional	Gazette only - Provisional draft only
prospective-consolidation	Prospective consolidation
draft-consultation	Consultation draft
unofficial-reprint	Unofficial reprint

8.5.6 Entity %jurisdiction.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % jurisdiction.att "jurisdiction
    (act | nz | nsw | nt| qld |
    sa | tas | vic | wa | uk |
    can | other) 'nz'" >
```

Description:

This attribute gives the jurisdiction of a legislation item being cited. The list of allowed values may be expanded in the future if necessary. The default value is nz (New Zealand), which does not have to be included in the markup. The allowable values as follows:

Jursdiction	Description
nz	New Zealand. (Default value)
act	Australian Capital Territories
nsw	New South Wales
nt	Northern Territories
qld	Queensland
sa	South Australia
tas	Tasmania
vic	Victoria
wa	Western Australia
uk	United Kingdom
can	Canada
other	Anything other than the above.

8.5.7 Entity %prov-types;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % prov-types "(article | clause | item | order |
    principle | regulation | right | rule |
    guide | section)" >
```

Description:

Describes the default type of provisions, which are descendants of the current element. This is particularly useful where the type is sensitive to the context of the <prov> structure, for example within a schedule.

8.6. Global Attributes

8.6.1 Entity %global.atts;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % global.atts
    "%dctmatts;
    %id.att;
    %lang.att;
    %nzgls.atts;
    agency.code      (PCO | IRD | OC) 'PCO'
    date.instructed  CDATA      #IMPLIED
    date.terminated  CDATA      #IMPLIED
    drafters.name    CDATA      #IMPLIED
    drafted.by       CDATA      #IMPLIED
    instructing.office CDATA      #IMPLIED
    footer           %footer-types; #IMPLIED
    pco.num          CDATA      #IMPLIED
    revision.no      CDATA      #IMPLIED
    security         %security-types; 'in-confidence'
    year            CDATA      #IMPLIED
    year.imprint     CDATA      #IMPLIED
    irdnumbering     (yes | no)  'no'
    doc.title        CDATA      #IMPLIED
    doc.context      CDATA      #IMPLIED
    doc.id           CDATA      #IMPLIED
    in.amend         (true | false) #IMPLIED
    official         (yes | no)  'yes'" >
```

Description:

Attributes present in the top-level element in document types: Act, Bill, Regulation, and SOP.

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label	Documentum related attributes. See Section 8.2.
id	Unique identifier for the document

Attribute	Description
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ) See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
description sonz	NZ Government Locater Service Attributes. See %nzgls.att; at section 8.3.
agency.code	Values: (IRD PCO OC) default PCO
date.instructed	Date Instructed. Note: this attribute is thought to be redundant to Acts.
date.terminated	Date terminated
drafters.name	Name/s of user/s whose profile of the document includes the element bearing the attribute.
drafted.by	Name/s of the document's drafter/s.
instructing.office	Instructing office
footer	Values (draft-confidence draft-provisional gazette-only gazette-draft-confidence gazette-draft-provisional prospective-consolidation draft-consultation unofficial-reprint) See %footer-types; at 8.5.5 .
pco.num	PCO's number
revision.no	Revision number
security	Allowed values: (in.confidence sensitive confidential restricted secret top.secret). See section 8.5.4
year	The year of publication of the document. Format is "YYYY"
year.imprint	The year of printing of a particulare version or rendition of a document.
irdnumbering	Default is "no". If value is "yes" then autonumbering tools should apply IRD-style numbering to the element and its descendants.
doc.title	Optional. The title of the legislation document to which the element belongs. This attribute provides for successful title-dependent processing when a chunk or fragment is processed separately from its parent. It will always be populated automatically and should not be edited by users.
doc.context	Optional. The full content of the element, expressed as an XPath. For example a subpart of a part of a schedule might bear: doc.context="act[1]/schedule.group[1]/schedule[7]/schedule.provisions[1]/part[1]/subpart[2]" This attribute provides for successful context-dependent processing when a chunk or fragment is processed separately from its parent. It will always be populated automatically and should not be edited by users.

Attribute	Description
doc.id	Optional. The XML ID of the document to which the element belongs. This attribute provides for successful document id-dependent processing when a chunk or fragment is processed separately from its parent. It will always be populated automatically and should not be edited by users.
in.amend	Optional. Whether the element occurs within an amendment or not. This attribute provides for processing to distinguish amendment content when a chunk or fragment is processed separately from its parent. It will always be populated automatically and should not be edited by users.

8.7. Status Related Entities

8.7.1 Entity %deletion-status.meta.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % deletion-status.meta.att "" >
```

Description:

Describes that an element of legislation has been deleted and the process that led its deletion. This entity is redefined in the higher level DTDs.

The presence of this attribute implies that the element in question has been deleted. Likewise, its absence implies that the element in question has not been deleted.

Note that by convention provisions of Acts are “repealed” and provisions of Regulations are “revoked”. Users must take care to use the correct value for the context.

8.8. Processing Attributes Entities

8.8.1 Entity %processing.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % processing.att "IGNORE" >
<![%processing.att;[

<!-- None at present -->

]]>
```

Description:

Entity %processing.att provides for additional attributes to be used by processing systems.

If the publication system adds the following declaration to the internal subset of doctype declarations, then the declarations in the "processing atts" conditional section will be "turned on", overriding any subsequent declarations:

<!ENTITY % processing.atts "INCLUDE">

An example:

```
<!DOCTYPE regulation PUBLIC "-//NZPCO//DTD Statutory Regulation//EN" "nzreg.dtd" [<!ENTITY %
processing.atts "INCLUDE">]>
```

Declarations within the "processing.atts" conditional section will not be included in the DTDs without this re-declaration in the internal subset – ie, they will have no impact on the element and attribute list declarations that are used for validation of data for authoring and storage.

Change Tracking

8.8.2 Overview

These elements and attributes are used for tracking the following:

- A Bill as it passes through each stage or reading, on its way to becoming an Act, or else when discharged, merged, split, and so on.
- The changes appearing in a prospective consolidation of an Act or Regulation.
- The changes in a draft document, such as a draft reprint.

Most insertions and deletions are identified by attributes. For inline structures, the elements <struckoutwords> and <insertwords> are used.

8.8.3 Entity %insertion-types;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % insertion-types "
    (insert-draft | insert-majority
    | insert-unanimous | insert-cowh)" >
```

Description:

This entity defines the allowable set of values for types of insertion. This definition is used in entities %insertion.atts; (section 8.8.5). See also %struckout.atts; (section 8.8.6) and %changetrack-types.atts; (section 8.8.4). The allowed values are described in the following table.

Value	Description
insert-draft	A proposed insert for the consideration of a Select Committee.
insert-majority	An insert recommended by the majority of a Select Committee.
insert-unanimous	An insert recommended unanimously by a Select Committee.
insert-cowh	An insert effected at COWH stage.

8.8.4 Entity %struckout-types;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % struckout-types "
    (struckout-draft | struckout-majority
    | struckout-unanimous | struckout-cowh)" >
```

Description:

This entity defines the allowable set of values for types of struckout. This definition is used in entities %insertion8.8.5 .atts; (section). See also %struckout.atts; (section 8.8.6) and %changetrack-types.atts; (section 8.8.4). The allowed values are described in the following table..

Value	Description
struckout-draft	A proposed struckout for the consideration of a Select Committee.
struckout –majority	A struckout recommended by the majority of a Select Committee.
struckout –unanimous	A struckout recommended unanimously by a sSelect Committee.
struckout –cowh	A struckout effected at COWH stage.

8.8.5 Entity %changetrack-types;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % changetrack-types "
    (insert-draft | insert-majority
    | insert-unanimous | insert-cowh
    | struckout-draft | struckout-majority
    | struckout-unanimous | struckout-cowh)" >
```

Description:

This entity defines the allowable set of values for types of insertion and deletion. It effectively combines the allowed values defined in %insertion-types; and %struckout-types. This definition is used in entities % standard-statuses.meta.atts; (section 8.8.7). The allowed values are described in the following table.

Value	Description
insert-draft	A proposed insert for the consideration of a Select Committee.
insert-majority	An insert recommended by the majority of a Select Committee.
insert-unanimous	An insert recommended unanimously by a Select Committee.
insert-cowh	An insert effected at COWH stage.
struckout-draft	A proposed struckout for the consideration of a Select Committee.

Value	Description
struckout –majority	A struckout recommended by the majority of a Select Committee.
struckout –unanimous	A struckout recommended unanimously by a sSelect Committee.
struckout –cowh	A struckout effected at COWH stage.

8.8.6 Entity %insertion.atts;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % insertion.atts "
    amend.level1 %insertion-types; #IMPLIED
    amend.level2 %insertion-types; #IMPLIED
    by.item1 CDATA #IMPLIED
    by.item2 CDATA #IMPLIED
">
```

Description:

This entity is also described by its direct inclusion in %change.tracked.elements; as described below. See also Section 8.8.

Attribute	Description
amend.level1	Values: (insert-draft insert-majority insert-unanimous insert-cowh)
amend.level2	The selection indicates the mode of the first or second level change. That is, whether the change was by a majority or unanimous decision or by COWH. See %insertion-types at section 8.8.2 .
by.item1	For a level 1 or 2 change, this attribute is used to capture a reference to the item invoking the change, if available (for example, the SOP number).
by.item2	

8.8.7 Entity %struckout.atts;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % struckout.atts "
    amend.level1 %struckout-types; #IMPLIED
    amend.level2 %struckout-types; #IMPLIED
    by.item1 CDATA #IMPLIED
    by.item2 CDATA #IMPLIED
">
```

Description:

This entity is also described by its direct inclusion in %change.tracked.elements; as described below. See also Section 8.8.

Attribute	Description
-----------	-------------

Attribute	Description
amend.level1	Values: (struckout-draft struckout -majority struckout -unanimous struckout -cown)
amend.level2	The selection indicates the mode of the first or second level change. That is, whether the change was by a majority or unanimous decision or by COWH. See %struckout-types at section 8.8.3 .
by.item1	For a level 1 or 2 change, this attribute is used to capture a reference to the item invoking the change, if available (for example, the SOP number).
by.item2	

8.8.8 Entity %standard-statuses.meta.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % standard-statuses.meta.att "
    amend.level1 %changetrack-types; #IMPLIED
    amend.level2 %changetrack-types; #IMPLIED
    by.item1 CDATA #IMPLIED
    by.item2 CDATA #IMPLIED
    quote CDATA #IMPLIED
    %deletion-status.meta.att;
```

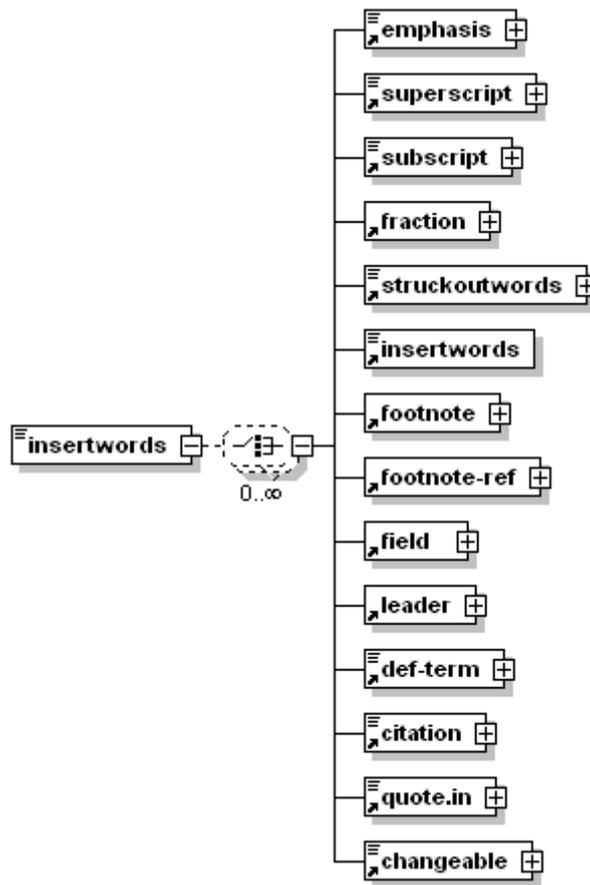
Description:

This entity provides for all change tracking attributes (insertion and struckout) on element structures.

Attribute	Description
amend.level1	Values: (insert-draft insert-majority insert-unanimous insert-cown struckout-draft struckout -majority struckout -unanimous struckout -cown)
amend.level2	The selection indicates the mode of the first or second level change. That is, whether the change was by a majority or unanimous decision or by COWH. See %changetrack-types at section 8.8.4 .
by.item1	For a level 1 or 2 change, this attribute is used to capture a reference to the item invoking the change, if available (for example, the SOP number).
by.item2	
quote	This attribute records an element's quotation status for purposes of rendition. It is to be automatically populated based on context by the authoring tool and is used by stylesheets to trigger generation of quote marks,

8.8.9 Element insertwords

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT insertwords (%phrase;)* >
<!ATTLIST insertwords %insertion.atts;
           %id.att; >
```

Description:

This element models the changes made to the words within a text element. These items are used where PCDATA may be used, and capture information inserted and deleted. See also the more detailed description in the Bills Core DTD. Usage is essentially the same in each Bar from bar-2 onwards.

Example of Use:

```
<struckoutwords amend.level1="struckout-majority">Matrimonial Property</struckoutwords>
<insertwords amend.level1="insert-majority">Property
(Relationships)</insertwords>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in graphic.inline changeable (Bills, Sops and Draft Regs only)

Used in: amend.in authorisation billref billref.alt cf changeable citation clause.ref crosshead def-term denominator description emphasis empowering-prov enactment entry eqn-line explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead

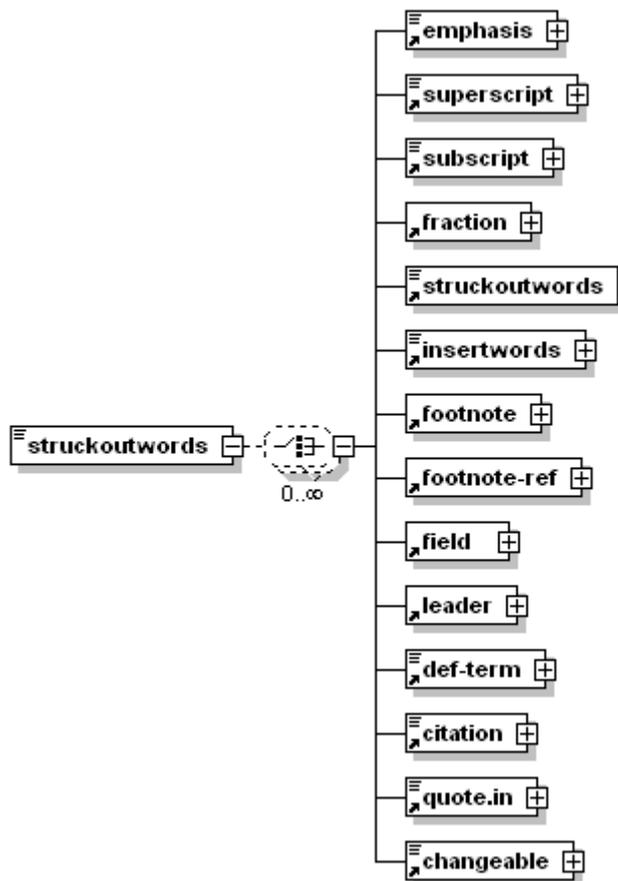
explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 extref follow-text gazette-date
 heading history-note insertwords intref ird-crosshead issue-authority label
 label-para.crosshead leg-title ministry motion numerator
 preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords
 subheading subprov.crosshead subscript superscript term text title title.alt
 variable

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
amend.level1	Values: (insert-draft insert-majority insert-unanimous insert-cowh)
amend.level2	The selection indicates the mode of the first or second level change. That is whether the change was by a majority or unanimous decision or by COWH. See %insertion-types at section 8.8.2 .
by.item1	For a level 1 or 2 change, this attribute is used to capture a reference to the item invoking the change, if available (for example, the SOP number).
by.item2	
id	

8.8.10 Element struckoutwords

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT struckoutwords (%phrase;)* >
<!ATTLIST struckoutwords %struckout.att;
%id.att; >
```

Description:

This element models the changes made to the words within a text element. These items are used where PCDATA may be used, and capture information inserted and deleted. See also the more detailed description in the Bills Core DTD. Usage is essentially the same in each Bar from bar-2 onwards.

Example of Use:

```
<struckoutwords amend.level1="struckout-majority">Matrimonial Property</struckoutwords>
<insertwords amend.level1="insert-majority">Property
(Relationships)</insertwords>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in graphic.inline changeable (Bills, Sops and Draft Regs only)

Used in: amend.in authorisation billref billref.alt cf changeable citation clause.ref crosshead def-term denominator description emphasis empowering-prov enactment entry eqn-line explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 extref follow-text gazette-date heading history-note insertwords intref ird-crosshead issue-authority label label-para.crosshead leg-title ministry motion numerator preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords subheading subprov.crosshead subscript superscript term text title title.alt variable

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
amend.level1	Values: (struckout-draft struckout -majority struckout -unanimous struckout -cownh) The selection indicates the mode of the first or second level change.
amend.level2	That is whether the change was by a majority or unanimous decision or by COWH. See %struckout-types at section 8.8.3 .
by.item1	For a level 1 or 2 change, this attribute is used to capture a reference to the item invoking the change, if available (for example, the SOP number).
by.item2	
id	

8.8.11 Entity %change.tracked.elements;

Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % change.tracked.elements "struckoutwords | insertwords" >
```

Description:

Used to collect the two change tracking elements together under a single entity.

8.9. Floating Elements

8.9.1 Element omitted-provs

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % omitted-provs.model "EMPTY" >
<!ENTITY % omitted-provs.atts "%id.atts;
    toc (yes | no) 'yes'" >
<!ELEMENT omitted-provs %omitted-provs.model; >
<!ATTLIST omitted-provs %omitted-provs.atts; >
```

Description:

Where a Bill is split, the omitted provisions in the split Bill (compared with the parent Bill) are represented in print by a series of dots across the page, which are also re-produced in the Table of Contents. The empty element <omitted-provs/> has been created to model this.

The <omitted-provs/> element may in practice represent the entirety of a missing Part, or Subpart.

Example of Use:

```
<prov><label>2</label>
<heading>Commencement</heading>
<prov.body>
<subprov><label>1</label>
<para><text>This Act comes into force on the day after the date on which it receives the Royal
assent.</text></para>
</subprov>
</prov.body>
</prov>
<omitted-provs/>
<prov><label>146</label>
<heading>Interpretation</heading>
<prov.body>
...
```

Used in: body part schedule.group subpart

Attributes: id toc

8.9.2 Element option

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % option.model "EMPTY" >
<!ELEMENT option %option.model; >
<!ENTITY % option.atts "
```

```

type (start | end ) #REQUIRED
num CDATA #IMPLIED
%id.att; " >
<!ATTLIST option %option.atts; >

```

Description:

Used to mark the start and end of a set of “possible” or optional content.

Technical Note:

The option element is essentially a “floating” heading that lacks any sub-structures. The DTD therefore allows the entry of consecutive option start structures. However, in normal usage a specific option “A” should have both its start and its end before a second option “B” heading is allowed to start.

Example of Use:

```

<option type="start" num="A"/>
<eqn><eqn-line><fraction><numerator>p</numerator>
<denominator>q</denominator></fraction></eqn-line>
<para><text>where&mdash;</text>
...
</para>
</eqn>
<option type="end" num="A"/>

```

Used in (Act): amend body conv.body conv.end conv.front eqn example figure footnote form.body head1 head2 label-para list long-title notes para preamble-block prov prov.body proviso readers-notes schedule.amendments schedule.forms schedule.group schedule.misc schedule.provisions subpart subprov variable-def

Used in (Reg): amend body conv.body conv.end conv.front eqn example figure footnote form.body head2 label-para list long-title notes para part preamble-block prov prov.body proviso readers-notes schedule.amendments schedule.forms schedule.group schedule.misc schedule.provisions schedule.provisions subpart subprov variable-def

Used in (Bill): amend body conv.body conv.end conv.front eqn example figure footnote form.body head2 label-para list long-title notes para part preamble-block prov prov.body proviso readers-notes schedule.amendments schedule.forms schedule.group schedule.misc schedule.provisions schedule.provisions subpart subprov variable-def

Used in (Sop): amend body conv.body conv.end conv.front eqn example figure footnote form.body head2 instrument.amend label-para list long-title notes part preamble-block prov prov.body proviso readers-notes schedule.amendments schedule.forms schedule.group schedule.misc schedule.provisions schedule.provisions sop.amend sop.newenact sop.para sop.part sop.split sop.subpart subprov variable-def

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
type	start – for start of option end – for end of option
num	Used to identify start (and also end) of options A, B, C, etc

Attribute	Description
id	

8.9.3 Entity %floating.elements;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % floating.elements "option">
```

Description:

Used to define “floating elements” under a single entity, which can be redefined in the higher level DTDs.

Bills allow both element <option> and element <omitted-provs> as floating elements. Within Acts Regulations and SOPs only element <option> is required.

%floating.elements; is redefined for Bills at section 6.2.1 .

8.10. Phrase level entities for inline elements

8.10.1 Entity %basic-phrase;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % basic-phrase "#PCDATA | emphasis | superscript |
    subscript | fraction | %change.tracked.elements;" >
```

Description:

Defines a set of basic text-level structures.

8.10.2 Entity %phrase;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % phrase "%basic-phrase; | footnote | footnote-ref |
    field | leader | def-term | citation | quote.in |
    graphic.inline" >
```

Description:

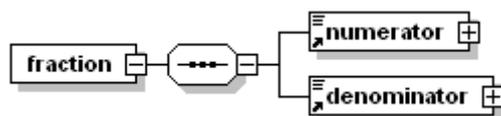
Similar to %basic-phrase;, this entity defines a more comprehensive range of structures for use in a variety of inline contexts.

%phrase; is redefined for Bills at section 6.2.4 , for SOPs at section 7.2.3 , and for (Draft) Regulations at section 5.2.4 .

8.11. Inline Elements

8.11.1 Element fraction

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % fraction.model "(numerator, denominator)" >
<!ENTITY % fraction.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT fraction %fraction.model; >
```

<!ATTLIST fraction %fraction.atts; >

Description:

Used to mark-up a fractional value (for example ½). A fraction consists of two objects: a numerator and a denominator.

Technical Notes:

Common fractions such as ½ and ¼ are entered as character entities such as ½ and ¾. The <fraction> element is used only for fractions that do not have a character entity.

Example of Use:

```
<fraction>
<numerator>9</numerator>
<denominator>11</denominator>
</fraction>
```

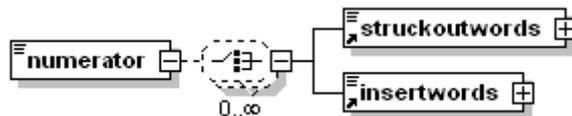
Children: numerator denominator

Used in: amend.in cf crosshead description emphasis entry eqn-line
 explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1
 explnote.subhead2 follow-text gazette-date heading history-note
 insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead
 preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords
 subheading subprov.crosshead text variable def-term

Attributes: id

8.11.2 Element numerator

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % numerator.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % numerator.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT numerator %numerator.model; >
<!ATTLIST numerator %numerator.atts; >
```

Description:

The numerator of a fractional number. See also elements <denominator> and <fraction>.

Example of Use:

```
<fraction>
<numerator>9</numerator>
<denominator>11</denominator>
</fraction>
```

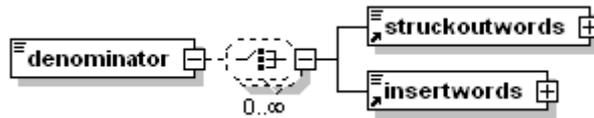
Children: insertwords struckoutwords

Used in: fraction

Attributes: id

8.11.3 Element denominator

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % denominator.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*">
<!ENTITY % denominator.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT denominator %denominator.model; >
<!ATTLIST denominator %denominator.atts; >
```

Description:

The denominator in a fraction. See also elements <numerator> and <fraction>.

Example of Use:

```
<fraction>
<numerator>9</numerator>
<denominator>11</denominator>
</fraction>
```

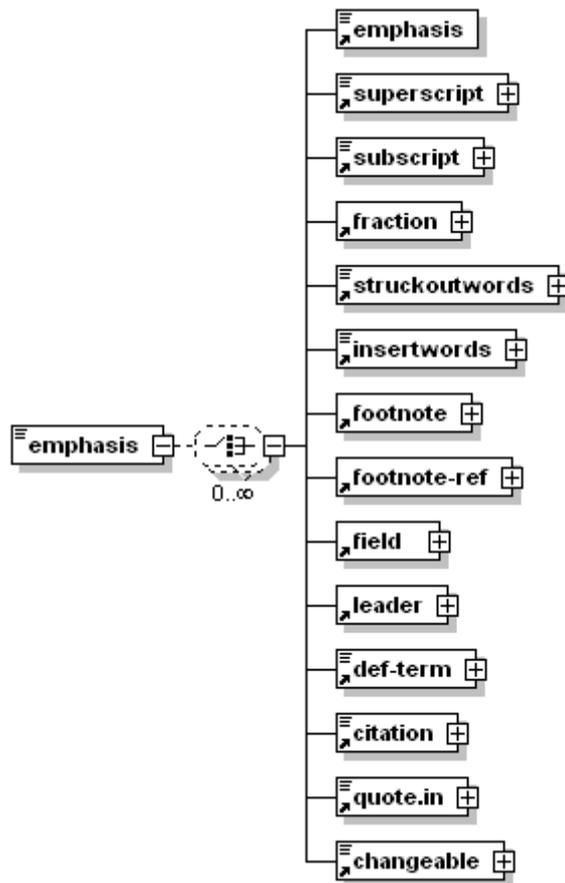
Children: insertwords struckoutwords

Used in: fraction

Attributes: id

8.11.4 Element emphasis

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % emphasis.model "(%phrase;)*" >
<!ENTITY % emphasis.atts
    "style (italic | bold | bold-italic | underline | roman) 'italic'
    %id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT emphasis %emphasis.model; >
<!ATTLIST emphasis %emphasis.atts; >
    
```

Description:

Indicates emphasised formatting for a section of text. This formatting is determined from the style attribute. Italics are commonly used on certain latin phrases.

Technical Notes:

This element should, generally speaking, only be used to emphasise inline sections of text rather than entire paragraphs.

Example of Use:

```

<para><text>an application made after an order has been made declaring a marriage to be void <emphasis
style="italic">ab initio</emphasis> must be made ...</text></para>
    
```

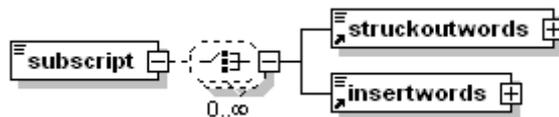
Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in graphic.inline changeable (Bills, SOPs and Draft Regulations)

Used in: amend.in cf citation crosshead description emphasis entry eqn-line
 explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1
 explnote.subhead2 follow-text gazette-date heading history-note
 insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label label-para.crosshead
 preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in sig.officer sig.para
 struckoutwords subheading subprov.crosshead text variable def-term

Attributes: style id

8.11.5 Element subscript

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % subscript.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % subscript.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT subscript %subscript.model; >
<!ATTLIST subscript %subscript.atts; >
```

Description:

A subscript to a word or sentence. May also be used for simple chemical formulae such as H₂O.

Example of Use:

Ore Reserves are sub-divided in order of increasing confidence into Probable Ore Reserves<subscript>D30</subscript> and Proved Ore Reserves<subscript>D31</subscript>.

Children: insertwords struckoutwords

Used in: amend.in cf crosshead description emphasis entry eqn-line
 explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1
 explnote.subhead2 follow-text gazette-date heading history-note
 insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead
 preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords
 subheading subprov.crosshead text variable def-term

Attributes: id

8.11.6 Element superscript

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % superscript.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % superscript.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT superscript %superscript.model; >
<!ATTLIST superscript %superscript.atts; >
```

Description:

A superscript to a word of sentence. This is a superscript¹.

Example of Use:

```
<para><text>All that area containing 379 m<superscript>2</superscript>, more or less...</text></para>
```

Children: insertwords struckoutwords

Used in: amend.in cf crosshead description emphasis entry eqn-line
 explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1
 explnote.subhead2 follow-text gazette-date heading history-note
 insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead
 preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords
 subheading subprov.crosshead text variable def-term

Attributes: id

8.11.7 Element field

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % field.model "EMPTY" >
<!ENTITY % field.atts "
    fill (space | dot | underline | pairdot) 'space'
    fill-length (5|10|20|30|40|50|60|70|80|90|100|110) #REQUIRED
    %id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT field %field.model; >
<!ATTLIST field %field.atts; >
```

Description:

A field, as part of a form or other document. Fields are normally represented in documents by a series of spaces, dots or underlines. This element is used to generate these according to the fill attribute (which determines the character with which the field is to be filled), and the fill-length attribute (which determines the length of the field).

See also element <leader> at Section 8.11.8 .

Technical Notes:

This approach is preferable to the use of characters or character-entities because:

- (a) It is easier to automatically distinguish fields from erroneous spaces or dots.
- (b) Allowing multiple spaces to be entered into a document can lead to the incorrect usage of whitespace to create indenting or line-breaks.

Example of Use:

Example of Use: Misuse of Drugs Regulations

```
<signature-block>
<sig para align="right">Diane Morcom,<field fill-length="7" fill="underline"/></sig para>
<sig para align="right">Clerk of the Executive Council.</sig para>
</signature-block>
```

Used in: amend.in crosshead description emphasis entry explnote.crosshead
 explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 follow-text
 heading insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead
 made.at preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in sig.officer
 sig.para struckoutwords subheading subprov.crosshead text

Attributes: fill-length fill id

8.11.8 Element leader

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % leader.model "EMPTY" >
<!ENTITY % leader.atts "
    fill (space | dot | underline | pairdot) 'dot'
    %id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT leader %leader.model; >
<!ATTLIST leader %leader.atts; >
```

Description:

A leader is a horizontal pattern used to separate or create space between sections of text on the same line.

See also element <field> at Section 8.11.7 .

Technical Notes:

This element is used to generate a leader on output, which should span from the text before the element to the text after the element, making the text before the element left-justified and the text after the element right-justified. Types (space, dot, underline, pairdot) are provided.

- dot: from here.....to here
- pairdot: from here..to here
- spaces: from here to here
- underline: from here_____to here

Example of Use:

```
<signature-block>
<sig.para>For the month of <field fill="dot" fill-length="10"/> 19 <field fill="dot" fill-
length="5"/></sig.para>
<sig.para>By <field fill="dot" fill-length="50"/> <leader fill="space"/> Page No <field fill="dot"
fill-length="10"/></sig.para>
...
</signature-block>
```

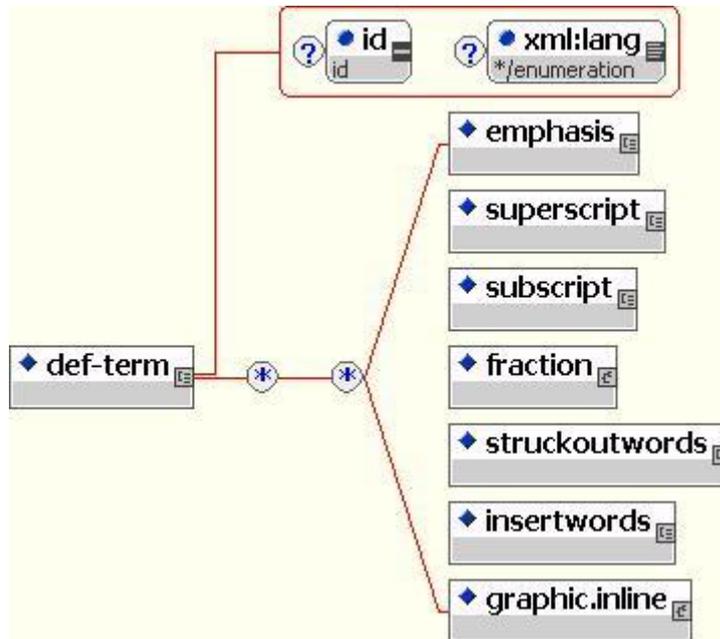
Used in: amend.in crosshead description emphasis entry explnote.crosshead
 explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 follow-text
 heading insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead

made.at preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in sig.officer
sig.para struckoutwords subheading subprov.crosshead text

Attributes: fill id

8.11.9 Element def-term

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % def-term.model "(%basic-phrase; | graphic.inline)*" >
<!ENTITY % def-term.atts "%id.att;
                        %lang.att;" >
<IELEMENT def-term %def-term.model; >
<IATTLIST def-term %def-term.atts; >
```

Description:

A term being defined by a paragraph.

Example of Use:

```
<para><text><def-term>administration</def-term> has the meaning
given to it by <citation>section <extref>2</extref> of the
<leg-title>Administration Act 1969</leg-title></citation>
</text></para>
```

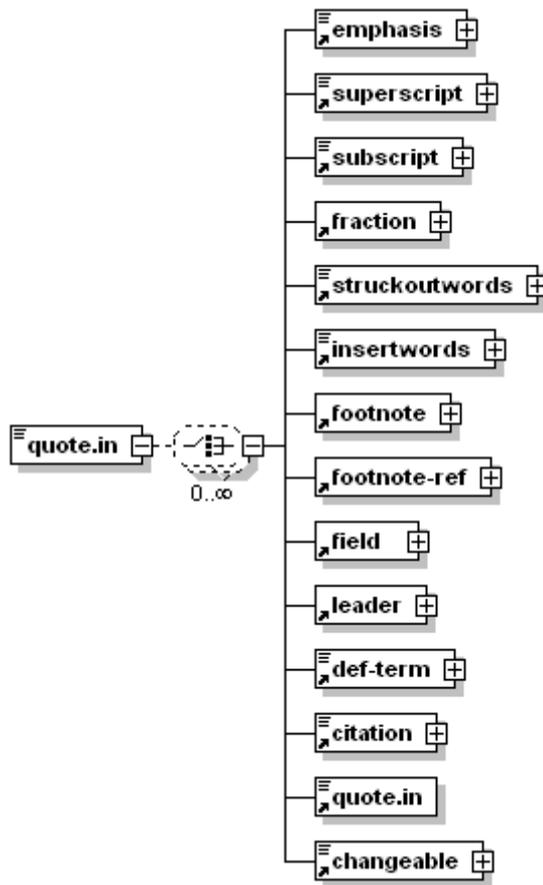
Children: insertwords struckoutwords

Used in: amend.in crosshead description emphasis entry explnote.crosshead
explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 follow-text
heading insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead
preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords
subheading subprov.crosshead text

Attributes: id xml:lang

8.11.10 Element quote.in

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % quote.in.model "(%phrase;)*" >
<!ENTITY % quote.in.atts "%href.att;
%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT quote.in %quote.in.model; >
<!ATTLIST quote.in %quote.in.atts; >
```

Description:

An inline quote.

Technical Notes:

Quotation-marks are not included in the text of the markup.

Example of Use:

```
<subprov><label>2</label>
<para><text>In this Act, the Act that was previously called the <citation><leg-title>Matrimonial Property
Act 1976</leg-title> </citation>is called <quote.in>the principal Act</quote.in>...
```

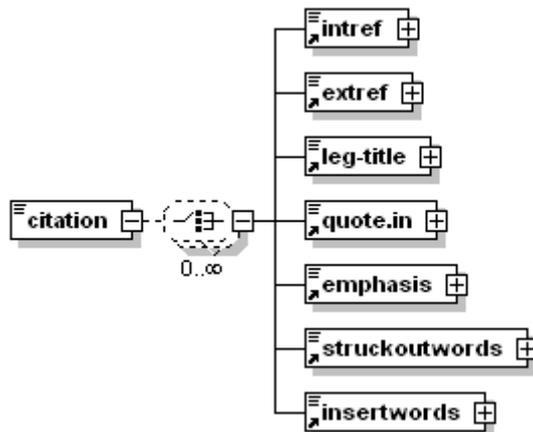
Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in graphic.inline
changeable (Bills, SOPs and Draft Regulations only)

Used in: amend.in amending-instruction cf citation crosshead description emphasis entry explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 follow-text heading history-note insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords subheading subprov.crosshead text

Attributes: href amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.11.11 Element citation

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % citation.model "(#PCDATA | intref | extref | leg-title
| quote.in | emphasis
| %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % citation.atts "%jurisdiction.att;
%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT citation %citation.model; >
<!ATTLIST citation %citation.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used for citations to both the current legislation item and other external legislation items. The citation can encapsulate both the title of the legislation in question and references to the specific provisions therein.

Example of Use:

```
<para><text>See <citation>Part <intref href="ACT-NZL-PUB.1976-166.BDY.PT.9">9</intref> of this
Act</citation> as to the transitional and saving provisions.</text></para>
```

Example of Use:

```
...called the <citation><leg-title>Matrimonial Property Act 1976</leg-title></citation>
```

Children: intref extref leg-title quote.in emphasis struckoutwords insertwords

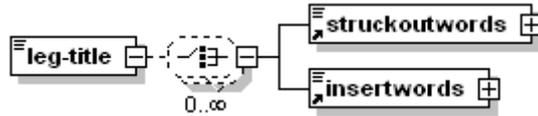
Used in: amend.in amends-affect amends-text authorisation cf changeable crosshead description emphasis empowering-prov entry explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 follow-text heading history-note insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead preamble.headlev2

preamble.headlev3 quote.in range reprint.amend struckoutwords
 subheading subprov.crosshead text

Attributes: jurisdiction id

8.11.12 Element leg-title

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % leg-title.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % leg-title.atts "%href.att;
                        %id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT leg-title %leg-title.model; >
<!ATTLIST leg-title %leg-title.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used to model the titles of external pieces of legislation.

Example of Use:

... the principal Act is called the <citation><leg-title>
 Property (Relationships) Act 1976</leg-title></citation>...

Children: insertwords struckoutwords

Used in: citation

Attributes: href id

8.11.13 Element brk

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % brk.model "EMPTY" >
<!ENTITY % brk.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT brk %brk.model; >
<!ATTLIST brk %brk.atts; >
```

Description:

Used to force a line-break in elements such as <title>, <heading>, <eqn-line>, <entry>. In the context of an <eqn-line> the <brk/> element is used to force a line break in “long” equations.

Technical Note:

Used for formatting purposes only, primarily in major headings and in cross headings. Also used in equations.

Example of Use:

<crosshead>Death of spouse or de facto partner<brk/>

Insolvent deceased spouse or de facto partner</crosshead>

Example of Use: *Income Tax Act*. Section HH 5

```
<eqn>
<eqn-line>consideration paid to the person &plus; expenditure<brk/>
&minus; consideration paid by the person &minus; income</eqn-line>
</eqn>
```

Used in: crosshead entry eqn-line explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead
explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 gg heading ird-crosshead label-
para.crosshead made.present preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3
sig.officer sig.para subheading subprov.crosshead title title.alt
title.former (Bill DTD only)
billref billref.alt (SOP DTD only)

Attributes: id

8.11.14 Element brk.header

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT brk.header %brk.model; >
<!ATTLIST brk.header %brk.att; >
```

Description:

Used in elements title and title.alt to hard code linebreaks for the content of these elements when used for composition of hardcopy or PDF page headers. In all other renditions of title or title.alt content element brk.header should be ignored.

Technical Note:

Used for formatting purposes only, in document titles and alternative titles.

Example of Use:

```
<title> Securities Act (Global Investment <brk/>Services <brk.header/>Limited and Global Guardian
<brk/>Management Limited) <brk.header/> Exemption Notice<brk/> (No 2) 2003</title>
```

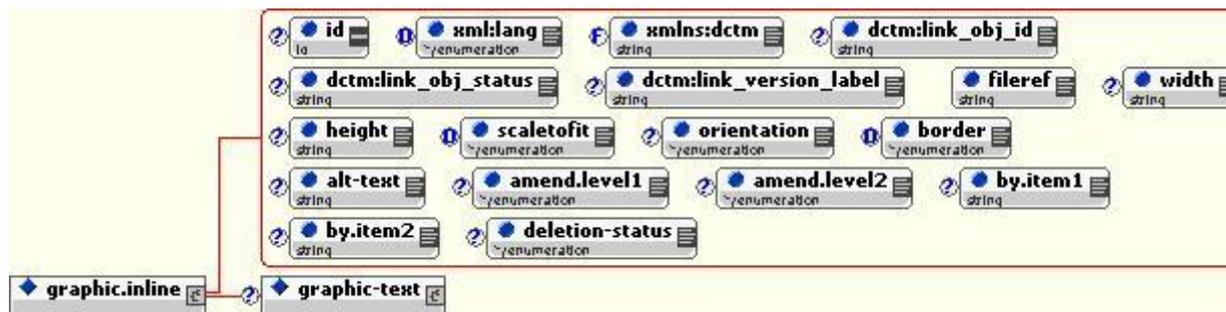
Used in: title title.alt

billref billref.alt (SOP DTD only)

Attributes: id

8.11.15 Element graphic.inline

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT graphic.inline %graphic.model; >
<!ATTLIST graphic.inline %graphic.atts; >
```

Description:

Element graphic.inline is used where graphical content, for example a symbol that is not available in any of the standard ISO character sets, must appear in-line with textual content.

Example of Use:

```
<prov>
  <label>1</label>
  <heading>Example</heading>
  <prov.body>
    <subprov>
      <label denominator="yes">1</label>
      <para>
        <text>The subsection discusses the use of the triskele
          (&ldquo;
            <graphic.inline fileref="triskele.svg" height="20" width="21"/>
            &rdquo;) motif in classical decorative arts.
          </text>
        </para>
      </subprov>
    </prov.body>
  </prov>
```

Children: graphic-text

Used in: amend.in crosshead description emphasis entry explnote.crosshead
 explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 follow-text
 heading insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead
 preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords
 subheading subprov.crosshead text variable def-term

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
id	Each graphic must have a unique ID. See <i>ID Schema</i> .
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ). See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
xmlns:dctm dctm:link_obj_id dctm:link_obj_status dctm:link_version_label	Documentum Link attributes. See section 8.2 for details
fileref	A unique file reference (file name), but does not include the file extension.
width	reproWidth in mm
height	reproDepth in mm

Attribute	Description
scaletofit	Defaults to '0'. Use '1' if image is to be scaled to fit. In the Authoring Tool, for the reproWidth and reproDepth attributes to work you must also assign an attribute to 'scaleToFit' in the DCF file and this attribute must have a value of '1' in the document for re-sizing to be enabled.
orientation	Portrait or landscape orientation.
border	Border is allowed. This attribute is not currently used, but is provided for future reference.
alt-text	Used to specify Alt-Text that can be displayed on the web.
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.
quote	See section 8.8.
deletion-status	Values Act: (not-in-force repealed expired spent) Values Reg: (not-in-force revoked expired spent) Bill: @deletion-status not used SOP: @deletion-status not used

8.12. Entities Related to Table Models.

8.12.1 Entity %yesorno;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % yesorno 'NMTOKEN'>

Description:

May be treated as a boolean attribute: Values 0 or 1. Used only in the context of the tables model.

8.12.2 Entity %titles; (Table title)

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % titles "(label?, empowering-prov?, heading?)" >

Description:

Used to add the empowering-prov element to the titles entity as defined in the Tables DTD. See section 9.2.

8.12.3 Entity %paracon;

Declaration:

<!ENTITY % paracon "(%phrase; | para | amend.in | brk | pageref)*">
<!ENTITY % tbl.entry.mdl "%paracon;" >

Description:

Defines the allowed content of a table cell (element <entry>). See element <entry> at section 9.3.7

8.12.4 Entitis %tbl.tgroup.att, %tbl.thead.att, %tbl.tbody.att, %tbl.colspec.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY %tbl.tgroup.att "%id.att;">
<!ENTITY %tbl.thead.att "%id.att;">
<!ENTITY %tbl.tbody.att "%id.att;">
<!ENTITY %tbl.colspec.att "%id.att;">
```

Description:

Allows possibility of ids being assigned to elements tgroup, thead, tbody and colspec by processing systems.

8.12.5 Entity %tbl.entry.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY %tbl.entry.att "%standard-statuses.meta.att;
%id.att; " >
```

Description:

Defines the allowed additional attributes of a table cell (element <entry>). See element <entry> at section 9.3.7

8.12.6 Entity %tbl.row.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY %tbl.row.att "%standard-statuses.meta.att;
%id.att; " >
```

Description:

Defines the allowed additional attributes of a table row. See element <row> at section 9.3.6 .

8.12.7 Entity %tbl.table.att;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY %tbl.table.att "
%id.att;
%lang.att;
pgwide %yesorno; #IMPLIED
orientation (portrait | landscape) #IMPLIED
%standard-statuses.meta.att;
align (left | right | center) 'center'
fontsize %font-size; '11.5'
leading %leading; '13.5'
">
```

Description:

Defines the allowed additional attributes of a table. See element <table> at section 9.3.1 .

Attribute	Description
id	Table may optionally have an ID
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ). See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail

Attribute	Description
pgwide	yes: table is full width of page no: table is less than full width of page
orientation	Portrait or Landscape table.
align	Left, right, or center align. Default is center
fontsize	Enables control of font-size globally across the table. Default value is 11.5 points.
leading	Enables control of font-size globally across the table. Default value is 13.5 points.
deletion-status	Values Act: (not-in-force repealed expired spent) Values Reg: (not-in-force revoked expired spent) Bill: @deletion-status not used SOP: @deletion-status not used
amend.level1	See section 8.8.8
amend.level2	
by.item1	See section 8.8.8
by.item2	
quote	See section 8.8.8

8.13. Major Structural Elements

8.13.1 Entity: %body

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % body.model
    "(%floating.elements;)*,
    (para, (%floating.elements;)*)*,
    ((prov | ((crosshead | ird-crosshead)+, notes?)),
    (%floating.elements;)*)*,
    (part, (%floating.elements;)*)*">
```

Description:

This entity is declared in the Core DTD for use in content models of elements body, skeleton.act.body and skeleton.

8.13.2 Entity: %reprints.officer.att

Declaration:

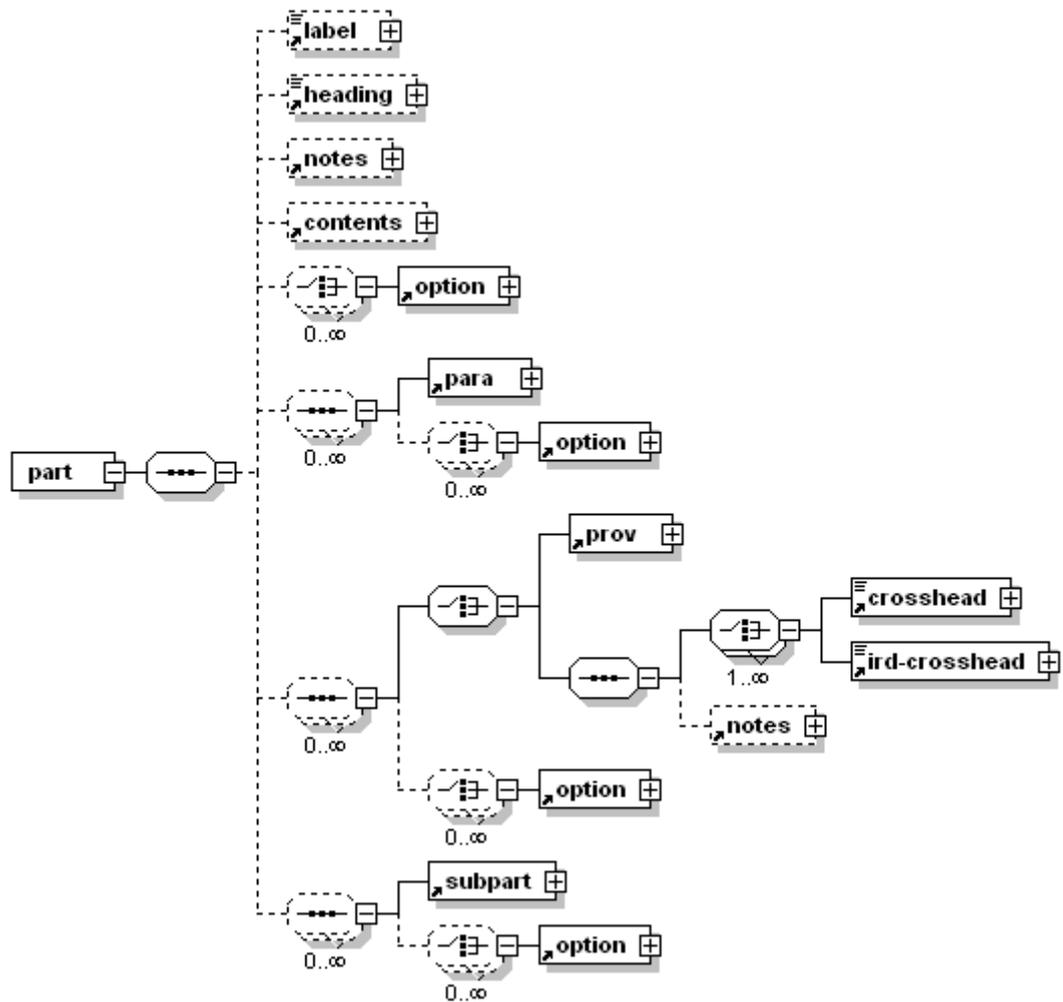
```
<!ENTITY % reprints.officer.att "">
```

Description:

This entity is defined as null here to provide for attribute lists for major structural elements to include an attribute @reprints.officer in some DTDs but not in others. Where a DTD re-declares entity %reprint.officer.att before referencing nzcore.dtd, major structural elements in that DTD will have an attribute @reprints.officer (see 3.2.6 above and 4.2.5 above). Where the entity is not re-declared the elements will not have an attribute @reprints.officer.

8.13.3 Element part

Diagram: (Act)



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % part.model "(label?, heading?, notes?, contents?,
    (%floating.elements;)*,
    (para, (%floating.elements;)*)*,
    ((prov | ((crosshead | ird-crosshead)+, notes?)),
    (%floating.elements;)*)*,
    (subpart, (%floating.elements;)*)*)" >
<!ENTITY % part.atts "
    %global.atts;
    %doctype.local.atts;
    prov-type %prov-types; #IMPLIED
    toc      (yes | no) 'yes'
```

```

        %standard-statuses.meta.atts;">
<!ELEMENT part %part.model;          >
<!ATTLIST part %part.atts;          >

```

Description:

The body of an item of legislation is sometimes, but not always, divided into several "Parts", each of which covers a different aspect of the legislation.

Technical Note:

An optional <contents> element (TOC) is required because the *Income Tax Act* has tables of contents for parts and sub-parts.

@drafters.name and @revision.no are needed in draft regulations and for reasons of consistency with Authoring Tool templates developed for Bills.

A Part will normally have a label, but if used exceptionally in a Convention, then the label may be omitted.

In a Bill, a Part may contain element <omitted-provs/>

Example of Use:

```

<part><label>1</label>
<heading>The Court in Bankruptcy</heading>
...
</part>

```

Children: label heading notes contents option para prov crosshead ird-crosshead subpara

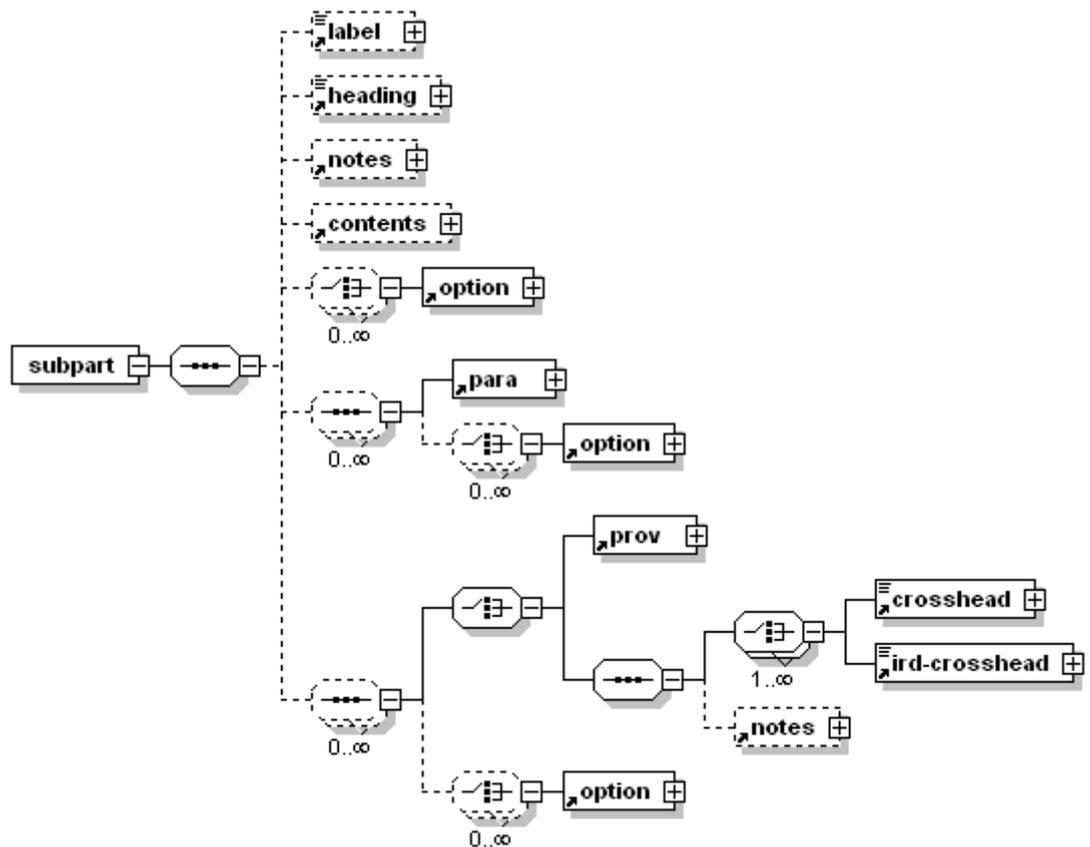
omitted-provs (Bills only)

Used in: amend body schedule.provisions
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: id dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label prov-type
drafters.name revision.no toc irdnumbering amend.level1 amend.level2
by.item1 by.item2 quote description sonz agency.code date.instructed
date.terminated drafted.by instructing.office footer pco.num security year
year.imprint act.type act.no assent-copy date.as.at date.assent
date.first.valid hard.copy.reprint official reprints.no stage terminated
doc.title doc.context doc.id in.amend
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.13.4 Element subpart

Diagram: (Act)



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % subpart.model "(label?, heading?, notes?, contents?,
(%floating.elements;)*,
(para, (%floating.elements;)*)*,
((prov | ((crosshead | ird-crosshead)+, notes?)),
(%floating.elements;)* )"
">
<!ENTITY % subpart.atts "
%global.atts;
%doctype.local.atts;
prov-type %prov-types; #IMPLIED
toc (yes | no) 'yes'
%standard-statuses.meta.atts;">
<!ELEMENT subpart %subpart.model; >
<!ATTLIST subpart %subpart.atts; >

```

Description:

In some Acts, a part is split into several “Subparts”, each of which covers a different aspect of the topic presented in the part heading. This element represents a single subpart. Subparts are used in the *Income Tax Act*.

Technical Note:

An optional <contents> element (TOC) is required because the *Income Tax Act* has tables of contents for parts and sub-parts.

@drafters.name and @revision.no are needed in draft regulations and for reasons of consistency with Authoring Tool templates developed for Bills.

A Subpart will normally have a label, but if used exceptionally in a Convention, then the label may be omitted. The <subpart> structure is used exceptionally in the *Judicature Act 1908* to mark up non-standard structural elements. In this instance the Subpart has no label.

In a Bill, a Subpart may contain element <omitted-provs/>.

Example of Use:

```
<subpart><label>CX HG</label>
<heading>Excluded income</heading>
<contents>
<toc/>
</contents>
<ird-crosshead>Goods and services tax</ird-crosshead>
...
</subpart>
```

Children: label heading notes contents option omitted-provs para prov crosshead ird-crosshead

omitted-provs (Bills only)

Used in: amend part

instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: id dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label prov-type drafters.name revision.no toc irdnumbering amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote description sonz agency.code date.instructed date.terminated drafted.by instructing.office footer pco.num security year year.imprint act.type act.no assent-copy date.as.at date.assent date.first.valid hard.copy.reprint official reprints.no stage terminated doc.title doc.context doc.id in.amend

deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.13.5 Element external-document

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % external-document.model "#PCDATA">
<!ENTITY % external-document.atts "%id.atts;
%dtmLinkatts;
fileref CDATA #REQUIRED">
<!ELEMENT external-document (%external-document.model);>
<!ATTLIST external-document %external-document.atts; >
```

Description:

Element external-document is to be used where a third party - for example Customs Department - supplies a complete item of legislation to be published as a PCO document.

Use of the element assumes:

- The document will be supplied in a format - e.g. PDF - that can be published both in hardcopy and online without modification or filtering.

An XML file using element //external-document will be serving simply as a vehicle to carry the third party's document into and through the NZPCO LENZ system. Hence similar constraints apply as for element //graphic:

- The third party document **must** be in the same folder as the XML file; and
- Element //external-document **must** reference the third party document by giving its file name as value of attribute @fileref.

When an XML file that uses element //external-document is sent for transformation or rendition for publication, the rendering system will:

- Create and return an HTML rendition of the XML document; but
- Just return the file named in //external-document attribute @fileref as the PDF rendition of the document.

Because the HTML rendition will not contain the full content of the third party's document, the content model for element //external-document allows entry of text directing readers to see the PDF rendition, e.g.:

"Full content of this document is available only in the PDF rendition."

See Markup Sample file Legislation Items:

Order_demo_external_document.xml

Example of Use:

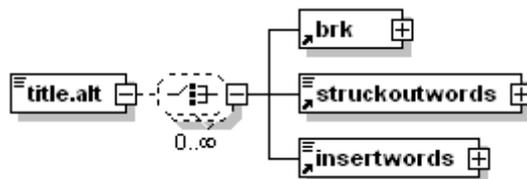
```
<external-document fileref="2006_104.pdf">Full content of this document is available only in the PDF rendition.</external-document>
```

Children: none
Used in: act
Attributes: id fileref

8.14. Titles

8.14.1 Element title

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % title.model "(#PCDATA | brk
| %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % title.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%lang.att;
%id.att;" >
```

```
<!ELEMENT title %title.model; >
<!ATTLIST title %title.atts; >
```

Description:

The title of the document, which is not to be confused with the heading element used for many different kinds of headings.

Example of Use:

```
<act>
<cover>
<title>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001</title>
...
```

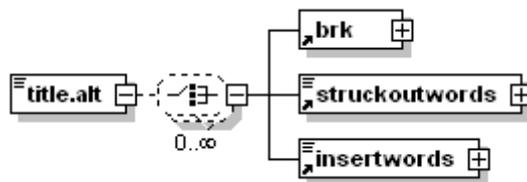
Children: brk struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: amend cover legdetail skeleton.act.cover skeleton.reg.cover
billdetail (Bills only)
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.14.2 Element title.alt

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT title.alt %title.model; >
<!ATTLIST title.alt %title.atts; >
```

Description:

The alternative title of the document, not to be confused with the heading element, which is used for many different kinds of headings. Used in the context of recent Bills that have both English and Māori titles

Example of Use:

```
<act>
<cover>
<title>The Something or Other Act</title>
<title.alt>The Maori Title of the Act</title.alt>
...
```

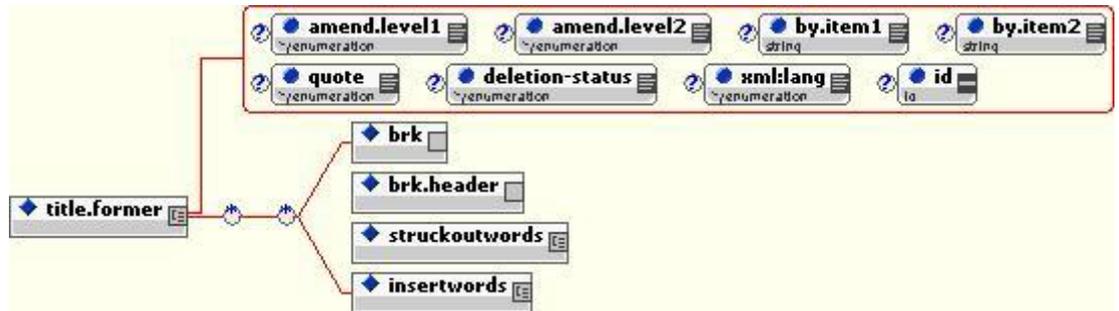
Children: brk struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: amend cover legdetail skeleton.act.cover skeleton.reg.cover
billdetail (Bills only)
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.14.3 Element title.former

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT title.former %title.model; >
<!ATTLIST title.former %title.atts; >
```

Description:

In Acts and Regulations whose title has been amended, element //title.former provides storage of the former titles. Content of //title.former may be suppressed in renditions since its main purpose to provide the metadata that will allow systems to re-direct users that look or search for the document under one of its former titles.

In Bills, content of //title.former may be included in renditions. It is a common practice to change the title of a Bill between introduction and enactment. When this happens, the previous title is included in renditions to provide continuity.

Example of Use:

```
<cover id="id3EB4DE0">
  <reprint-date>as at 1 February 2002</reprint-date>
  <title>Property (Relationships) Act 1976</title>
  <title.former>Marital Property Act 1976</title.former>
  ...
  <notes>
    <history>
      <history-note id="id3E6F8B8">The short title
        of this Act was amended, as from 1 February 2002, by s
        5(2) Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001 (2001 No 5)
        by substituting the words "Property (Relationships)" for the
        words "Matrimonial Property".</history-note>
      ...
    </history>
  </notes>
</cover>
```

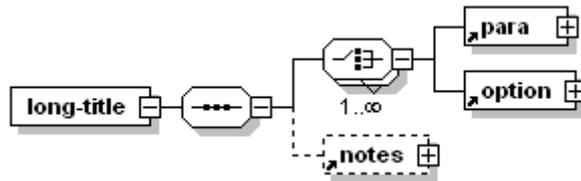
Children: brk

Used in: billdetail cover

Attributes: xml:lang id

8.14.4 Element long-title

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % long-title.model "((para | option)+, notes?)" >
<!ENTITY % long-title.atts "%id.atts;
    %lang.atts;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    toc (yes | no) 'yes'" >
<!ELEMENT long-title %long-title.model; >
<!ATTLIST long-title %long-title.atts; >
```

Description:

A longer, more descriptive title, which sometimes outlines the purpose of the legislation in question.

Example of Use:

```
<long-title>
<para><text>An Act to consolidate certain enactments of the General Assembly relating to sharebrokers
and stock exchanges</text></para>
</long-title>
```

Children: para notes option

Used in: amend conv.front skeleton.act.front

front (Acts and Regulations only)

instrument.amend (SOPs only)

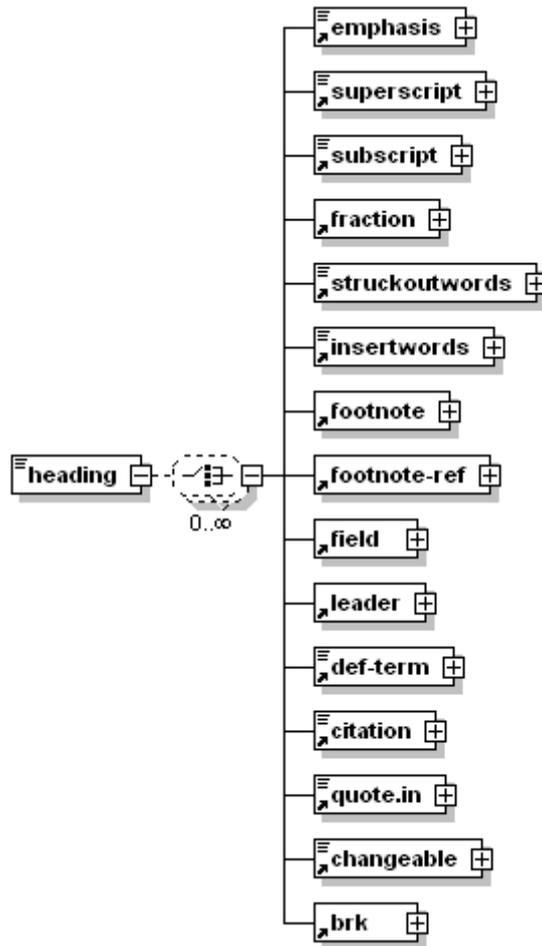
Attributes:

Attribute	Description
id	Long-title may optionally have an ID
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ). See description of %lang.atts; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
deletion-status	Values Act: (not-in-force repealed expired spent) Values Reg: (not-in-force revoked expired spent) Bill: @deletion-status not used SOP: @deletion-status not used
toc	Yes/No. Default Yes. Used to specify whether or not the long title is to be included in the TOC
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.
quote	See section 8.8

8.15. Headings and Subheadings

8.15.1 Element heading

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % heading.model "(%phrase; | brk)*" >
<!ENTITY % heading.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %lang.att;
    %id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT heading %heading.model; >
<!ATTLIST heading %heading.atts; >
```

Description:

A heading of any particular parent element. The eventual formatting of the heading depends on the parent element in question.

Example of Use:

```
<heading>Commencement</heading>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in brk graphic.inline
changeable (Bills SOPs and Draft Regulations only)

Used in (Act and Reg): amend contents conv editorial-note example explnote
 explnote.group explnote.part explnote.ris explnote.subgroup
 explnote.subpart figure form head1 head2 head3 head4 head5 head6 key
 leg-history made part preamble preamble-block prov quoted-heading
 reprint.index reprint.note reprint.notes schedule schedule.group subpart
 table query-note

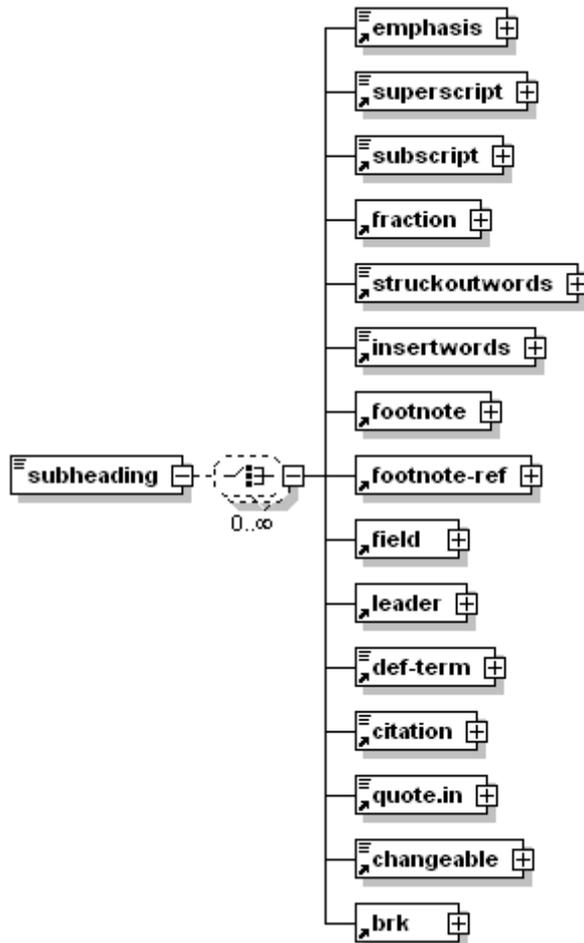
Used in (Bill): amend billnote comm.appendix comm.lev1 comm.lev2 comm.lev3
 commentary contents conv editorial-note example explnote
 explnote.group explnote.part explnote.ris explnote.subgroup
 explnote.subpart figure form head1 head2 head3 head4 head5 head6 key
 leg-history made part preamble preamble-block prov quoted-heading
 reprint.index reprint.note reprint.notes schedule schedule.group subpart
 table query-note

Used in (SOP): reprint.note reprint.notes schedule schedule.group sop.part sop.subpart
 table query-note

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang quote id
 deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.15.2 Element subheading

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT subheading %heading.model; >  
<!ATTLIST subheading %heading.att; >
```

Description:

Used exclusively in example boxes. Parent element is <example>. Child elements and attributes are as per heading.

Example of Use:

```
<subheading>Text of Subheading</subheading>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in brk
graphic.inline

changeable (Bills SOPs and Draft Regulations only)

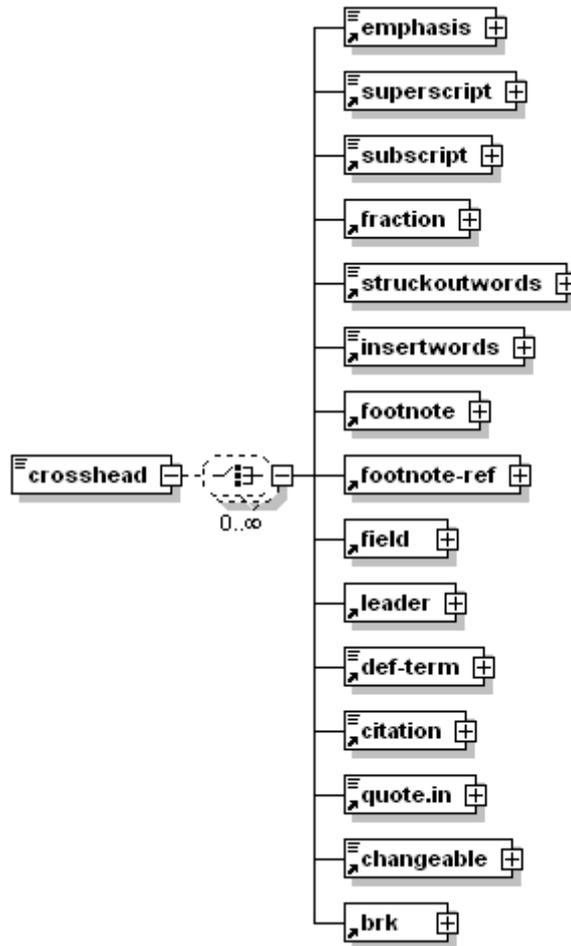
Used in: example key

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.16. Crossheadings

8.16.1 Element crosshead

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % crosshead.model "(%phrase; | brk)*" >
<!ENTITY % crosshead.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.att;
    %lang.att;">
<!ELEMENT crosshead %crosshead.model; >
<!ATTLIST crosshead %crosshead.atts;
    toc (yes | no) 'yes'>
```

Description:

The cross heading element. This is a “floating” header that appears between provisions, it is not the heading of any substructure.

Technical Note:

Some older legislation, and some local Acts, do not conform to current PCO style. It is unlikely that the original formatting of these items can be reproduced using the available Provision and Cross-heading markup. Cross headings do not provide for the inclusion of the <label> element, and any labels found exceptionally in older items (often local or private Acts) must be included as text within the Cross heading itself. See for example:

Wanganui Harbour and River Conservators Board Act 1876.
Riverton Harbour Endowment and Borrowing Act 1878
Greytown District Trust Lands Act 1979
Whakatane Board Mills Limited Water-supply Empowering Act 1936

Example of Use:

```
<part>
<label>2</label><heading>Preliminary Provisions</heading>
<crosshead>Purpose and principles</crosshead>
<prov><label>1M</label><heading>Purpose of this Act</heading>
<prov.body>
...
</prov.body>
</prov>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in brk
graphic.inline

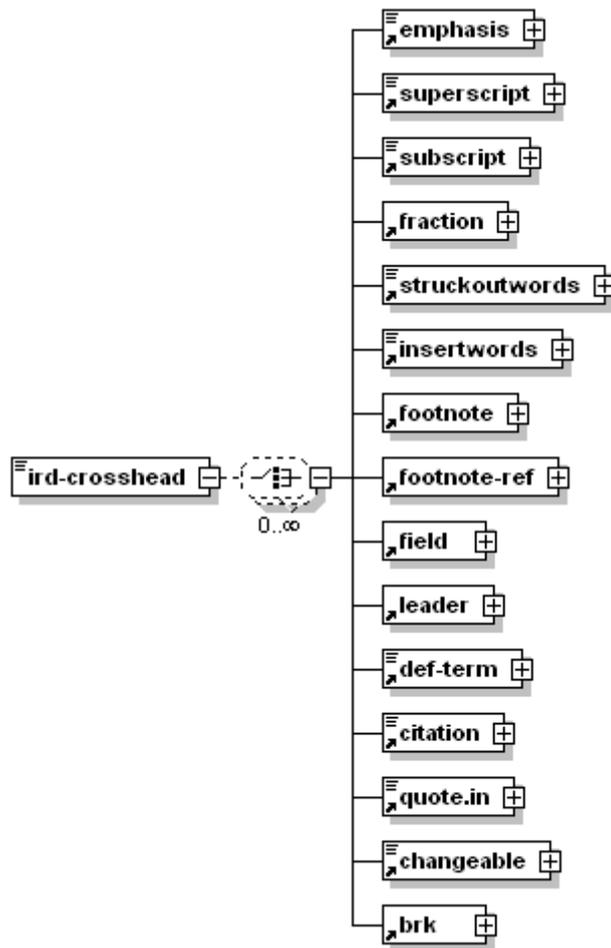
changeable (Bills SOPs and Draft Regulations only)

Used in: amend instrument.amend part schedule.provisions subpart
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id xml:lang toc quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.16.2 Element ird-crosshead

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT ird-crosshead %crosshead.model; >
<!ATTLIST ird-crosshead %crosshead.atts;
          toc (yes | no) 'yes'>
```

Description:

This is an additional cross heading element based on the crosshead model. It is used by IRD to create an additional “floating” heading similar to a cross heading. the IRD crossheading is superordinate to a cross heading, but because of the lack of structural containers it is not possible to impose or validate any hierarchical requirements directly via the DTD.

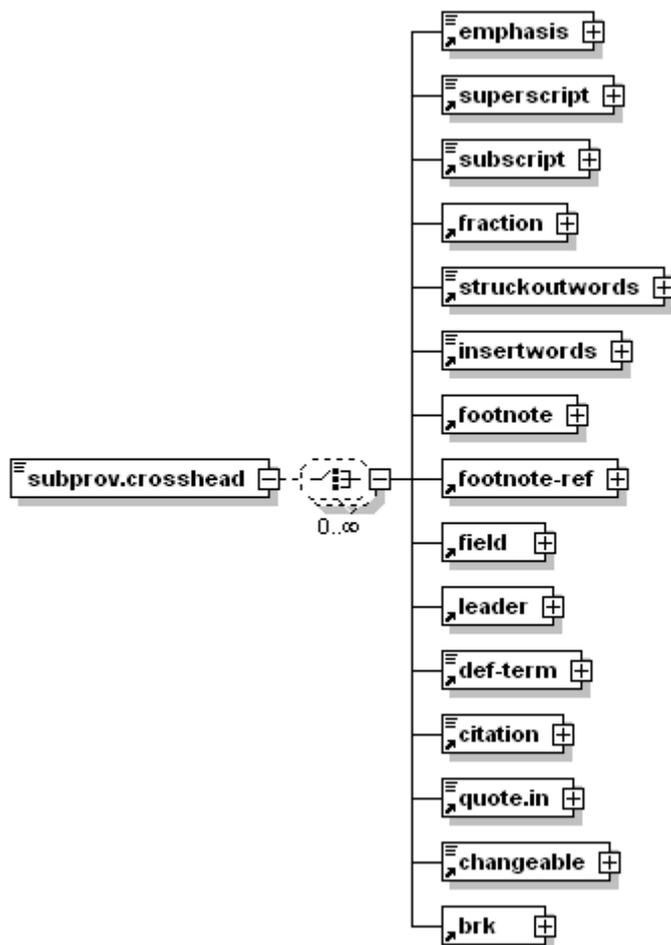
Example of Use:

```
<ird-crosshead>Income equalisation schemes</ird-crosshead >
<prov><label>CX 44</label><heading>Income equalisation schemes</heading>
<prov.body>
<para><text>A refund under ... is excluded income.</text></para>
</prov.body>
...
<cf>1994 No 164 ss EI 1(4); EI 11(4); EI 17(2)</cf>
</prov>
```

- Children:** emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in brk graphic.inline
changeable (Bills SOPs and Draft Regulations only)
- Used in:** amend instrument.amend part schedule.provisions subpart instrument.amend (SOPs only)
- Attributes:** amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id xml:lang toc deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.16.3 Element subprov.crosshead

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```

<!ELEMENT subprov.crosshead %crosshead.model; >
<!ATTLIST subprov.crosshead %crosshead.atts; >
  
```

Description:

This element is used as a heading above one or more sub-provisions.

Example of Use:

```

<prov.body>
  
```

```
<subprov.crosshead>GST amounts</subprov.crosshead>
<subprov>
<label>1</label>
<para><text>The following amounts are excluded income of a person:</text>

<label-para><label>a</label><para><text>output
tax that is charged, levied, or calculated under the Goods and Services Tax Act
1985:</text></para></label-para>

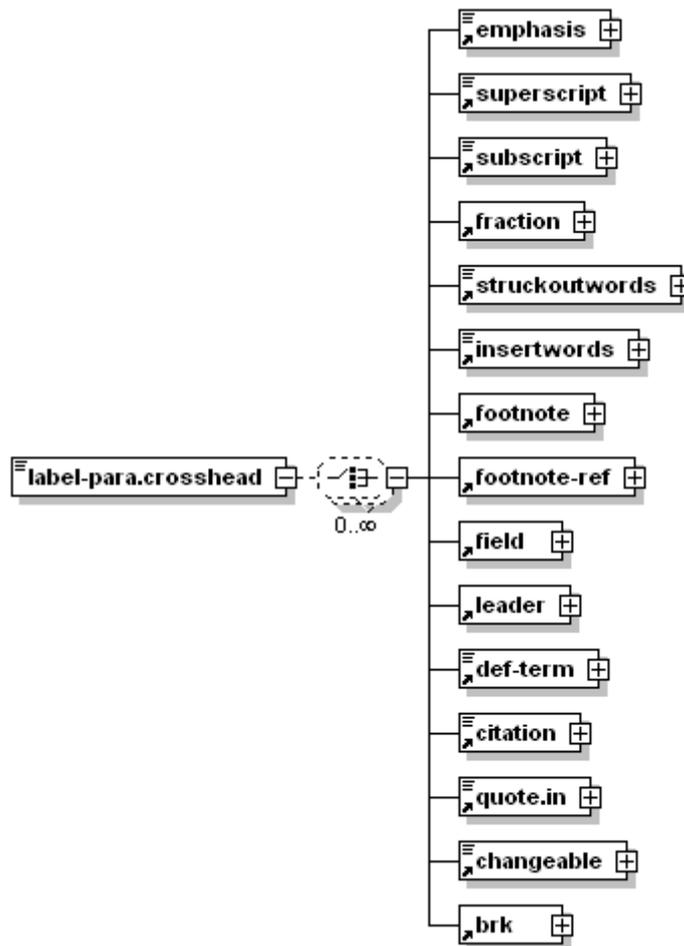
<label-para><label>b</label><para><text>GST payable
to the person by the Commissioner.</text></para></label-para>
</para>
</subprov>
```

See Glossary: Provision Sub-Provision

- Children:** emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in brk
graphic.inline
changeable (Bills SOPs and Draft Regulations only)
- Used in:** amend instrument.amend prov.body
instrument.amend (SOPs only)
- Attributes:** amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id xml:lang
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.16.4 Element label-para.crosshead

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT label-para.crosshead %crosshead.model; >
<!ATTLIST label-para.crosshead %crosshead.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used as a “floating” heading to one or more <label-para> elements.

Example of Use:

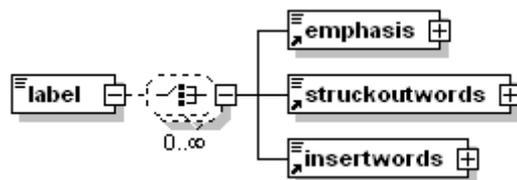
```
<prov><label>7</label>
<prov.body>
<subprov><label>1</label>
<para><text>The subjects for the Junior Examination...shall be as follows:</text>
<label-para.crosshead>Junior Examination</label-para.crosshead>
<label-para><label>1</label>
<para><text>General science or chemistry, as prescribed
...</text></para>
</text></para>
</label-para>
<label-para><label>2</label>
<para><text>Bookkeeping:</text></para>
</label-para>
...
```

- Children:** emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in brk graphic.inline
changeable (Bills SOPs and Draft Regulations only)
- Used in:** amend para proviso
sop.para instrument.amend (SOPs only)
- Attributes:** amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id xml:lang
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.17. Labels

8.17.1 Element label

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % label.model "(#PCDATA | emphasis
| %change.tracked.elements;)*">
<!ENTITY % label.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
denominator (yes | no) 'yes'
increment (1 | 2 | 3) #IMPLIED
%id.att; "
>
<!ENTITY % auto.label.atts "auto.number (yes | no | never) 'no'
restart.at CDATA #IMPLIED" >
<!ELEMENT label %label.model; >
<!ATTLIST label %label.atts;
%auto.label.atts; >
```

Description:

The label, or number of any particular parent element.

Technical Notes:

where label is used in lower level structures such as <label-para>, any punctuation and parentheses will normally be added by the rendering environments. Where this is not the case – such as the use non-standard parentheses in schedule material, the denominator attribute will be set to “no” and parentheses and punctuation will be explicit in the PCDATA.

Autonumbering attributes have been provided for the purpose of Bill, SOP and Regulation drafting.

- @auto.number controls whether the number content of a label element will be automatically generated by the system.
- @restart is used in two ways. It is:

- Automatically populated by the system to provide an initialisation value for automatic generation of number content when a chunk is processed independently of its parent document context.
- Manually set by a user to restart an auto-numbering counter at a fixed value.

Attribute @increment is to be used to increment the indentation of an indented structure whose higher-order levels are only inferred. For example:

```
<prov irdnumbering="no">
  <label
    auto.number="no"
    denominator="no"
    increment="2">
    123<emphasis style="roman">(1)(a)</emphasis>
  </label>
  <prov.body>
    <para>
      <text>The content of paragraph 123(1)(a)
        occurring outside of its subsection 123(1)
        context.</text>
    </para>
  </prov.body>
</prov>
```

Provides for rendition:

123(1)(a) The content of paragraph 123(1)(a) occurring outside of its subsection 123(1) context.

Rather than:

123(1)(a)The content of paragraph 123(1)(a) occurring outside of its subsection 123(1) context.

Example of Use:

```
<subprov><label>1</label>
<para><text>This Act may be cited as the Property (Relationships) Act 1976.</text></para>
</subprov>
```

Example of Use:

```
<subprov skeleton="yes">
  <label>1</label>
  <para><label-para><label denominator="no">(a), (b), (c)</label>
  <para><text>These paragraphs amended section 27(1) of the principal Act.</text></para>
  </label-para></para>
</subprov>
```

Children: emphasis struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: conv explnote.part explnote.subpart figure footnote form head1 head2 head3 head4 head5 head6 item label-para part prov quoted-heading reprint.note schedule subpart subprov table
sop.part sop.subpart (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2by.item1 by.item2 auto.number restart.at quote id increment
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.18. Provision Related Structures

8.18.1 Overview

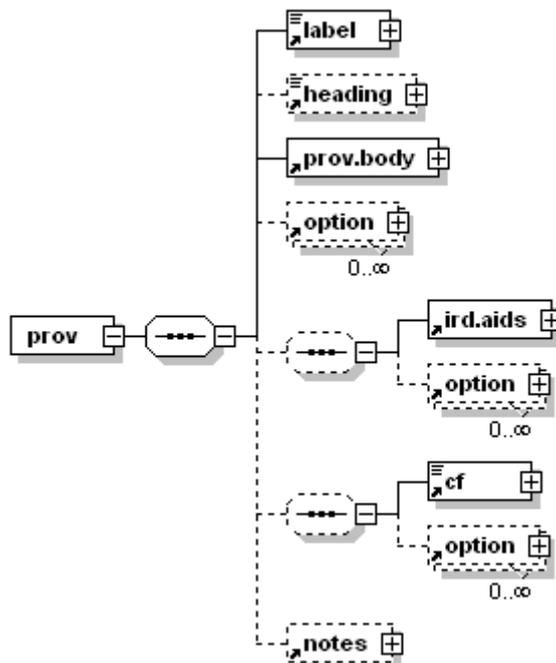
In the printed statutes, where a provision contains only a single sub-provision the sub-provision number “(1)” is not produced. Where a second sub-provision is added by amendment, then the first sub-provision takes the number (1) in print.

Provisions with only a single subprovision will contain the empty element mark-up of <label denominator="no" auto.number="no"></label>. This will enable a second subprovision to be easily added later.

ID generation for cross-referencing purposes must ensure correct id and href attributes where citations omit the sub-prov (1) component. For example, “Section 3(a)” would actually be a link to section 3(1)(a).

8.18.2 Element prov

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % prov.model "(label, heading?, prov.body, option*,
    (ird.aids, option*)?,
    (cf, option*)?, notes?)" >
<!ENTITY % prov.atts "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    type %prov-types; #IMPLIED
    toc (yes | no) 'yes'
    irdnumbering (yes | no) 'no'
    %skeleton.meta.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    ">
<!ELEMENT prov %prov.model; >
<!ATTLIST prov %prov.atts; >
```

Description:

A provision. This is a generic structure representing a Section, Clause, Rule, Regulation, etc.

Example of Use:

```

<prov><label>1</label><heading>Title</heading>
<prov.body>
<subprov><label>1</label>
<para><text>This Act is the Property (Relationships)
Amendment Act 2001.</text></para></subprov>
<subprov><label>2</label>
<para><text>In this Act, the Act that was previously
called the <citation><leg-title>Matrimonial Property Act 1976</leg-title></citation>
is called <quote.in>the principal Act</quote.in>.</text></para>
</subprov>
</prov.body>
</prov>
    
```

Children: label heading prov.body ird.aids option cf notes

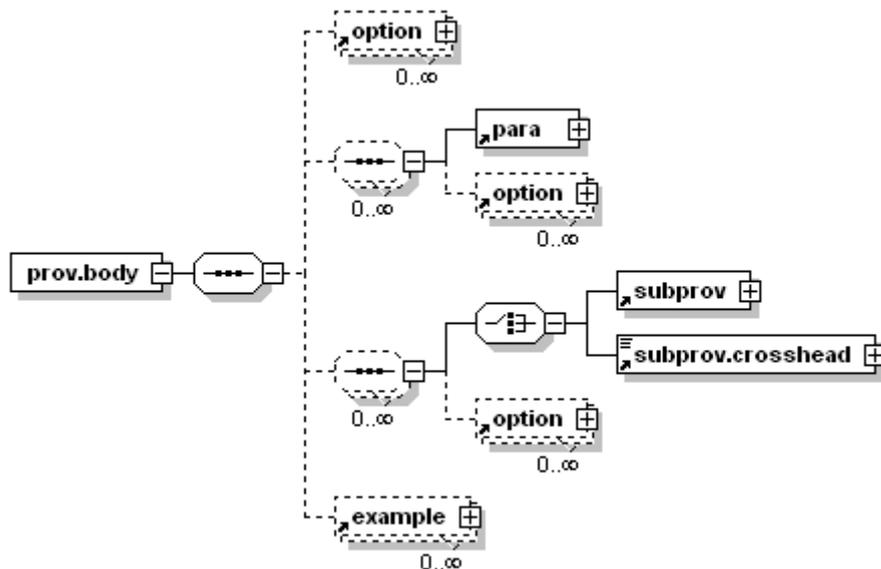
Used in (Act, Reg, Bill): amend body conv.body example head1 head2 part query-note schedule.misc schedule.provisions subpart.

Used in (SOP): amend conv.body example head1 head2 part query-note schedule.misc schedule.provisions subpart instrument.amend sop.newenact

Attributes: id xml:lang type toc irdnumbering skeleton amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.18.3 Element prov.body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % prov.body.model "(option*,
(para, option)*,
((subprov | subprov.crosshead), option)*,
example)*">
    
```

```
<!ENTITY % prov.body.att "id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT prov.body %prov.body.model; >
<!ATTLIST prov.body %prov.body.att; >
```

Description:

The body of a provision.

Technical Notes:

For a discussion of Provisions with only a single sub-provision see Section 8.18.1 .

Example of Use:

```
<prov.body>
<subprov><label>1</label>
<para><text>This Act is the Property (Relationships)
Amendment Act 2001.</text></para></subprov>
<subprov><label>2</label>
<para><text>In this Act, the Act that was previously
called the <citation><leg-title>Matrimonial Property Act 1976</leg-title></citation>
is called <quote.in>the principal Act</quote.in>.</text></para>
</subprov>
</prov.body>
```

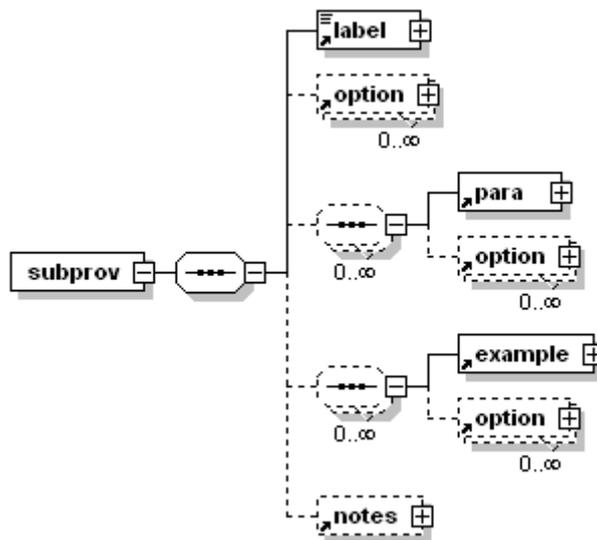
Children: option para subprov subprov.crosshead example

Used in: prov

Attributes: id

8.18.4 Element subprov

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % subprov.model "(label, option*,
(para, option*)*,
(example, option*)*, notes?)" >
<!ENTITY % subprov.att "id.att;
%lang.att;
%skeleton.meta.att;
%standard-statuses.meta.att;" >
<!ELEMENT subprov %subprov.model; >
```

```
<!ATTLIST subprov %subprov.atts; >
```

Description:

A sub-provision.

Example of Use:

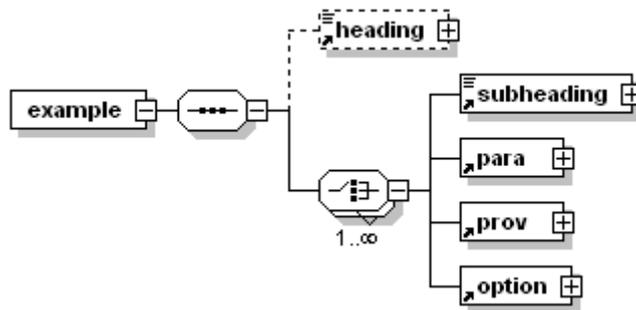
```
<subprov><label>1</label>
<para><text>This Act is the Property (Relationships)
Amendment Act 2001.</text></para></subprov>
<subprov><label>2</label>
<para><text>In this Act, the Act that was previously
called the <citation><leg-title>Matrimonial Property Act 1976</leg-title></citation>
is called <quote.in>the principal Act</quote.in>.</text></para>
</subprov>
```

Children: label option para example notes

Attributes: id xml:lang skeleton amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.18.5 Element example

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % example.model "(heading?, (subheading | para | prov |
option)+)" >
<!ENTITY % example.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%lang.atts;
%id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT example %example.model; >
<!ATTLIST example %example.atts; >
```

Description:

An example.

Example of Use:

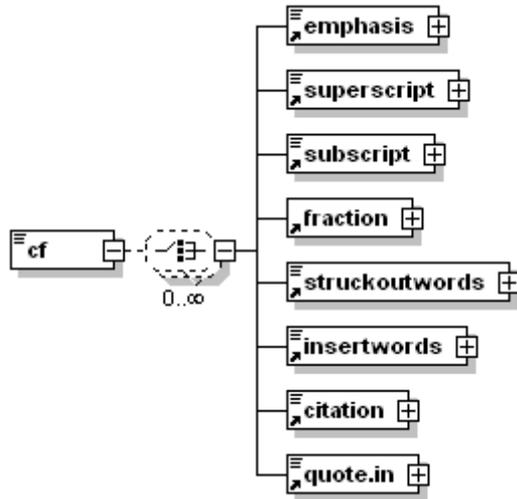
```
<example>
<heading>Example of marriage including immediately preceding de facto relationship&mdash;</heading>
<para><text>If the de facto relationship of A and B lasts 2 years, and their marriage lasts 2 years, their
marriage must be treated as if it&mdash;</text>
<label-para><label>a</label>
<para><text>began 4 years ago; and</text></para></label-para>
<label-para><label>b</label>
<para><text>lasted 4 years.</text></para></label-para>
</para>
</example>
```

Children: heading subheading para prov option

- Used in:** amend.clause.desc clause.desc def-para explnote explnote.group
 explnote.part explnote.ris explnote.subgroup explnote.subpart label-para
 prov.body subprov
- Attributes:** amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang quote id
 deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.18.6 Element cf (compare)

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % cf.model "(%basic-phrase; | citation | quote.in)*" >
<ELEMENT cf %cf.model; >
<ENTITY % cf.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.atts;" >
<!ATTLIST cf %cf.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used to indicate other provisions or legislation to compare with the legislation being read.

Example of Use:

```
<cf><!--Compare: -->
<citation>1963 No 71, ss <extref>2</extref></citation>
</cf>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
 citation quote.in

Used in: form prov schedule

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
 deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.19. Paragraphs

8.19.1 Entity %structure;

Declaration:

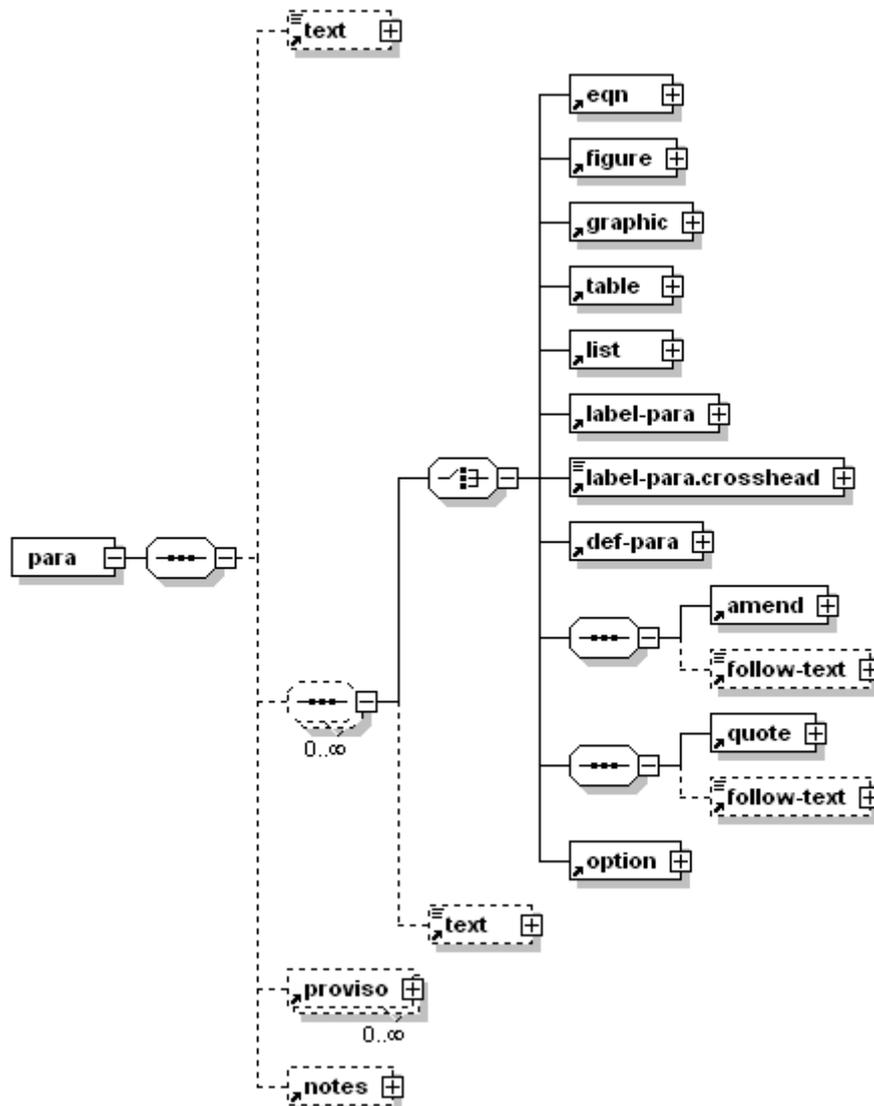
```
<!ENTITY % structure "eqn | figure | graphic | table | list |
label-para | label-para.crosshead | def-para |
(amend, follow-text?) | (quote, follow-text?) |
option">
```

Description:

Defines the sub-structures allowable in key contexts, such as within the <para> model.

8.19.2 Element para

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % para.model "(text?, ((%structure;), text?)*, proviso*,
notes?)"
>
```

<!ENTITY % para.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;

```

        %lang.att;
        %id.att; "          >
<!ELEMENT para %para.model;          >
<!ATTLIST para %para.att;          >

```

Description:

This element is a paragraph, which may contain lists, tables and graphics, as well as textual structures.

Example of Use:

```

<para><text>This Act is the Property (Relationships)
Amendment Act 2001.</text></para>

```

Children: text eqn figure graphic table list label-para label-para.crosshead def-para amend follow-text quote option proviso notes

Used in (Act and Reg): amend amend.clause.desc assent-block body clause.desc contents-note conv.body cover.reprint-note def-para editorial-note entry eqn example explnote explnote.group explnote.part explnote.ris explnote.subgroup explnote.subpart footnote form.body graphic-text head1 head2 key item label-para long-title part pnote preamble-block prov.body pursuant query-note quote readers-notes reprint.index reprint.note schedule.amendments schedule.forms schedule.misc schedule.provisions signature-block subpart subprov variable-def

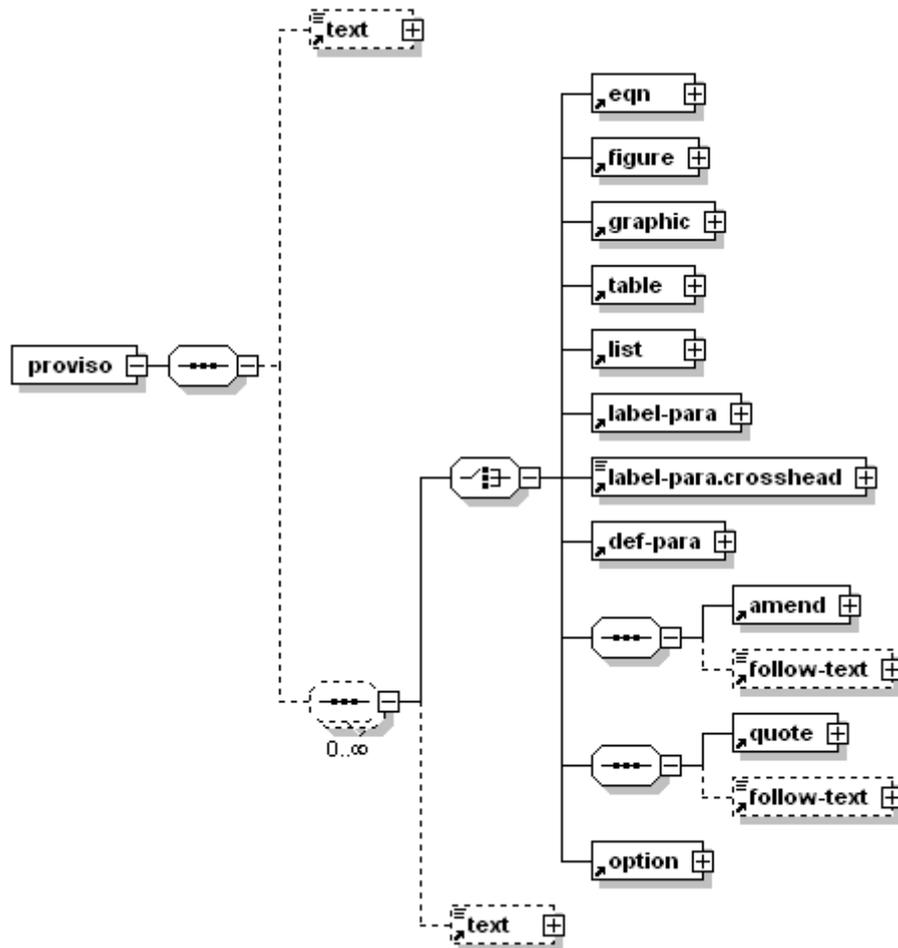
Used in (Bill): amend amend.clause.desc assent-block billnote body clause.desc comm.appendix comm.lev1 comm.lev2 comm.lev3 contents-note conv.body cover.reprint-note def-para editorial-note entry eqn example explnote explnote.group explnote.part explnote.ris explnote.subgroup explnote.subpart footnote form.body graphic-text head1 head2 item label-para long-title ocbxnote part pnote preamble-block prov.body pursuant query-note quote readers-notes reprint.index reprint.note schedule.amendments schedule.forms schedule.misc schedule.provisions signature-block subpart subprov variable-def

Used in (SOP): amend amend.clause.desc assent-block clause.desc contents-note conv.body cover.reprint-note def-para editorial-note entry eqn example explnote explnote.group explnote.part explnote.ris explnote.subgroup explnote.subpart footnote form.body graphic-text head1 head2 instrument.amend item label-para long-title part pnote preamble-block prov.body pursuant query-note quote readers-notes reprint.index reprint.note schedule.amendments schedule.forms schedule.misc schedule.provisions signature-block sop.split subpart subprov variable-def

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang quote id deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.19.3 Element proviso

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % proviso.model "(text?, ((%structure;), text?)*)" >
<!ENTITY % proviso.atts "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.att;"/>
<!ELEMENT proviso %proviso.model; >
<!ATTLIST proviso %proviso.atts; >
    
```

Description:

This element models information about circumstances under which the provision in question may or may not operate. From a formatting point of view, a proviso is a special type of paragraph.

Example of Use:

```

<prov><label>5</label>
<heading>Prevention of waste or injury</heading>
<prov.body>
<para><text>All works constructed as aforesaid by the Corporation of any suburban borough shall be under
their exclusive control and management:</text>
<proviso>
    
```

<text>Provided always that the Corporation of the City of Dunedin shall be entitled at any time to inspect such works for the purpose of avoiding waste of water or preventing injury to any part of the Dunedin Waterworks, or the fouling of any stream aforesaid.</text>

</proviso>
 </para>
 </prov.body>
 </prov>

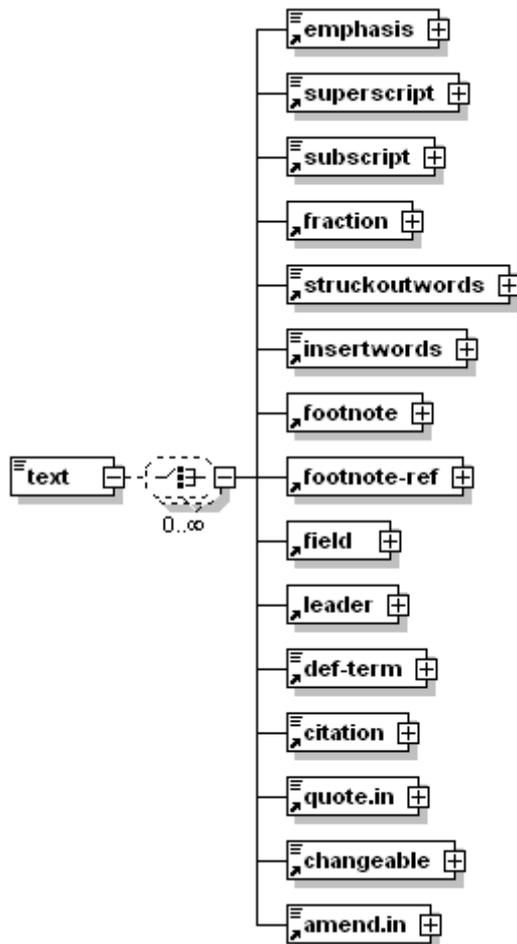
Children: text eqn figure graphic table list label-para label-para.crosshead def-para amend follow-text quote option

Used by: amend para
 instrument.amend sop.para (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id xml:lang quote deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.19.4 Element text

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % text.model "(%phrase; | amend.in)*" >
<!ENTITY % text.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT text %text.model; >
<!ATTLIST text %text.atts; >
```

Description:

Text-based information. Used primarily in the para model.

Technical Note:

Note the use of element <text> in the second example below as a means of eliminating mixed content models for continuing or ranged-out text (See “<text>whichever is the later:</text>”) in label-para structures.

Example of Use: Simple example

<para><text>who can apply for a Court order dividing a couple’s property?</text></para>

Example of Use: More complex example *Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001*. See s 90.

```

<subprov>
<label>1</label>
<para><text>Proceedings must be commenced within the following time
    limits:</text>
<label-para><label>a</label>
<para><text>if the estate of the deceased spouse or de facto partner is
    a small estate (as defined in <citation>section
    2</citation>), the proceedings must be
    commenced&mdash;</text>
<label-para><label>i</label>
<para><text>no later than 12 months after the date of the death of the
    deceased spouse or de facto partner;
    or</text></para></label-para>
<label-para><label>ii</label>
<para><text>if administration of the estate is granted in New Zealand
    within that period, no later than 12 months after the grant
    of administration,&mdash;</text></para>
</label-para>
<text>whichever is the later:</text></para>
</label-para>
<label-para><label>b</label>
<para><text>in any other case, the proceedings must be commenced no
    later than 12 months after administration of the estate of
    the deceased spouse or de facto partner is granted in New
    Zealand.</text></para>
</label-para>
</para>
</subprov>
    
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
 footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in amend.in
 graphic.inline

changeable (Bills, Sops, Draft Regulations)

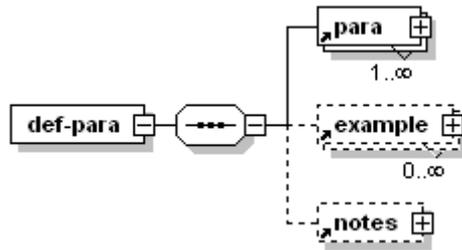
Used in: para proviso

sop.para (SOPs only)

Attributes: id

8.19.5 Element def-para

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % def-para.model "(para+, example*, notes?)" >
<!ENTITY % def-para.atts "%id.att;
                        %lang.att;
                        %standard-statuses.meta.atts;" >
<ELEMENT def-para %def-para.model;           >
<!ATTLIST def-para %def-para.atts;          >
```

Description:

A paragraph or paragraphs which define a particular defined term.

Technical Notes:

This structure is generally used in the early provisions of an Act or Statutory Regulation. The reason for using this element instead of a `para` is that several definition paragraphs are often contained within the body of a single paragraph.

Example of Use:

```
<def-para>
<para><text><def-term>administration</def-term> has the meaning given to it by <citation>section
<extref>2</extref> of the <leg-title> Administration Act 1969</leg-title></citation>.</text></para>
</def-para>
```

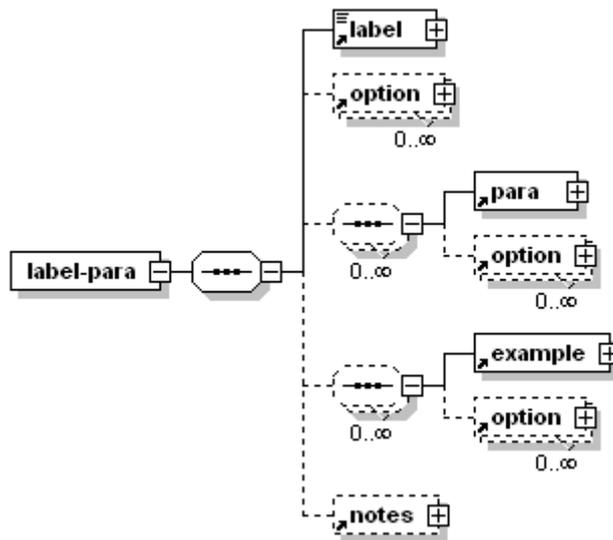
Children: para example notes

Used in: amend para proviso
instrument.amend sop.para (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id xml:lang quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.19.6 Element label-para

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % label-para.model "(label, option*, (para, option*)*,
    (example, option*)*, notes?)" >
<!ENTITY % label-para.atts "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    %skeleton.meta.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.att;" >
<!ELEMENT label-para %label-para.model; >
<!ATTLIST label-para %label-para.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used to mark up labelled paragraphs, which in most cases means an item in an ordered or explicitly labelled paragraph occurring as part of a greater provision or sub-provision. Nested <label-para> structures are used for the markup of sub-paragraphs and the less common sub-sub-paragraphs

Technical Note:

The purpose of the increment attribute is to simplify the markup of subparagraph material in amend sections. See for example Section 49 of the *Human Rights Amendment Act 2001 No.96*, which inserts a subparagraph (ii).

Example of Use:

```
<prov><label>1</label><heading><citation>Part <intref>9</intref> </citation> (transitional provisions and
savings)</heading>
<prov.body>
<para><text><citation>Part <intref>9</intref></citation> contains&mdash;</text>
<label-para><label>a</label>
<para><text>transitional provisions, dealing with matters like&mdash;</text>
<label-para><label>i</label>
<para><text>how this Act applies to ... and</text></para></label-para>
<label-para><label>ii</label>
<para><text>the effect of this Act on ...</text></para></label-para>
</para></label-para>
<label-para><label>b</label>
<para><text>savings provisions, dealing with ...</text>
```

```
</para></label-para>
</para>
</prov.body>
```

Children: label option para example notes

Used in: amend para proviso
instrument.amend sop.para (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id skeleton xml:lang quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20. Schedules

8.20.1 Overview

Legislative content is typified by the use of formal, named/labelled structures such as “Part” and “Subpart”. In the majority of instances these structures have been used in a uniform manner, which allows specific elements to be defined to represent them - <part>, <subpart>, <prov>, <subprov>. these typical uses do not always hold in Schedules.

In schedules there is an almost endless variety in the ways that formal, named/labelled structures have been used. Defining specific elements to represent each of the variations would lead to a proliferation of models in the DTD. Generic schedule structures have been defined along with, generic “floating” elements <head3>, <head4>, <head5> have been defined along with structured elements <head1> and <head2>. Being generic, they may be used in whatever way best suits the particular requirements of any one schedule.

8.20.2 Entity %schedule-types;

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % schedule-types "(dictionary | annex | appendix |
attachment | schedule)">
```

Description:

Defines the schedule type.

8.20.3 Entity %struct-types;

Declaration:

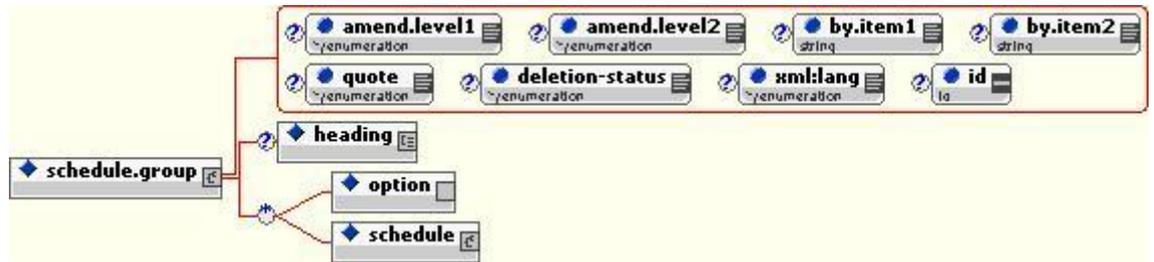
```
<!ENTITY % struct-types "(chapter | subchapter | part | subpart |
division | subdivision | appendix)">
```

Description:

This attribute is used within Schedule structures (<head1> and <head2>) to identify the type of structure being used.

8.20.4 Element schedule.group

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % schedule.group.model "(heading?,
    (%floating.elements; | schedule)*
    )">
<!ENTITY % schedule.group.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %lang.att;
    %id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT schedule.group %schedule.group.model; >
<!ATTLIST schedule.group %schedule.group.atts; >
```

Description:

This element groups several schedules together under a single heading.

Technical Notes: Current PCO style is to exclude the heading “Schedules” from the schedule group wherever it is used in the normal context. However element <schedule.group> is also used in conventions where it has to be marked up with content that PCO does not control. The DTD must therefore provide for the optional heading.

Example of Use:

```
<schedule.group>
<schedule>
<label>1</label>
<heading>Enactments Amended</heading>
<schedule.amendments>
...
</schedule.amendments>
</schedule>
</schedule.group>
```

Children: heading option schedule
omitted-provs (Bills only)

Used in (Act): act amend conv.end skeleton.act skeleton.reg

Used in (Reg): amend conv.end regulation skeleton.act skeleton.reg

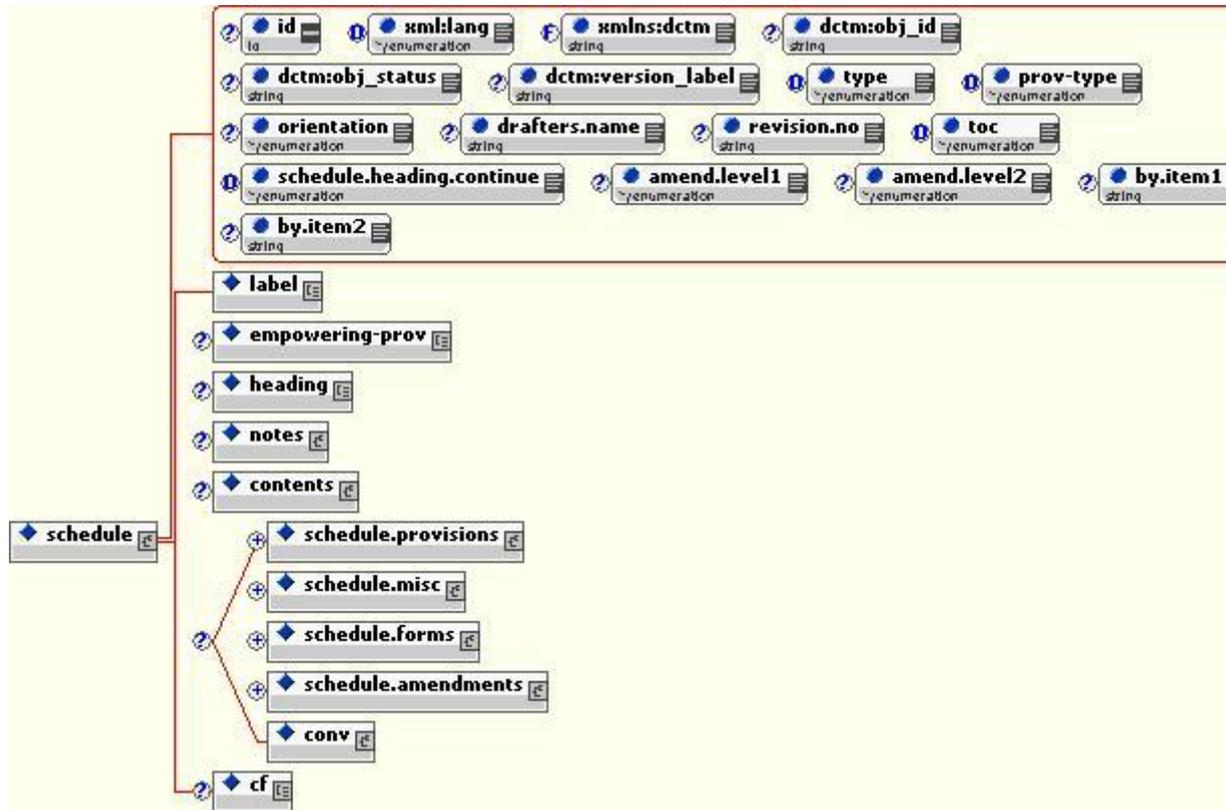
Used in (Bill): amend bill conv.end skeleton.act skeleton.reg

Used in (SOP): amend conv.end instrument.amend skeleton.act skeleton.reg

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20.5 Element schedule

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % schedule.model "
    (label, empowering-prov?, heading?, notes?, contents?,
    (schedule.provisions+ | schedule.misc+ |
    schedule.forms+ | schedule.amendments+ | conv)?, cf?)
">
<ENTITY % schedule.atts "
    %global.atts;
    %doctype.local.atts;
    type %schedule-types; 'schedule'
    prov-type %prov-types; 'clause'
    orientation (portrait | landscape) #IMPLIED
    toc (yes | no) 'yes'
    schedule.heading.continue (yes | no) 'no'
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;">
<ELEMENT schedule %schedule.model; >
<!ATTLIST schedule %schedule.atts; >
    
```

Description:

A schedule is any kind of information supplementary to the document in question and which in many cases can stand alone as a document in its own right.

Technical Note:

Attributes @drafters.name and @revision.no are needed in draft regulations and for reasons of consistency with Authoring Tool templates developed for Bills.

Example of Use: (low-level markup omitted for clarity)

```
<schedule>
<label>2</label>
<empowering-prov><citation>s <intref>64(3)</intref></citation> </empowering-prov>
<heading>Enactments Repealed</heading>
<schedule.amendments>
<head5><heading>District Courts Amendment Act (No 2) 1992 (1992 No 53)</heading></head5>
<para><text>Section 6 and the heading immediately before it.</text></para>
...
</schedule>
```

Children: label empowering-prov heading notes contents schedule.provisions
 schedule.misc schedule.forms schedule.amendments conv cf

Used in: amend schedule.group
 instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes:

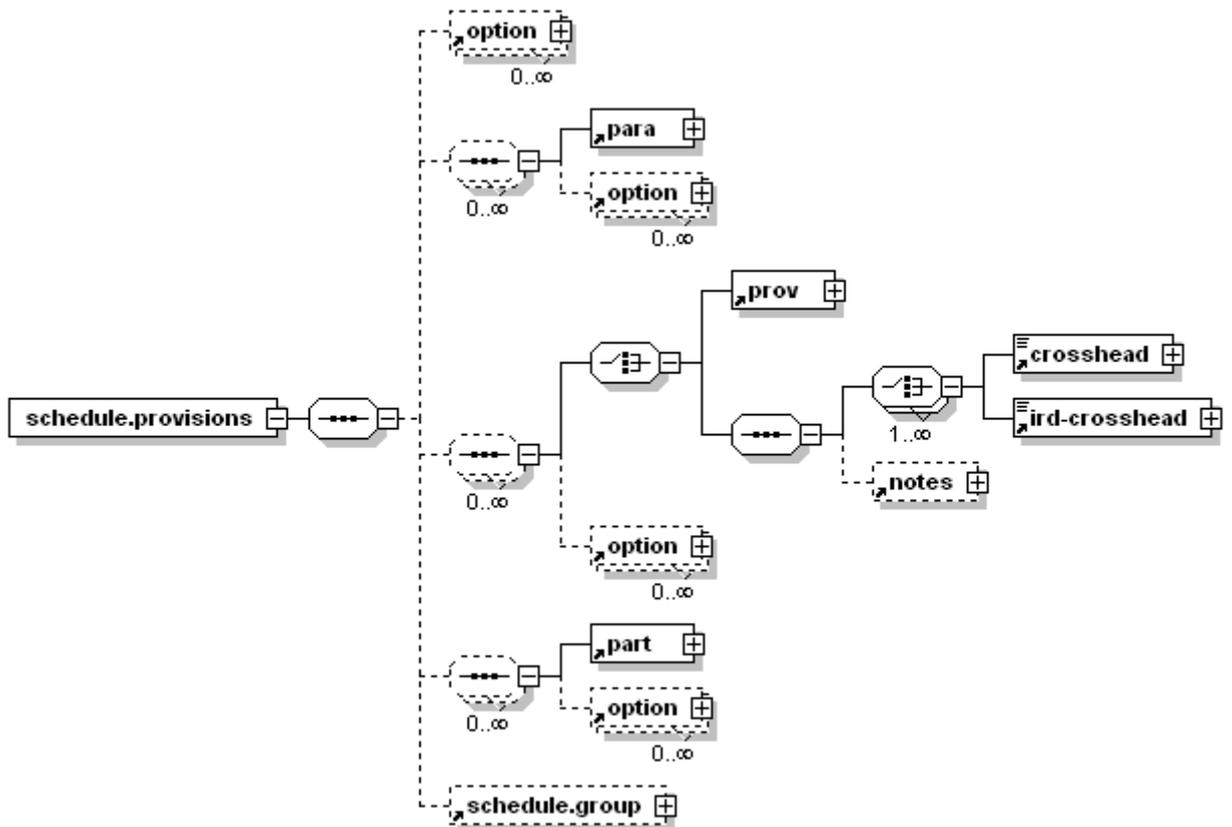
Attribute	Description
id	A unique identifier for the Act.
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ). See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
agency.code	Values: (IRD PCO OC) default PCO
xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label	Documentum related attributes. See Section 8.2.
type	Schedule type. Values: (dictionary annex appendix attachment schedule). See Section 8.20.2 .
prov-type	See Section 8.5.10 .
orientation	Portrait or landscape orientation. Orientation is inherited by child elements of schedule.
deletion-status	See section 8.7.1
drafters.name	Name/s of user/s whose profile of the document includes the element bearing the attribute.
reprints.officer	Reprint Officer
revision.no	Revision number
toc	yes: include in Table of Contents. Default value no: exclude from table of Contents
schedule.heading.continue	Allows continued heading to display the contents of <heading> in <schedule>. This arises from a case illustrated by the <i>High Court Rules</i> . The nature of a document schedule's content may be such that it will have a life independent of the document - the schedule could be viewed as "hosting" another document. In this case the continued header should use the title given the "hosted" document in the schedule's heading.

Attribute	Description
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.
quote	See section 8.8
description	See section 8.6
sonz	See section 8.6
agency.code	See section 8.6
date.instructed	See section 8.6
date.terminated	See section 8.6
drafted.by	See section 8.6
instructing.office	See section 8.6
footer	See section 8.6
pco.num	See section 8.6
pco.suffix	See section 6.4.7
security	See section 8.6
year	See section 8.6
year.imprint	See section 8.6
irdnumbering	See section 8.6
act.type sr.type bill.type	See section 3.3.6 , 4.3.7 , 5.3.8
act.no sr.no bill.no sop.no	See section 3.3.6 , 4.3.7 , 5.3.8 , 6.4.7
assent-copy	See section 3.3.6
date.as.at	See section 3.3.6
date.assent date.signed	See section 3.3.6 4.3.7
date.first.valid	See section 3.3.6 , 4.3.7
date.gazetted	See section 4.3.7
gazette-only	See section 4.3.7
hard.copy.reprint	See section 3.3.6
imperial	See section 4.3.7
official	See section 3.3.6 , 4.3.7
raised.by	See section 6.4.7
reprints.no	See section 3.3.6 , 4.3.7
split.letter	See section 5.3.8
stage	See section 3.3.6 , 4.3.7 , 5.3.8 , 6.4.7
terminated	See section 3.3.6 , 4.3.7 , 5.3.8 , 6.4.7

Attribute	Description
doc.title	See 8.6.
doc.context	See 8.6.
doc.id	See 8.6.
in.amend	See 8.6.

8.20.6 Element schedule.provisions

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % schedule.provisions.model "(option*,
    (para, option*)*,
    ((prov | ((crosshead | ird-crosshead)+, notes?)),
    option*)*,
    (part, option*)*, schedule.group?)
">
<!ENTITY % schedule.provisions.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.atts;"
>
<!ELEMENT schedule.provisions %schedule.provisions.model;
>
<!ATTLIST schedule.provisions %schedule.provisions.atts;
>
    
```

Description:

Element <schedule.provisions> uses the body model and is intended to provide for daces where a schedule sets out provisions in structires the same as those used in the body of

legislation (Part, Subpart, and so on). The best example is the *High Court Rules* in Schedule 2 of the *Judicature Act 1908*.

Example of Use:

```
<schedule><label>Schedule</label>
<heading>The Constitution of the Cook Islands</heading>
<schedule.provisions>
<prov><label>1</label><heading>Interpretation</heading>
<prov.body>
...
</prov.body>
</prov>
...
</schedule.provisions>
</schedule>
```

Example of Use:

```
<schedule><label>1</label>
<schedule.provisions>
<part><label>B</label><heading>Rates Referred to in <citation>Clause <intref>9</intref> of Part
A</citation></heading>
<para>
<table frame="none">
...
</table></para>
</schedule.provisions>
</schedule>
```

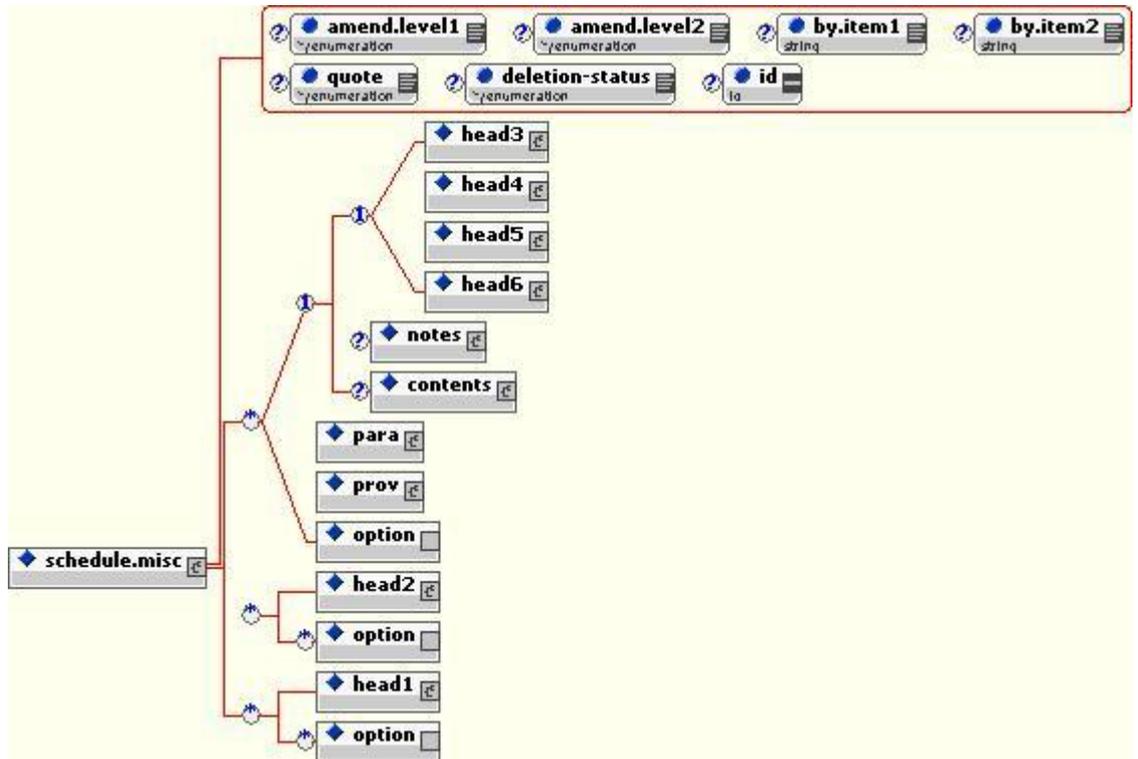
Children: option para prov crosshead ird-crosshead notes part schedule.group

Used in: schedule

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20.7 Element schedule.misc

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % schedule.misc.model "
    (((head3 | head4 | head5 | head6), notes?, contents?)
    | para | prov | option)*,(head2, option)*,
    (head1, option*)*"><!ENTITY % schedule.misc.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.att;"
    >
<!ELEMENT schedule.misc %schedule.misc.model;
<!ATTLIST schedule.misc %schedule.misc.atts;
```

Description:

Used for *freestyle* schedules employing generic headings <head3> to <head6>.

Example of Use:

```
<schedule><label>19</label>
<schedule.misc>
<head4><label>Appendix A</label><heading>Tax Deductions from Payments for Weekly Pay
Periods</heading></head4>
<para>
<table frame="all">
...
</table>
</schedule.misc>
</schedule>
```

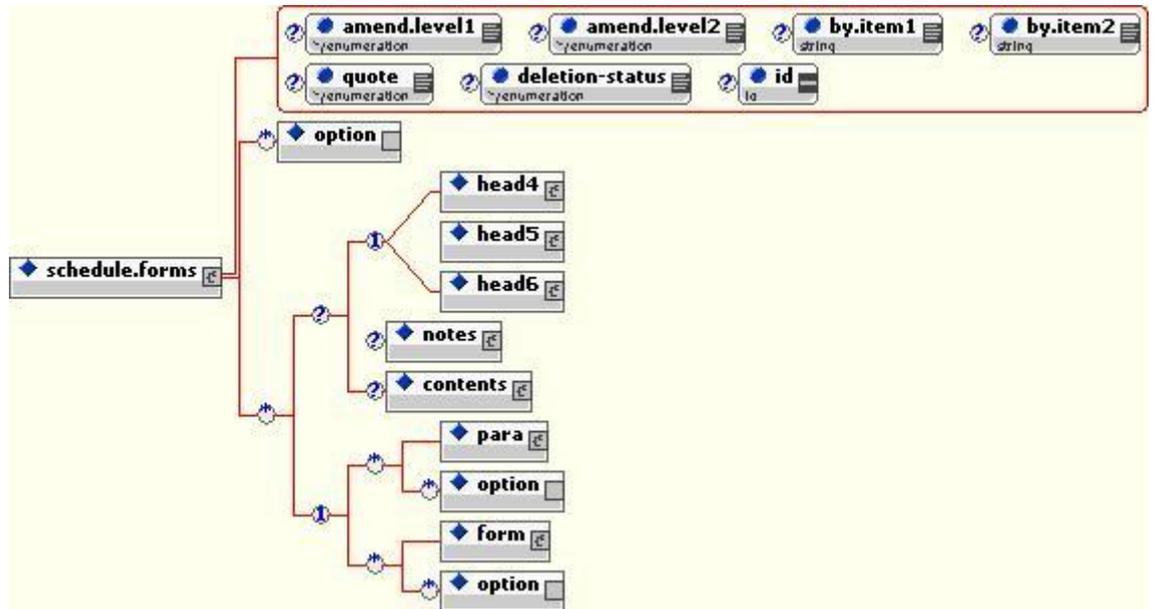
Children: option head3 head4 head5 head6 notes contents para prov head2 head1

Used in: schedule

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20.8 Element schedule.forms

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % schedule.forms.model "
    (option*, (((head4 | head5 | head6),
    notes?, contents?)?, ((para, option*)*,
    (form, option*)*)*)* )">
<!ENTITY % schedule.forms.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT schedule.forms %schedule.forms.model; >
<!ATTLIST schedule.forms %schedule.forms.atts; >
```

Description:

Used for a schedule of forms.

Example of Use:

```
<schedule orientation="landscape"><label>1</label>
<schedule.forms>
<form><label>1</label>
<empowering-prov><citation>Section <intref>rr 37(2), 38, 40(1), 44(2)</intref></citation></empowering-
prov>
<heading>Controlled Drugs Register/Main Controlled Drugs Register/Ward Book</heading>
<form.body>
<para><text>Name and form of controlled drug (1 kind and 1 strength only to each page).</text>
<table colsep="1" rowsep="1">
...
</table>
</para>
</form.body>
</form>
...
</schedule.forms>
</schedule>
```

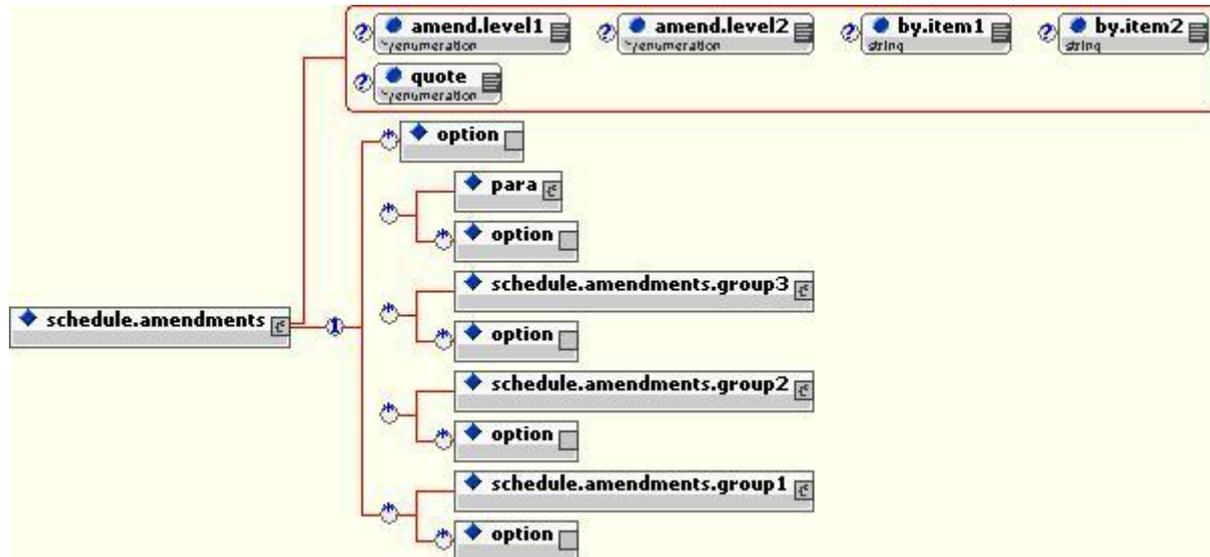
Children: option head4 head5 head6 notes contents para form

Used in: schedule

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20.9 Element schedule.amendments

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % schedule.amendments.model
    " option* , (para , option*)* ,
      (schedule.amendments.group3 , option*)* ,
      (schedule.amendments.group2 , option*)* ,
      (schedule.amendments.group1 , option*)*" >
<ENTITY % schedule.amendments.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.atts;" >
<ELEMENT schedule.amendments (%schedule.amendments.model;) >
<ATTLIST schedule.amendments %schedule.amendments.atts; >
```

Description:

Used for schedules of Enactments Amended, Enactments Repealed and so on.

Example of Use: (some low-level markup is omitted)

```
<schedule>
<label>Schedule 1</label><empowering-prov><citation>s <intref>64(2)</intref></citation></empowering-
prov>
<heading>Enactments Amended</heading>
<schedule.amendments>
<schedule.amendments.group2>
<heading>Child Support Act 1991 (1991 No 142)</heading>
<para><text>Insert in Part III after section 66:</text>
<amend>
<prov><label>66A</label><heading>Commissioner to give effect to orders made under Property
(Relationships) Act 1976</heading>
<prov.body>
...
</prov.body>
</prov>
</amend>
</para>
...

```

```

</schedule.amendments.group2>
</schedule.amendments>
</schedule>
    
```

Example of Use: (some low-level markup is omitted)

```

<schedule>
<label>Schedule 2</label><empowering-prov><citation>s <intref>64(3)</intref></citation></empowering-
prov>
<heading>Enactments Repealed</heading>
<schedule.amendments>
<schedule.amendments.group2>
<heading> District Courts Amendment Act (No 2) 1992 (1992 No 53)</heading>
<para><text> Section 6 and the heading immediately before it.</text>
</para>
...
</schedule.amendments.group2>
</schedule.amendments>
</schedule>
    
```

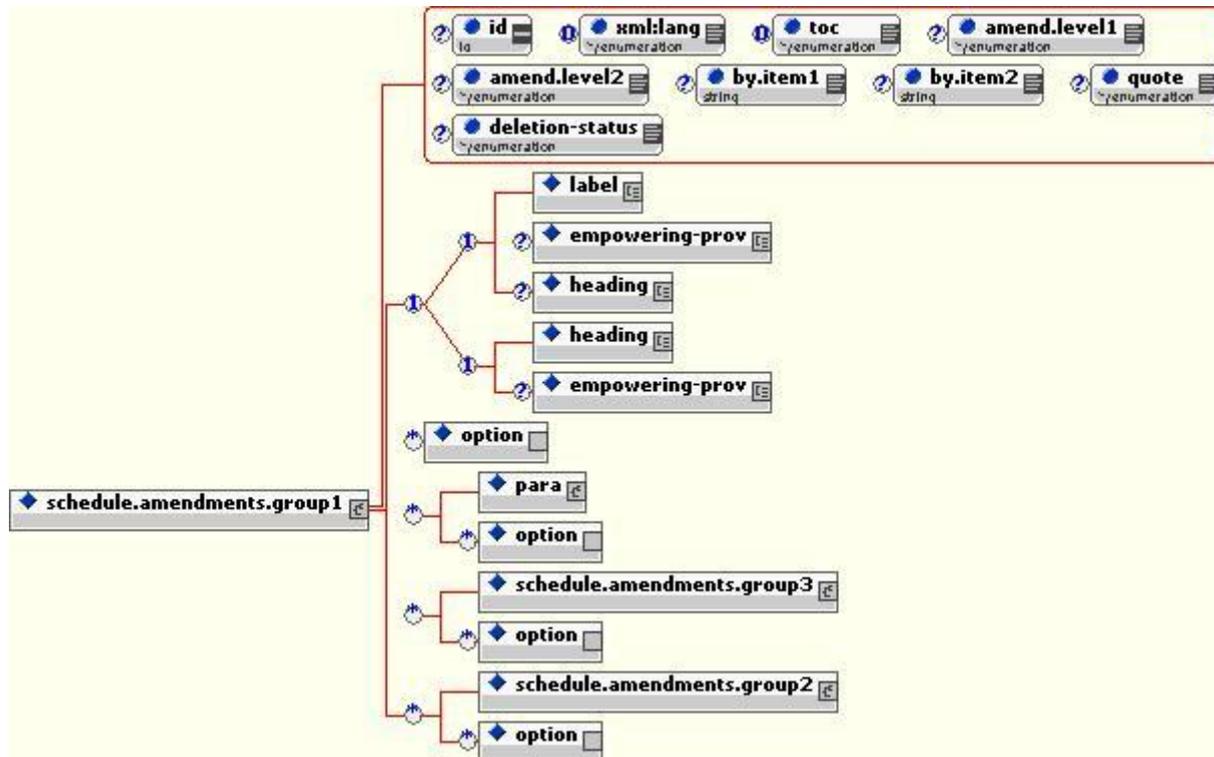
Children: option para schedule.amendments.group1 schedule.amendments.group2
 schedule.amendments.group3

Used in: schedule

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
 deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20.10 Element schedule.amendments.group1

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % schedule.amendments.group1.model
    "((label, empowering-prov?, heading?) |
    
```

```

        (heading, empowering-prov?)) ,
        option* , (para , option*)* ,
        (schedule.amendments.group3 , option*)* ,
        (schedule.amendments.group2 , option*)*"      >
<!ENTITY % schedule.amendments.groupn.atts
        "%id.att;
        %lang.att;
        toc (yes | no ) 'yes'
        %standard-statuses.meta.att;"      >
<!ELEMENT schedule.amendments.group1
        (%schedule.amendments.group1.model;)      >
<!ATTLIST schedule.amendments.group1
        %schedule.amendments.groupn.atts;      >

```

Description:

Used to partition schedules of Enactments Amended, Enactments Repealed etc where the documents amended are organised into groups.

Example of Use: (some low-level markup is omitted)

```

<schedule toc="no">
<label>4</label>
<empowering-prov>s 414</empowering-prov>
<heading>Enactments Amended</heading>
<schedule.amendments>
<schedule.amendments.group1>
<label>Part 1</label>
<heading>Amendments to Other Acts (Other Than Local Acts)</heading>
<schedule.amendments.group2>
<heading>Boilers, Lifts, and Cranes Act 1950 (1950 No 53)</heading>
<para>
<text>Omit from section 9A the words <amend.in>Building Act 1991</amend.in> in every place where they
appear and substitute in each case the
words <amend.in>Building Act 2004</amend.in>.</text>
</para>
</schedule.amendments.group2>
</schedule.amendments.group1>
<schedule.amendments.group1>
<label>2</label>
<heading>Local Acts Amended </heading>
<schedule.amendments.group2>
<heading>Auckland Improvement Trust Act 1971 (1971 No 9)</heading>
<para>
<text>Omit from section 4(1D) the words <amend.in>Building Act 1991</amend.in>and substitute the
words <amend.in>Building Act 2004</amend.in></text>
</para>
<para>
<text>Omit from section 5(1D) the words <amend.in>Building Act 1991</amend.in> and substitute the
words <amend.in>Building Act 2004</amend.in></text>
</para>
</schedule.amendments.group2>
</schedule.amendments.group1>
</schedule.amendments>
</schedule>

```

Children: label heading empowering-prov option para schedule.amendments.group3
schedule.amendments.group2

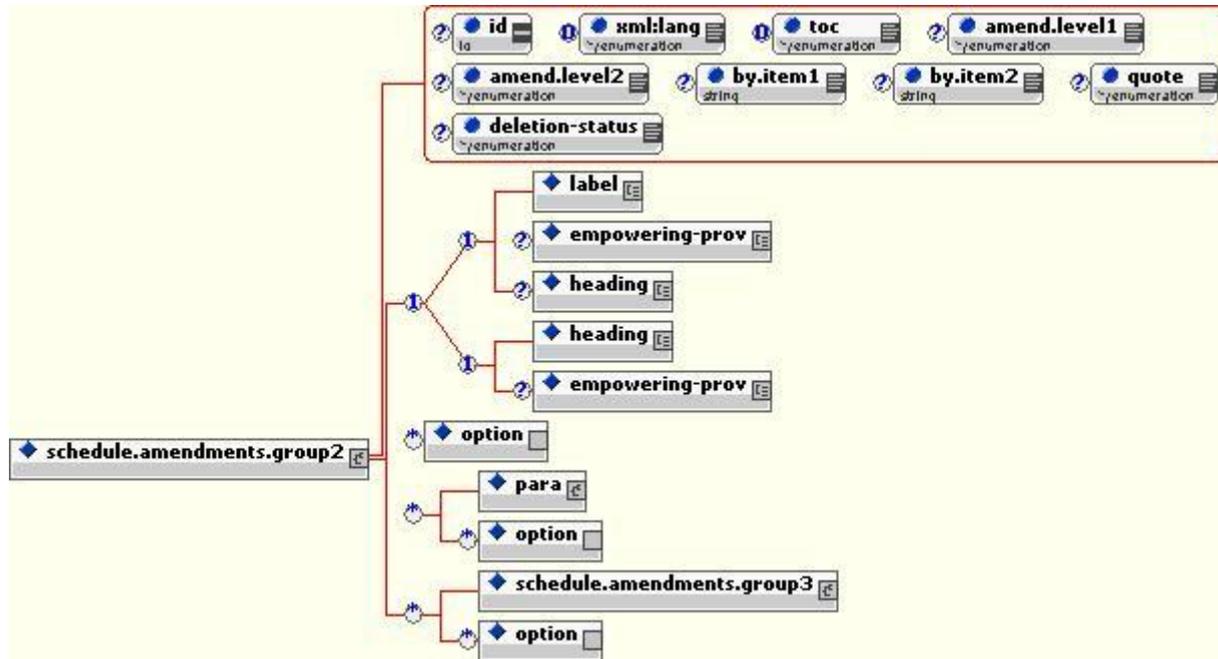
Used in: schedule.amendments

Attributes: id xml:lang toc amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote

deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20.11 Element schedule.amendments.group2

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % schedule.amendments.groupn.atts
    "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    toc (yes | no ) 'yes'
    %standard-statuses.meta.att;"
    >
...
<ENTITY % schedule.amendments.group2.model
    "((label, empowering-prov?, heading?) |
    (heading, empowering-prov?)) ,
    option* , (para , option*)* ,
    (schedule.amendments.group3 , option*)*"
    ><ELEMENT schedule.amendments.group2
    (%schedule.amendments.group2.model;)
    >
<!ATTLIST schedule.amendments.group2
    %schedule.amendments.groupn.atts;
    >
    
```

Description:

Used for each document amended in a schedule of amendments.

Example of Use: (some low-level markup is omitted)

```

<schedule toc="no">
<label>6</label>
<empowering-prov>s 348</empowering-prov>
<heading>Enactments Amended</heading>
<schedule.amendments>
<schedule.amendments.group2>
<heading>Care of Children Act 2004 (2004 No 90)</heading>
<para>
<text>Repeal the definition of <quote.in>lawyer</quote.in> in section
8 and substitute: </text>
<amend>
    
```

```

<para>
<def-para>
<para>
<text><def-term>lawyer</def-term> has the meaning given to it by section
6 of the Lawyers and Conveyancers Act 2006</text>
</para>
</def-para>
</para>
</amend>
<follow-text>.</follow-text>
</para>
</schedule.amendments.group2>
</schedule.amendments>
</schedule>>

```

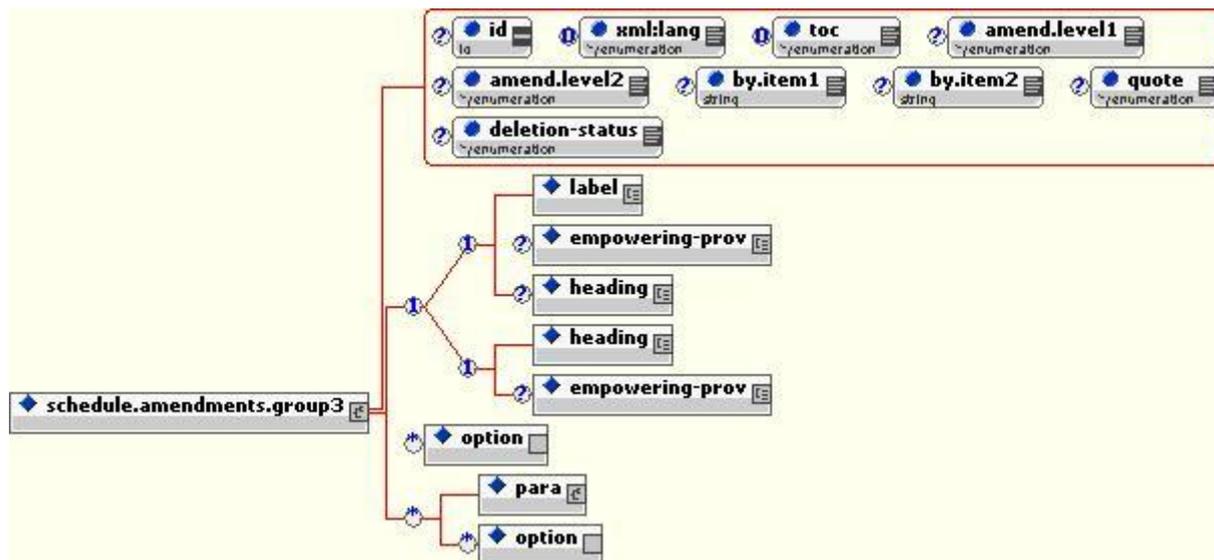
Children: label heading empowering-prov option para schedule.amendments.group3

Used in: schedule.amendments schedule.amendments.group1

Attributes: id xml:lang toc amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20.12 Element schedule.amendments.group3

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % schedule.amendments.groupn.atts
    "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    toc (yes | no) 'yes'
    %standard-statuses.meta.att;" >
...
<!ENTITY % schedule.amendments.group3.model
    "((label, empowering-prov?, heading?) |
    (heading, empowering-prov?)) ,
    option* , (para , option*)*" >
<!ELEMENT schedule.amendments.group3
    (%schedule.amendments.group3.model;) >
<!ATTLIST schedule.amendments.group3
    %schedule.amendments.groupn.atts; >

```

Description:

Used if necessary to sub-group the amendments made to a document by a schedule of amendments.

It is not anticipated that schedule.amendments.group3 will be used in new documents. The element was added to reduce risk of the DTDs becoming incompatible with legacy data.

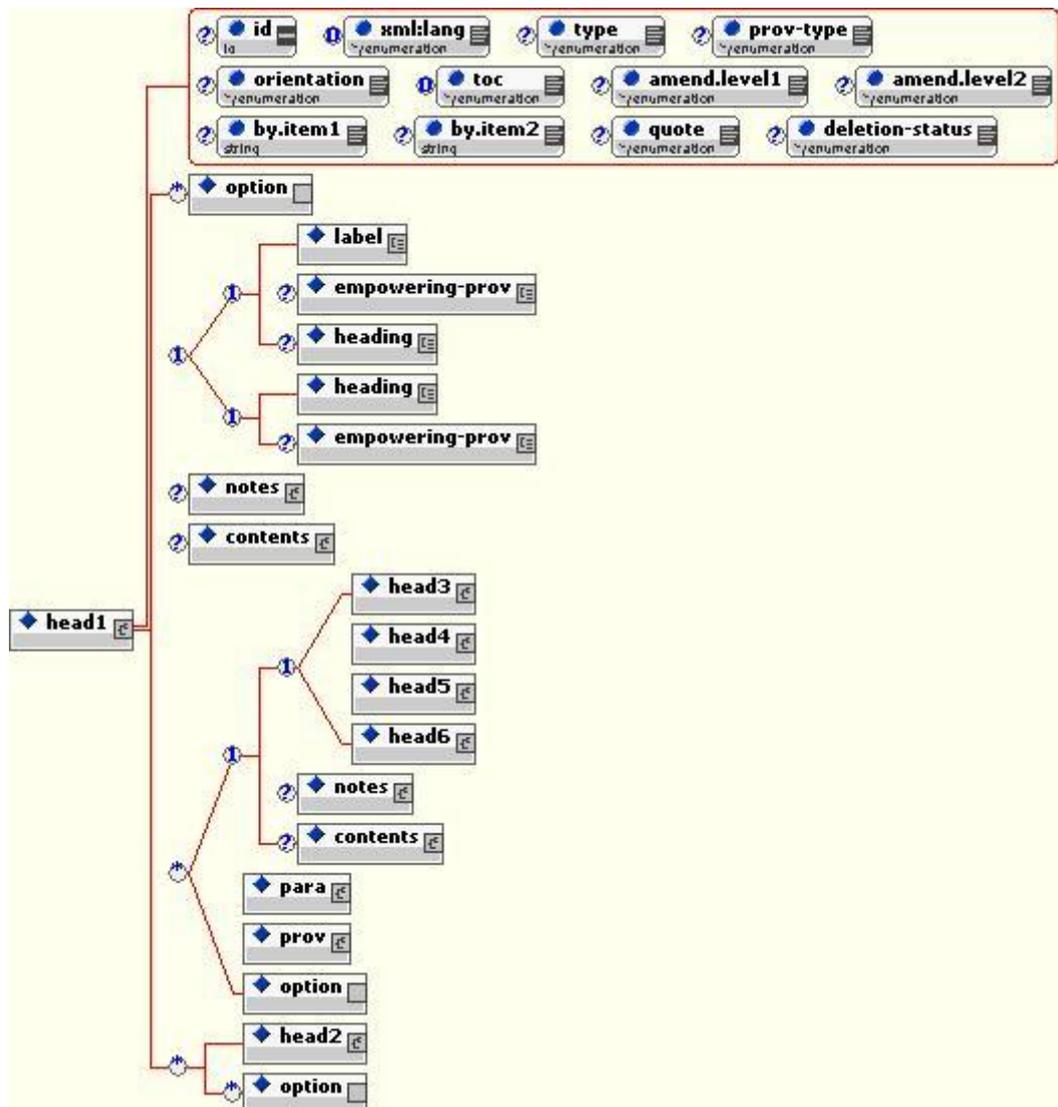
Children: label heading empowering-prov option para

Used in: schedule.amendments schedule.amendments.group1 schedule.amendments.group2

Attributes: id xml:lang toc amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.20.13 Element head1

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % head1.model
  "(option*, ((label, empowering-prov?, heading?) | (heading, empowering-prov?)),
  notes?, contents?, (((head3 | head4 |
  head5 | head6), notes?, contents?) |
  para | prov | option )*, (head2, option*))" >
<!ENTITY % head1.atts "%id.att;
  %lang.att;
  type %struct-types;          #IMPLIED
  prov-type %prov-types;      #IMPLIED
  orientation (portrait | landscape) #IMPLIED
  toc (yes | no) 'yes'
  %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
  ">
<!ELEMENT head1 %head1.model; >
<!ATTLIST head1 %head1.atts; >
```

Description:

A structured element used to model part-like structures.

Example of Use:

```
<schedule><label>1</label>
<schedule.misc>
<head1 type="part"><label>B</label><heading>Rates used</heading>
<para>
<table frame="none">
...
</table></para>
</head1>
</schedule.misc>
</schedule>
```

Children: option label heading empowering-prov notes contents head3 head4 head5 head6 para prov head2

Used in: amend conv.body schedule.misc
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

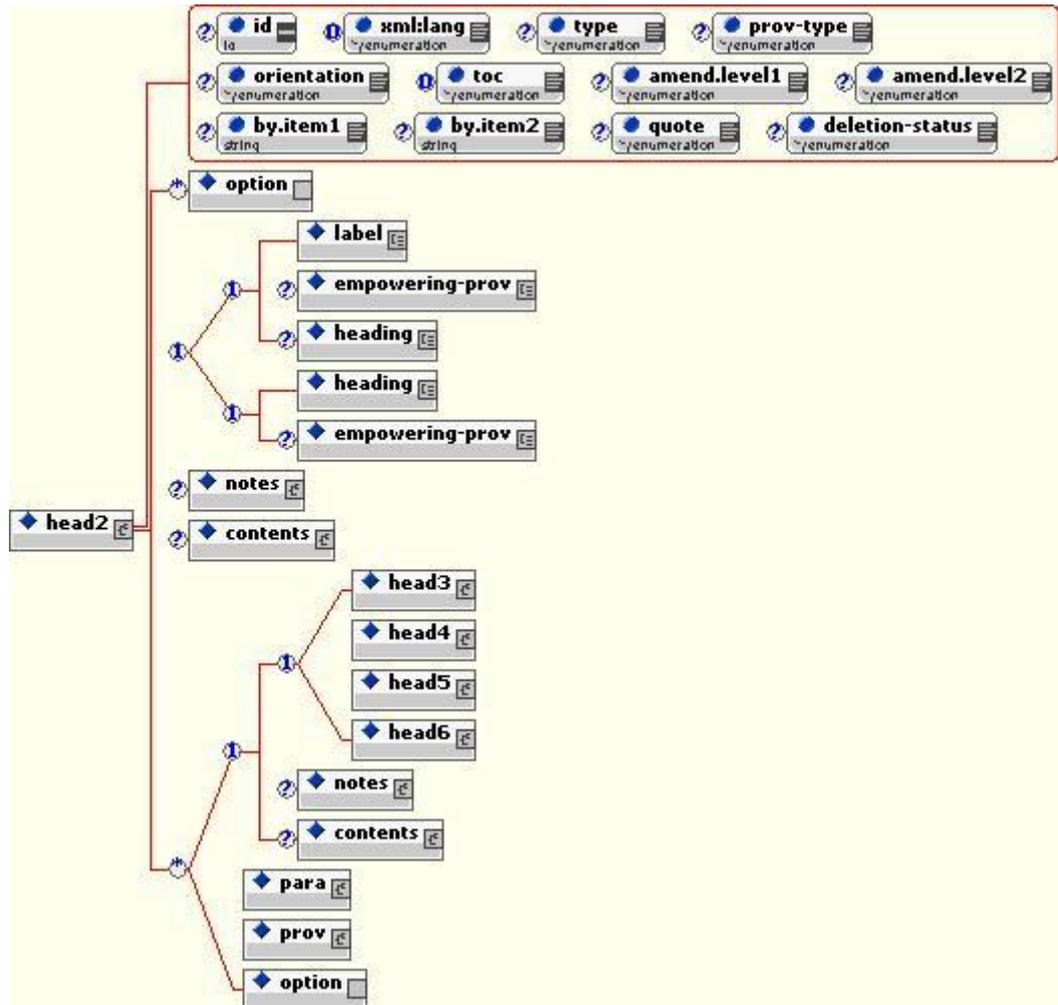
Attributes:

Attribute	Description
id	A unique identifier for the Act.
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ) default en-NZ See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
type	Schedule type. Values: (dictionary annex appendix attachment schedule). See Section 8.20.2 .
prov-type	See Section 8.5.10 .
orientation	Portrait or landscape orientation. Orientation is inherited by child elements of schedule.
deletion-status	See section 8.7.1
toc	yes: include in Table of Contents. Default value no: exclude from table of Contents
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.

Attribute	Description
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.
quote	See section 8.8

8.20.14 Element head2

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % head2.model
    "(option*, ((label, empowering-prov?, heading?) | (heading, empowering-prov?)),
    notes?, contents?, (((head3 | head4 |
    head5 | head6), notes?, contents?) |
    para | prov | option)*)"
    >
<!ELEMENT head2 %head2.model;>
<!ATTLIST head2 %head1.atts; >
    
```

Description:

A structured element used to model sub-part-like structures.

Example of Use:

```

<schedule><label>1</label>
<schedule.misc>
<head1 type="part"><label>B</label><heading>Heading</heading>
<head2 type="subpart"><label>I</label><heading>Sub-Heading</heading>
...
</head2>
</head1>
</schedule.misc>
</schedule>
    
```

Children: option label heading empowering-prov notes contents head3 head4 head5 head6 para prov

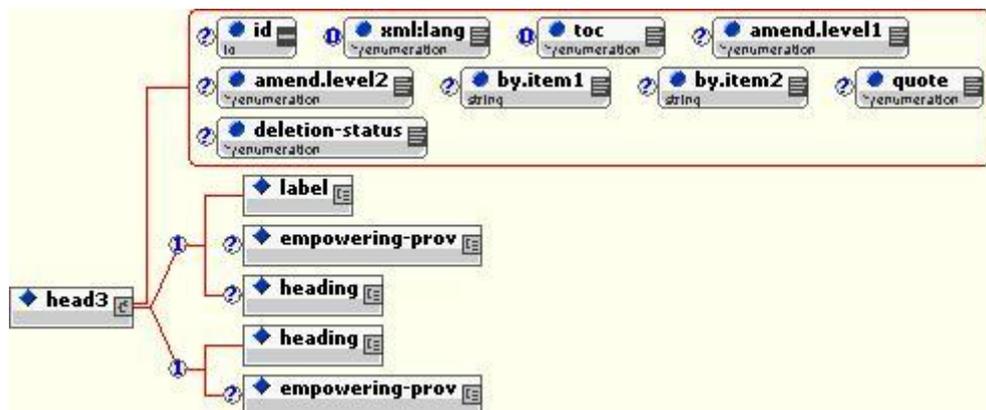
Used in: amend conv.body schedule.misc head1
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
id	A unique identifier for the Act.
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ). See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
type	Schedule type. Values: (dictionary annex appendix attachment schedule). See Section 8.20.2 .
prov-type	See Section 8.5.10 .
orientation	Portrait or landscape orientation. Orientation is inherited by child elements of schedule.
deletion-status	See section 8.7.1
toc	yes: include in Table of Contents. Default value no: exclude from table of Contents
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.

8.20.15 Elements head3, head4, head5, head6,

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % head3.model "((label, empowering-prov?, heading?) | (heading, empowering-prov?))"
><!ENTITY % head3.atts "
    %id.att;
    %lang.att;
    toc      (yes | no) 'yes'
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    ">
<!ELEMENT head3 %head3.model; >
<!ATTLIST head3 %head3.atts; >

<!ELEMENT head4 %head3.model; >
<!ATTLIST head4 %head3.atts; >

<!ELEMENT head5 %head3.model; >
<!ATTLIST head5 %head3.atts; >

<!ELEMENT head6 %head3.model; >
<!ATTLIST head6 %head3.atts; >
```

Description:

Headings level head3 to head6 share a common model and are used as generic “floating” headers. In general <heading6> is subordinate to <heading5> and so on. However, this rule may not always hold and cannot be validated via the DTD.

Example of Use: (low-level markup omitted for clarity)

```
<schedule>
<label>2</label>
<empowering-prov><citation>s <intref>64(3)</intref></citation> </empowering-prov>
<heading>Enactments Repealed</heading>
<schedule.amendments>
<head5><heading>District Courts Amendment Act (No 2) 1992 (1992 No 53)</heading></head5>
<para><text>Section 6 and the heading immediately before it.</text></para>
...
</schedule>
```

Children: label heading

Used in: amend conv.body head1 head2 schedule.misc
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

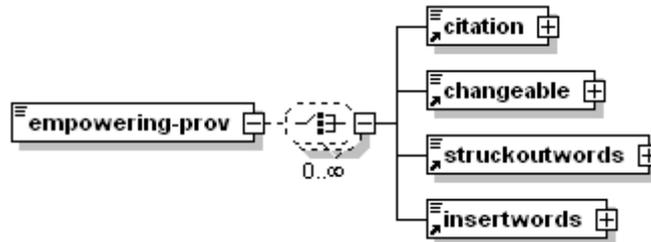
Attributes:

Attribute	Description
id	A unique identifier for the Act.
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ). See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
deletion-status	See section 8.7.1
toc	yes: include in Table of Contents. Default value no: exclude from table of Contents
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.

Attribute	Description
quote	See section 8.8

8.20.16 Element empowering-prov

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % empowering-prov.model "(#PCDATA | citation | changeable
| %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % empowering-prov.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT empowering-prov %empowering-prov.model; >
<!ATTLIST empowering-prov %empowering-prov.atts; >
```

Description:

Describes which provision(s) the piece of legislation is “empowering”.

Example of Use:

```
<empowering-prov>
<citation>Section <intref href="">42(2)</intref> </citation>
</empowering-prov>
```

Children: citation struckoutwords insertwords

changeable (Bills, Sops and Draft Regs only)

Used in: amend form head1 head2 schedule schedule.amendments schedule.forms
schedule.misc table

instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: id

8.21. Conventions and Treaties

8.21.1 Overview

Legislative content is typified by the use of formal, named/labelled structures such as “Part” and “Subpart”. In the majority of instances these structures have been used in a uniform manner, which allows specific elements to be defined to represent them - part, subpart, prov, subprov.

In conventions these elements are re-used, and the format of the convention is adjusted as necessary so that it can be modelled with these elements. In some instances elements <part> and <subpart> may be used without their labels.

8.21.2 Entity %conv-types;

Declaration:

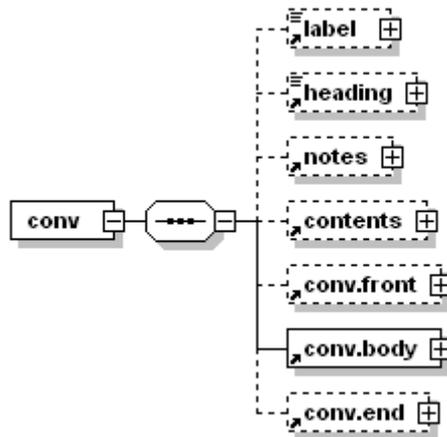
```
<!ENTITY % conv-types "(convention | agreement | protocol | treaty
| constitution | covenant | instrument)">
```

Description:

An entity to define the allowable types of convention.

8.21.3 Element conv

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % conv.model "(label?, heading?, notes?, contents?,
conv.front?, conv.body, conv.end?)">
<!ENTITY % conv.atts "
%id.att;
%lang.att;
type %conv-types; 'convention'
%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
">
<!ELEMENT conv %conv.model; >
<!ATTLIST conv %conv.atts; >
```

Description:

A convention or treaty.

See Glossary: Convention

Example of Use:

```
<conv>
<conv.front>
<preamble-block>
<preamble>
<para><text>The States signatory to the present Convention,
</text></para>
<para><text>Firmly convinced that the interests of children are of
paramount importance in matters relating to their custody,
</text></para>
...
</conv.front>
...
```

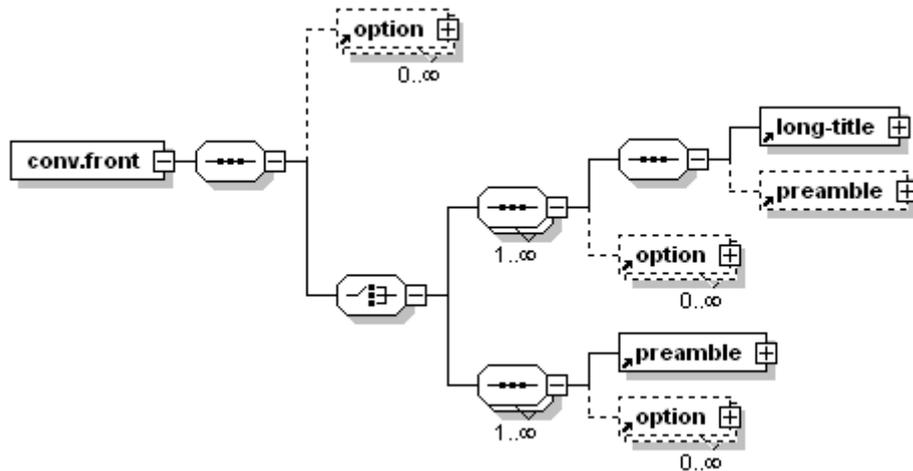
Children: label heading notes contents conv.front conv.body conv.end

Used in: amend conv.end instrument.amend schedule
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: id xml:lang type amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.21.4 Element conv.front

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % conv.front.model "( option*,
    (
        ((long-title, preamble?), option*)+ |
        (preamble, option*)+
    )
)">
<!ENTITY % conv.front.atts "%lang.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.att;
    %id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT conv.front %conv.front.model; >
<!ATTLIST conv.front %conv.front.atts; >
```

Description:

The front or introductory matter of a convention.

Example of Use:

```
<conv.front>
<preamble>
<preamble-block>
<para><text>The States signatory to the present Convention, </text></para>
<para><text>Firmly convinced that the interests of children ...</text></para>
<para><text>Desiring to protect children ...</text></para>
<para><text>Have resolved to conclude a Convention ...</text></para>
</preamble-block>
</preamble>
</conv.front>
```

Children: option long-title preamble

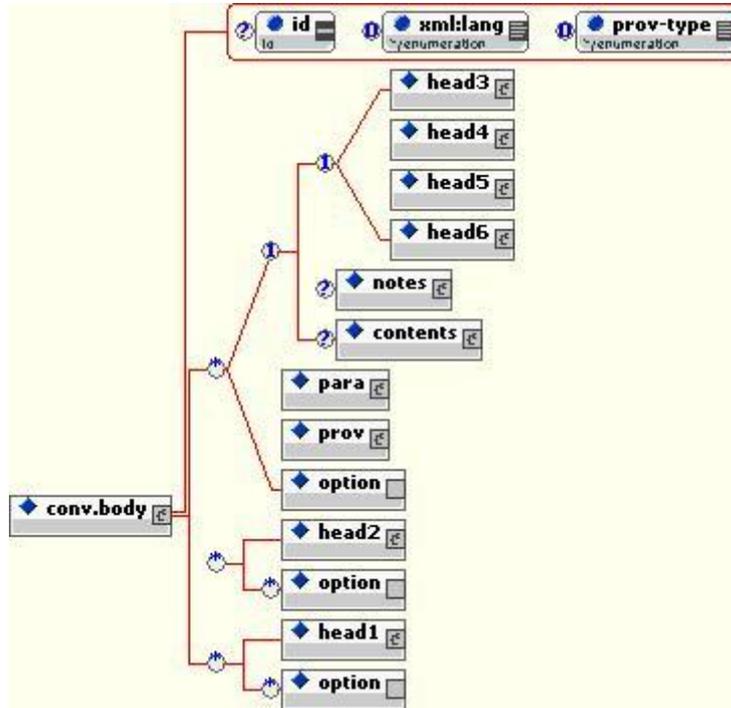
Used in: conv

Attributes: xml:lang type amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id

deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.21.5 Element conv.body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % conv.body.model "
    (
        ((head3 | head4 | head5 | head6),
         notes?, contents?) | para | prov | option
        )*,
        (head2, option*)*,
        (head1, option*)*
    )"
<ENTITY % conv.body.atts "
    %id.att;
    %lang.att;
    prov-type %prov-types; 'article'
">
<ELEMENT conv.body %conv.body.model; >
<!ATTLIST conv.body %conv.body.atts; >

```

Description:

The body matter of a convention. The body of a convention is modelled using the same major elements found in schedules

Example of Use:

```

<conv.body>
<head1 type="chapter"><label denominator="no">Chapter I</label>
<heading>Consular Relations in General</heading>
<head2 type="subchapter">
<label denominator="no">Section I</label>
<heading>Establishment and Conduct of Consular Relations</heading>
<prov><label denominator="no">Article 2</label>

```

```

<heading>Establishment of consular relations...
...
</head2>
</head1>
</conv.body>

```

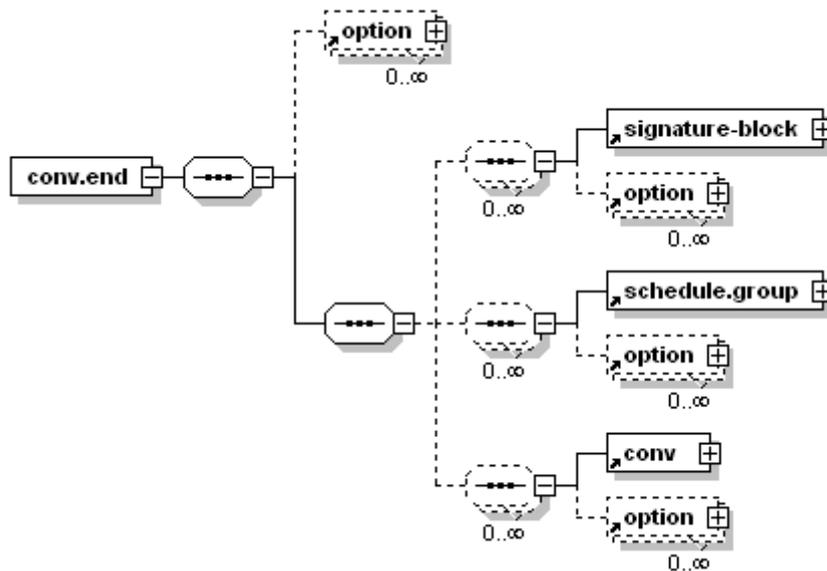
Children: option head3 head4 head5 head6 notes contents para prov head2 head1

Used in: conv

Attributes: id xml:lang prov-type

8.21.6 Element conv.end

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % conv.end.model "(signature-block?,
                           schedule.group?, conv*)" >
<!ENTITY % conv.end.atts "%lang.att;
                          %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
                          %id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT conv.end %conv.end.model; >
<!ATTLIST conv.end %conv.end.atts; >

```

Description:

The end, or closing matter of a convention.

Example of Use:

```

<conv.end>
<signature-block>
<para><text>In witness whereof the undersigned, being duly authorized thereto, have signed this
Convention.</text></para>
<para><text>Done at The Hague, on the <field fill-length="14" fill="underline"/> day of <field fill-
length="20" fill="underline"/> 19<field fill-length="3" fill="underline"/>, in the English and French
languages, both texts being equally authentic...</text></para>
</signature-block>
</conv.end>

```

Children: option signature-block schedule.group conv

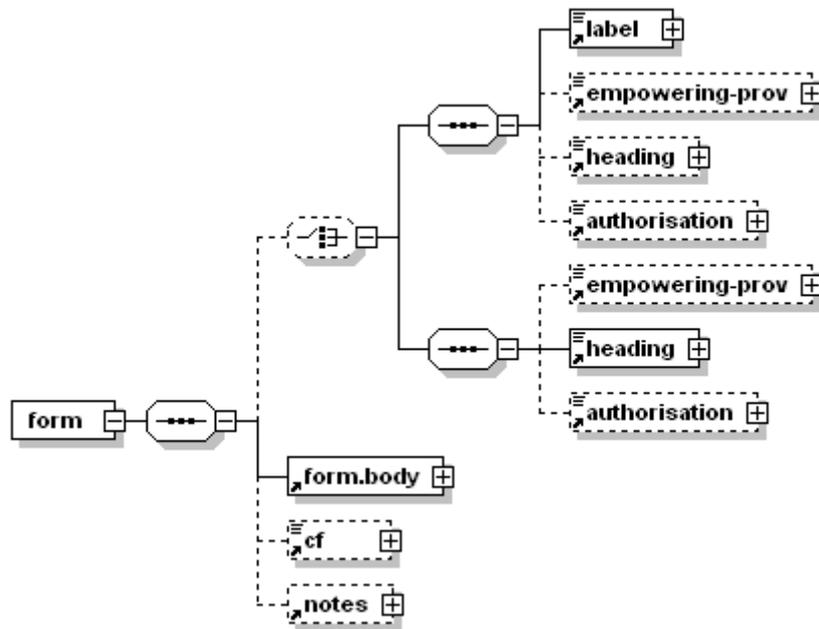
Used in: conv

Attributes: xml:lang type amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.22. Forms

8.22.1 Element form

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % form.model "(((label, empowering-prov?,
    heading?, authorisation?)
    | (empowering-prov?, heading, authorisation?))?,
    form.body, cf?, notes?)"
    >
<ENTITY % form.atts "
    %id.att;
    %lang.att;
    toc (yes | no) 'yes'
    orientation (portrait | landscape) #IMPLIED
    %standard-statuses.meta.att;
    ">
<ELEMENT form %form.model;
<ATTLIST form %form.atts;
```

Description:

A form, as typically appearing in schedules. A form is often represented by a graphic.

Technical Note:

The orientation attribute specifies whether the layout of the form is landscape or portrait.

Example of Use:

```
<form>
<label>1</label>
<heading>Application for registration of a company</heading>
<form.body>
<para>
```

```
<graphic id="xxx" fileref="yyyy"></graphic>
</para>
</form.body>
</form>
```

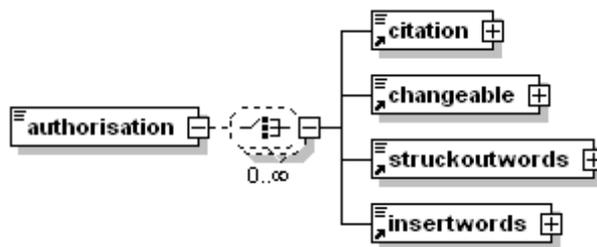
Children: label empowering-prov heading form.body cf notes

Used in: label empowering-prov heading authorisation form.body cf notes

Attributes: id xml:lang toc orientation amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs Only).

8.22.2 Element authorisation

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % authorisation.model "(#PCDATA | citation | changeable
| %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % authorisation.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att;" >
<!ATTLIST authorisation %authorisation.atts; >
```

Description:

Describes which provision(s) the piece of legislation is "authorising" legislation in relation to a form. This element is used exclusively in forms.

The %authorisation.model; entity is redefined for Acts to exclude element <changeable>. See section 4.2.5 .

Example of Use:

```
<authorisation>
<citation>Section <extref href="">53(1)</extref>, Parole Act 2002</citation>
</authorisation>
```

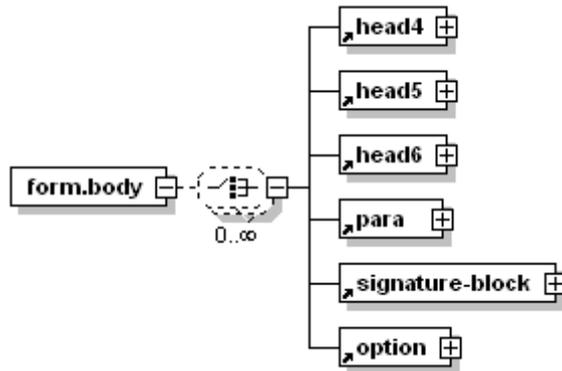
Children: citation struckoutwords insertwords
changeable (Bills, SOPs and Draft Regulations).

Used in: form

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.22.3 Element form.body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % form.body.model "(head4 | head5 | head6 | para |
signature-block | option)*" >
<!ENTITY % form.body.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT form.body %form.body.model; >
<!ATTLIST form.body %form.body.atts; >
```

Description:

The body of a form.

Example of Use:

```
<form.body>
<para>
<graphic id="xxx" fileref="yyyy"></graphic>
</para>
</form.body>
```

Children: head4 head5 head6 para signature-block

Used in: form

Attributes: id

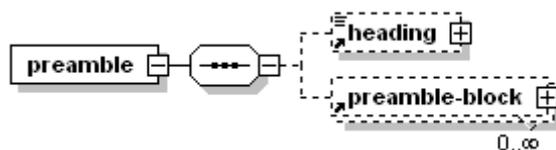
8.23. Preambles

8.23.1 Overview

A preamble is a preliminary statement, which usually sets out the reasons behind the legislation and its scope. The major components of a preamble are modelled with elements used exclusively in Preambles.

8.23.2 Element preamble

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % preamble.model "(heading?, preamble-block*)" >
<!ENTITY % preamble.atts "%id.atts;
    %lang.atts;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT preamble %preamble.model; >
<!ATTLIST preamble %preamble.atts; >
```

Description:

The preamble “level 1” element. A wrapper element containing the “Preamble” heading plus multiple preambles. The <preamble> element will normally contain either a single preamble in English, or a Māori preamble followed by an English preamble. In a change tracked Bill, one (sometimes both) preambles may be struckout and replaced.

Some older legacy items do not contain a “Preamble” heading.

Preambles also occur in treaties and conventions.

Example of Use:

```
<preamble><heading>Preamble</heading>
<preamble-block><heading>He korero tahuhu</heading>
...
</preamble-block >
<preamble-block ><heading>Background in English</heading>
...
</preamble-block >
</preamble>
```

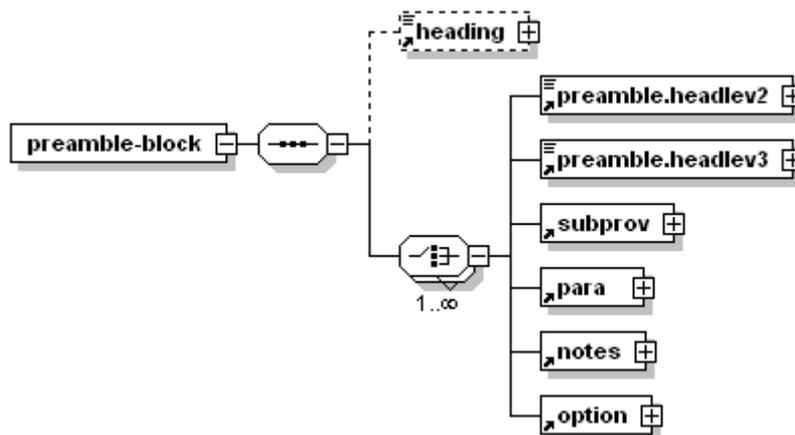
Children: heading preamble-block

Used in: amend conv.front skeleton.act.front skeleton.reg.front
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: id xml:lang amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.23.3 Element preamble-block (level 1 structure)

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % preamble-block.model "(heading?,
    (preamble.headlev2 | preamble.headlev3 | subprov
```

```

| para | notes | option)+]">
<!ENTITY % preamble-block.atts "%id.atts;
%lang.atts;
%standard-statuses.meta.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT preamble-block %preamble-block.model; >
<!ATTLIST preamble-block %preamble-block.atts; >

```

Description:

Preamble “level 1” wrapper. The preamble itself.

Example of Use: Example from *Poukani Claims Settlement Act 2000*

```

<preamble-block><heading>Background in English</heading>
<subprov><label>1</label>
<para><text>The Treaty of Waitangi is set out, in Maori and English, in Schedule 1:</text></para>
</subprov>
<preamble.headlev2>Claim under the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975</preamble.headlev2>
...
</preamble-block>

```

Example of Use: Example using paras

```

<conv.front>
<preamble-block>
<para><text>The States signatory to the present Convention, </text></para>
<para><text>Firmly convinced that the interests of children are of paramount importance in matters
relating to their custody, </text></para>
<para><text>Desiring to protect children internationally ... </text></para>
<para><text>Have resolved to conclude a Convention ...</text></para>
</preamble-block>
</conv.front>

```

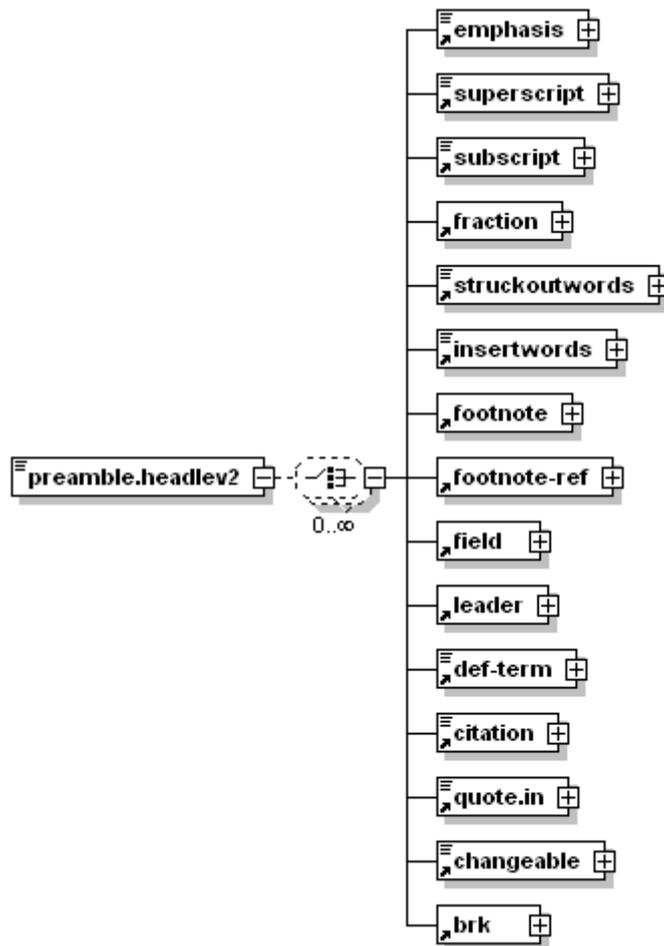
Children: heading preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 subprov para notes option

Used in: amend preamble

Attributes: id xml:lang amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.23.4 Elements preamble.headlev2 and preamble.headlev3

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % heading.model "(%phrase; | brk)*" >
<!ENTITY % heading.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %lang.att;" >

<!ELEMENT preamble.headlev2 %heading.model; >
<!ATTLIST preamble.headlev2 %heading.atts; >

<!ELEMENT preamble.headlev3 %heading.model; >
<!ATTLIST preamble.headlev3 %heading.atts; >
  
```

Description:

The preamble “level 2” heading element. The level 2 element is a heading (similar in appearance in some preambles to a centred and italicised cross-heading. Often used as a heading for a series of subprov items.

The preamble “level 3” heading, which is usually subordinate to a preamble level 2 heading. It is likely to be used only in preambles to treaties or conventions.

See also <heading> at section 8.15.1 .

Technical Note:

Elements <preamble.headlev2> and <preamble.headlev3>. are “floating” heading elements with similar characteristics to element <crosshead>. Because of the lack of hierarchical structure, the DTD cannot validate the editorial requirement for Level 3 headings to be subordinate to Level 2 headings.

Example of Use:

```
<preamble.headlev2>Nga koreorero i waenga i nga tangata o Pouakani me te
Karauna</preamble.headlev2>
<subprov><label>5</label>
...
</subprov>
<subprov><label>6</label>
...
</subprov>
<subprov><label>7</label>
...

```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in brk graphic.inline

changeable (Bills, SOPs and Draft Regulations only)

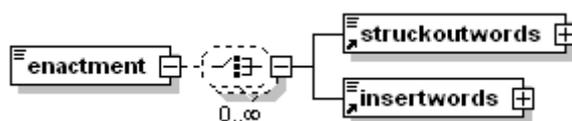
Used in: amend preamble-block
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.24. Elements Relating to Acts

8.24.1 Element enactment

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % enactment.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % enactment.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT enactment %enactment.model; >
<!ATTLIST enactment %enactment.atts; >

```

Description:

A statement enacting (declaring the officiality of) the Act in question.

Example of Use:

```
<enactment>BE IT ENACTED by the General Assembly of New Zealand in Parliament assembled, and by the
authority of the same, as follows:</enactment>

```

Children: struckoutwords insertwords

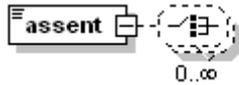
Used in (Act): front

Used in (SOP): sop.newenact

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.24.2 Element assent

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % assent.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % assent.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT assent %assent.model; >
<!ATTLIST assent %assent.atts; >
```

Description:

Date upon which the piece of legislation received royal assent.

Technical Notes:

The words “Date of assent” are not included within the markup.

See Glossary: Assent

Example of Use:

```
<assent><!--Date of assent-->3 April 2001</assent>
```

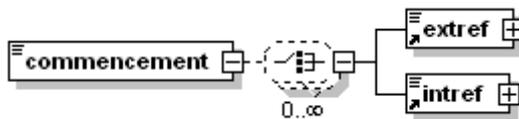
Used in (Act): cover skeleton.act.cover

Used in (Reg): skeleton.act.cover

Attributes: id

8.24.3 Element commencement

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % commencement.model "(#PCDATA | extref | intref)*" >
<!ENTITY % commencement.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT commencement %commencement.model; >
<!ATTLIST commencement %commencement.atts; >
```

Description:

Date upon which the piece of legislation commences – this is commonly a reference to the provision that provides commencement information.

Technical Notes:

The word “Commencement” is not included within the markup.

Example of Use:

`<commencement><!--Commencement-->see <intref>section 2</intref></commencement>`

Children: intref extref

Used in (Act): cover skeleton.act.cover

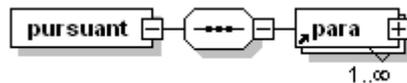
Used in (Reg): skeleton.act.cover

Attributes: id

8.25. Elements Relating to Regulations

8.25.1 Element pursuant

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % pursuant.model "(para+)" >
<!ENTITY % pursuant.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT pursuant %pursuant.model; >
<!ATTLIST pursuant %pursuant.atts; >
```

Description:

This element contains information about the Act to which the Regulation in question is related, and which body or person(s) have issued the Regulation.

Example of Use:

```
<pursuant>
<para><text>PURSUANT to the <citation><leg-title>Corporations (Investigation and Management) Act
1989</leg-title></citation>, His Excellency the Governor-General, acting by and with the advice and
consent of the Executive Council, hereby makes the following order.</text></para>
</pursuant>
```

Children: para

Used in (Act): skeleton.reg.front

Used in (Reg): front skeleton.reg.front

Attributes: id

8.25.2 Element gg

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % gg.model "(#PCDATA | brk)*" >
<!ENTITY % gg.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT gg %gg.model; >
```

```
<!ATTLIST gg %gg.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used for the statement of the name of the Governor-General.

Example of Use:

```
<gg>Michael Hardie Boys, Governor-General</gg>
```

Children: brk

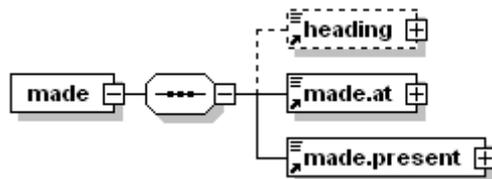
Used in (Act): skeleton.reg.cover

Used in (Reg): cover skeleton.reg.cover

Attributes: id

8.25.3 Element made

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % made.model "(heading?, made.at, made.present)" >
<!ENTITY % made.atts "%id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT made %made.model; >
<!ATTLIST made %made.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used for the statements on the front page of a Regulation.

Example of Use:

```
<made><heading>Order in Council</heading>
<made.at>At Wellington this 18th day of December 2000</made.at>
<made.present>Present:<brk/>His Excellency the Governor-General in Council </made.present>
</made>
```

Example of Use: Example in the Signature copy (not actual fill-length):

```
<made><heading>Order in Council</heading>
<made.at>At Wellington <field fill-length="14" fill="space"/> day of <field fill-length="14" fill="space"/>
2002</made.at>
<made.present>Present:<brk/>in Council</made.present>
</made>
```

Children: heading made.at made.present

Used in (Act): skeleton.reg.cover

Used in (Reg): cover skeleton.reg.cover

Attributes: id

8.25.4 Element made.at

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % made.at.model "(#PCDATA | field | leader)*" >
<!ENTITY % made.at.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT made.at %made.at.model; >
<!ATTLIST made.at %made.at.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used for the statements on the front page of a Regulation.

Example of Use:

```
<made.at>At Wellington this 18th day of December 2000</made.at>
```

Example of Use: Example in the Signature copy (not actual fill-length):

```
<made><heading>Order in Council</heading>
<made.at>At Wellington <field fill-length="14" fill="space"/> day of <field fill-length="14" fill="space"/>
2002</made.at>
<made.present>Present:<brk/>in Council</made.present>
</made>
```

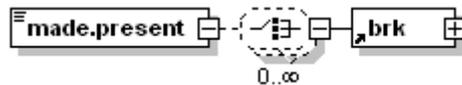
Children: field leader

Used in: made

Attributes: id

8.25.5 Element made.present

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % made.present.model "(#PCDATA | brk)*" >
<!ENTITY % made.present.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT made.present %made.present.model; >
<!ATTLIST made.present %made.present.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used for the statements on the front page of a Regulation.

Example of Use:

```
<made>
<made.at>At Wellington this 18th day of December 2000</made.at>
<made.present>Present:<brk/>His Excellency the Governor-General in Council</made.present>
</made>
```

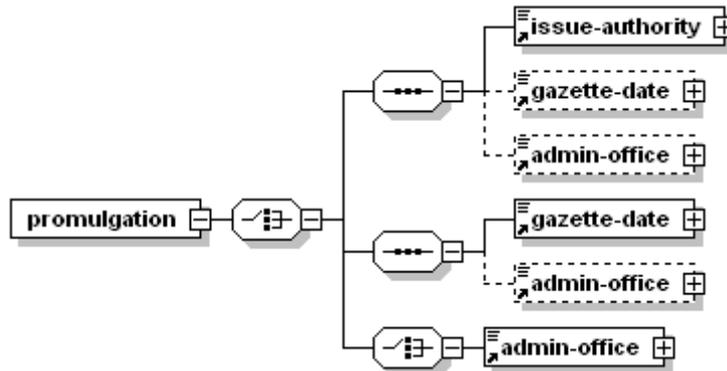
Children: brk

Used in: made

Attributes: id

8.25.6 Element promulgation

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % promulgation.model
    "((issue-authority, gazette-date?, admin-office?) |
      (gazette-date, admin-office?) |
      (admin-office) )">
<!ENTITY % promulgation.atts "%id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT promulgation %promulgation.model; >
<!ATTLIST promulgation %promulgation.atts; >
```

Description:

This element contains information relating to how the legislation was promulgated, when it was promulgated and about the authority under which it was promulgated. The model dictates that all child elements are optional, but the <promulgation> element cannot itself be empty.

Example of Use:

```
<promulgation>
<issue-authority>Issued under the authority of the <citation><leg-title href="ACT-NZL-PUB.1989-142">Acts
and Regulations Publication Act 1989</leg-title></citation>.</issue-authority>
<gazette-date date="2000-12-14">Date of notification in <emphasis style="italics">Gazette</emphasis>:
14 December 2000.</gazette-date>
<admin-office>These regulations are administered in the <ministry>Department of
Labour</ministry>.</admin-office>
</promulgation>
```

Children: issue-authority, gazette-date, admin-office

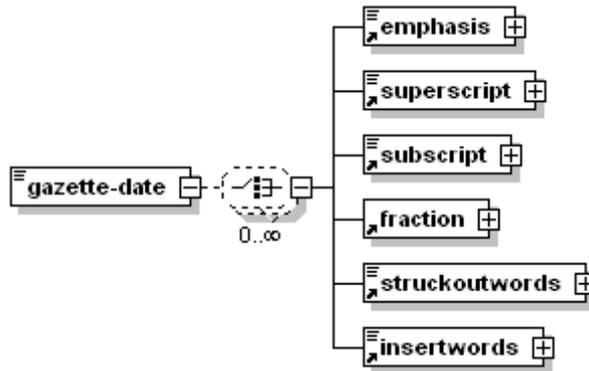
Used in (Act): skeleton.reg.end

Used in (Reg): end skeleton.reg.end

Attributes: id

8.25.7 Element `gazette-date`

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % gazette-date.model "(%basic-phrase;)*" >
<!ENTITY % gazette-date.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT gazette-date %gazette-date.model; >
<!ATTLIST gazette-date %gazette-date.atts; >
```

Description:

The date of notification in the Gazette.

Technical Notes:

While the date is written in English in the content of the element, the date is also stored in YYYY-MM-DD format in the date attribute.

Example of Use:

```
<gazette-date date="1958-04-02">Date of notification in <emphasis styl="italics">Gazette</emphasis>: 2
April 1958</gazette-date>
```

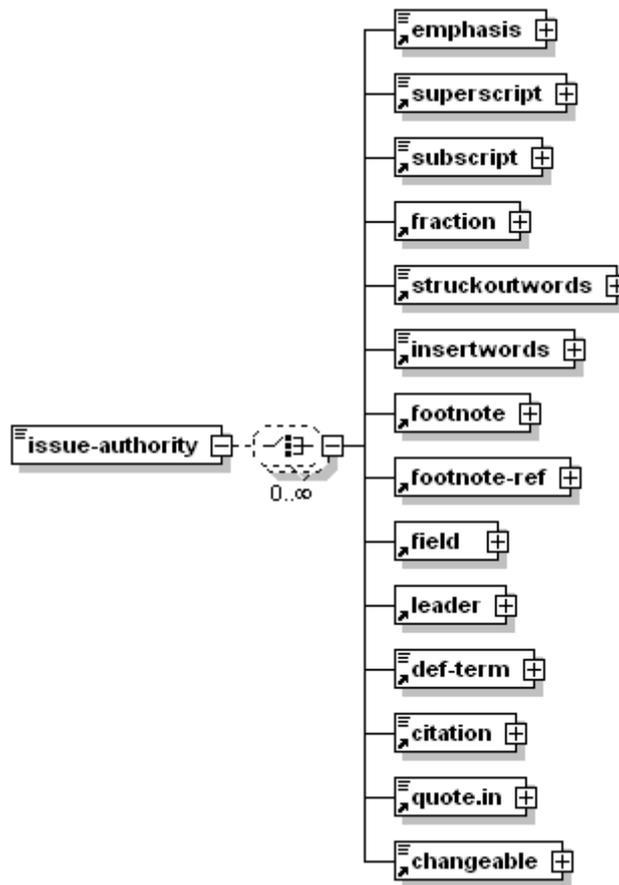
Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: promulgation

Attributes: id

8.25.8 Element issue-authority

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % issue-authority.model "(%phrase;)*" >
<!ENTITY % issue-authority.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT issue-authority %issue-authority.model; >
<!ATTLIST issue-authority %issue-authority.atts; >
```

Description:

This element contains information describing the Act which authorises the use and enforcement of the legislation in a legal context.

Imperial legislation does not have an issuing authority. This element is therefore optional in the parent element <promulgation> - see 8.25.6 .

Example of Use:

```
<issue-authority>Issued under the authority of the <citation><leg-title>Acts and Regulations Publication
Act 1989</leg-title> </citation>.
</issue-authority>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in changeable
graphic.inline

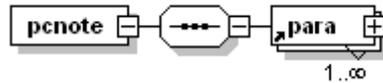
Used in: promulgation

Attributes: id

8.26. Elements Relating to Prospective Consolidations

8.26.1 Element pcnote

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % pcnote.model "(para+)" >
<!ENTITY % pcnote.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT pcnote %pcnote.model; >
<!ATTLIST pcnote %pcnote.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used to contain a note used for Prospective Consolidations.

Example of Use: Consolidated Act

```
<pcnote>
<para><text>This is an unofficial consolidation of the Matrimonial Property Act 1976, as it would look if the
Matrimonial Property Amendment Bill (No 109-3) (as reported back by the Justice and Electoral
Committee) is enacted.</text></para>
</pcnote>
```

Example of Use: Consolidated Regulation

```
<pcnote>
<para><text> This is an unofficial consolidation of the Penal Institutions Regulations 1976, as it would look if
the Penal Institutions Regulations 2005 is enacted.</text></para>
</pcnote>
```

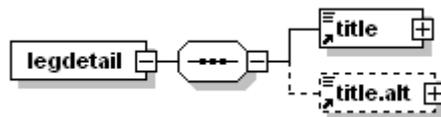
Children: para

Used in: act regulation

Attributes: id

8.26.2 Element legdetail

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % legdetail.model "(title, title.alt?)" >
<!ENTITY % legdetail.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT legdetail %legdetail.model; >
<!ATTLIST legdetail %legdetail.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used to contain additional title declarations used in Prospective Consolidations. The element is used identically for both Acts and Regulations, and has its counterpart in Bills in element <billdetail>.

Example of Use:

```
<legdetail>
<title>The Dog and Cat Act 2005</title>
```

</legdetail>

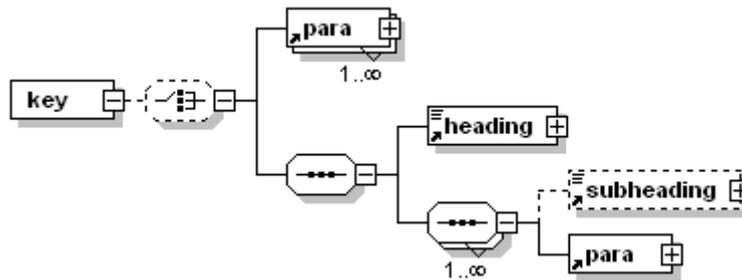
Children: title title.alt

Used in: act regulation

Attributes: id

8.26.3 Element key

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % key.model "(para+ | (heading, (subheading?, para)+))?" >
<!ENTITY % key.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT key %key.model; >
<!ATTLIST key %key.atts; >
  
```

Description:

This element is used for the “keys” at the front of a Bill Bar-2 and onwards.

Example of Use: (Key as reported from Select Committee)

```

<key><heading>Key to symbols used in reprinted bill</heading>
<subheading>As reported from a select committee</subheading>
<para>
<table>
<tgroup align = "center" cols = "1">
<colspec colname = "col1"/>
<tbody>
<row>
<entry><insertwords amend.level1 = "insert-unanimous">text inserted
unanimously</insertwords></entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry><insertwords amend.level1 = "insert-majority">text inserted by a majority</insertwords></entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry><struckoutwords amend.level1 = "struckout-unanimous">text deleted
unanimously</struckoutwords></entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry><struckoutwords amend.level1 = "struckout-majority">text deleted by a
majority</struckoutwords></entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>
</para>
</key>
  
```

Example of Use: (Key as reported for Select Committee)

```
<key><heading>Key to symbols</heading>
<subheading>As drafted for a select committee</subheading>
<para>
<table>
<tgroup align = "center" cols = "1">
<colspec colname = "col1"/>
<tbody>
<row>
<entry><insertwords amend.level1 = "insert-draft">text inserted</insertwords></entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry><struckoutwords amend.level1 = "struckout-draft">text deleted</struckoutwords></entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>
</para>
</key>
```

Children: heading subheading para

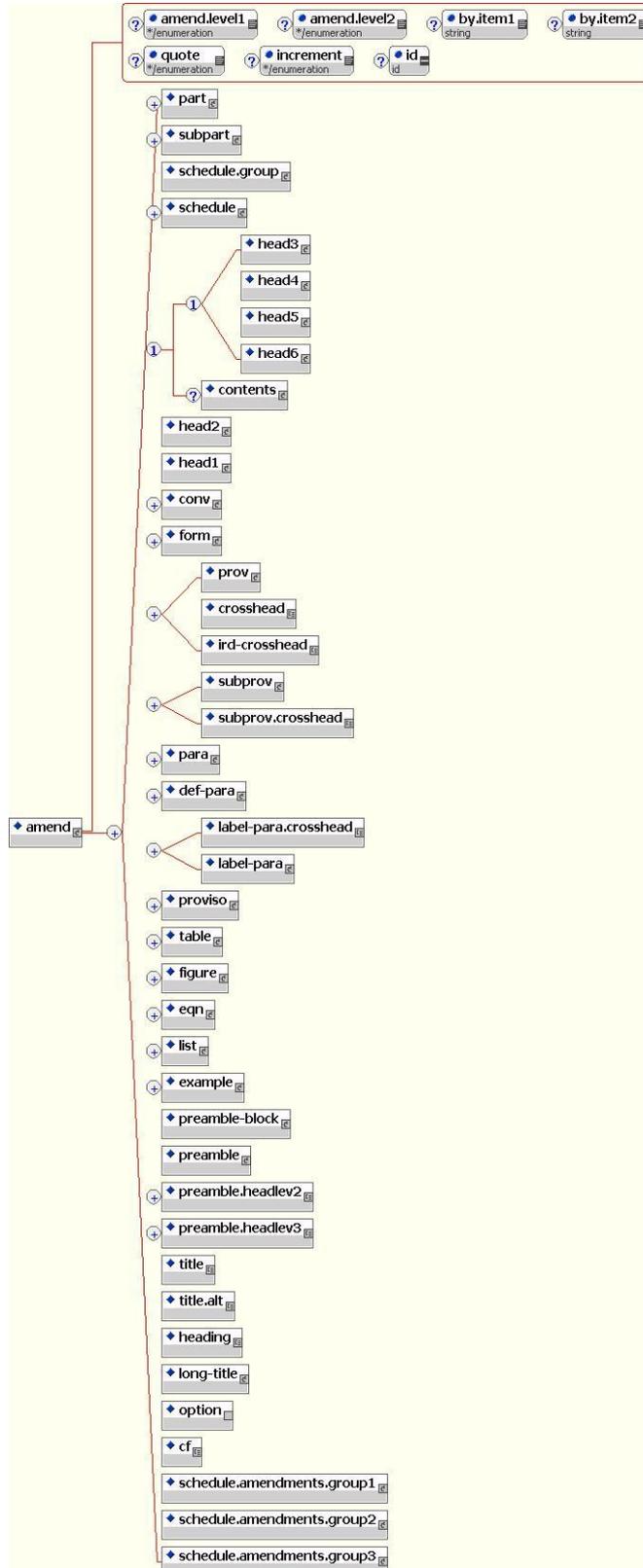
Used in: act bill regulation

Attributes: id

8.27. Elements Relating to Amending Legislation

8.27.1 Element amend

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amend.model "
    (part+ | subpart+
    | schedule.group | schedule+
    | ((head3 | head4 | head5 | head6), contents?)
    | head2 | head1
    | conv+ | form+
    | (prov | crosshead | ird-crosshead)+
    | (subprov | subprov.crosshead)+
    | para+ | def-para+
    | (label-para.crosshead | label-para)+
    | proviso+ | table+ | figure+ | eqn+ | list+ | example+
    | preamble-block | preamble
    | preamble.headlev2+ | preamble.headlev3+
    | title | title.alt | heading | long-title
    | option | cf
    | schedule.amendments.group1
    | schedule.amendments.group2
    | schedule.amendments.group3)+">

<!ENTITY % amend.atts " %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    increment      (1 | 2 | 3 ) #IMPLIED
    %id.att;">
<!ELEMENT amend %amend.model;>
<!ATTLIST amend %amend.atts ;>
```

Description:

This element is only used in amending legislation. It contains legislative structures that are to be inserted into the amended legislation, or which replace parts of the amended legislation.

The increment attribute enables the drafters to insert a single <label-para> element (as per a paragraph), the application then "increments" the indentation level to ensure correct formatting. The indent increment applies to all children of the <amend> or <instrument.amend> (See Section 7.6.11) element rather than to just label-para.

Technical Notes:

Quotation-marks are not included in the #PCDATA. See also element <follow-text> at section 8.30.3 .

See Glossary: Amending Legislation

Example of Use:

```
<amend>
<prov><label>MB 1A</label>
<prov.body><para><text>A provisional taxpayer must determine the amount of provisional tax payable
for&mdash;</text>
<label-para><label>a</label><para><text>The 2000-2001 income year by applying <citation>section MB
2AA</citation>; and</text></para></label-para>
</para>
</prov.body>
</prov>
</amend>
```

Children: part subpart schedule.group schedule head3 head4 head5 head6 contents head2 head1 conv form prov crosshead ird-crosshead subprov subprov.crosshead para def-para label-para.crosshead label-para proviso

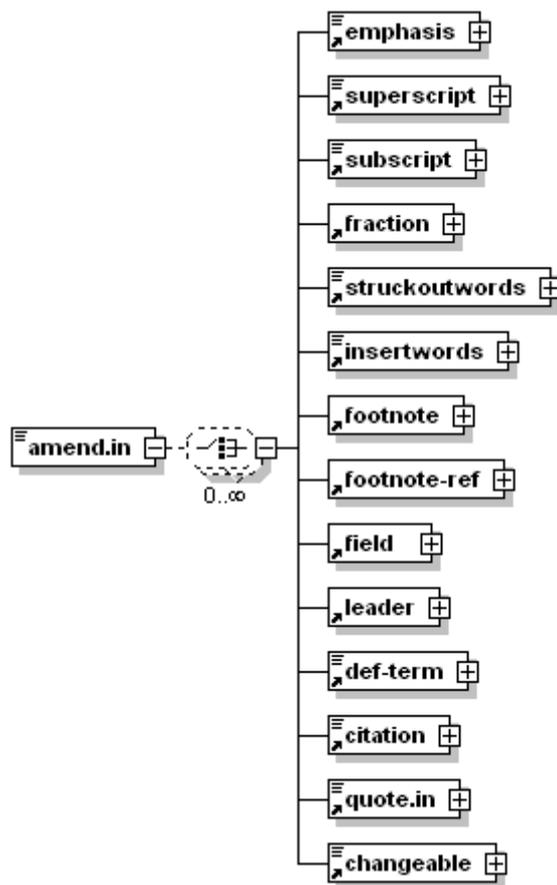
table figure eqn list preamble-block preamble preamble.headlev2
preamble.headlev3 title title.alt heading long-title option example cf

Used in: para proviso
instrument.amend (SOPs only)

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 increment quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.27.2 Element amend.in

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % amend.in.model "(%phrase;)*" >
<!ENTITY % amend.in.atts "%quote.att;
%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amend.in %amend.in.model; >
<!ATTLIST amend.in %amend.in.atts; >
  
```

Description:

This element is only used in amending legislation. It contains legislative inline structures which are to be inserted into the amended legislation.

Technical Notes:

Quotation-marks are not included in the text of the markup.

See Glossary: inline

Example of Use:

```
<para><text>The Short Title of the principal Act is consequentially amended by omitting the words
<amend.in>Matrimonial Property</amend.in>, and substituting the words <amend.in>Property
(Relationships)</amend.in>.</text></para>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
 footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in graphic.inline
 changeable (Bills, Sops and Draft Regulations only)

Used in: entry follow-text text

Attributes: quote id

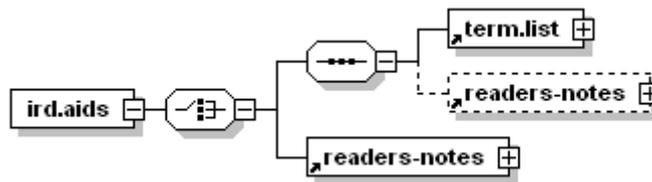
8.28. Elements Used by IRD

8.28.1 Element ird-crosshead

See <ird-crosshead> described as a heading related element at Section 8.16.2 .

8.28.2 Element ird.aids

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % ird.aids.model '((term.list, readers-notes?) |
readers-notes)" >
<!ENTITY % ird.aids.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT ird.aids %ird.aids.model; >
<!ATTLIST ird.aids %ird.aids.atts; >
```

Description:

A wrapper element used exclusively in the *Income Tax Act*, and Acts that amend the *Income Tax Act*, as drafted by IRD.

Example of Use:

```
<ird.aids>
<term.list><!--Defined in this Act: -->
<term href="">emergency call</term>
<term href="">employee</term>
<term href="">motor vehicle</term>
</term.list>
</ird.aids>
```

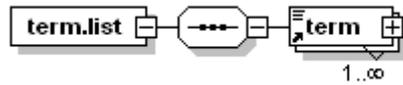
Children: term.list readers-notes

Used in: notes prov

Attributes: id

8.28.3 Element term.list

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % term.list.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements; | term)*">
<!ENTITY % term.list.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
                        %id.att; "
                        >
<!ELEMENT term.list %term.list.model;
<!ATTLIST term.list %term.list.atts;
```

Description:

List of defined terms as appearing in the *Income Tax Act* and in Bills/Acts Amending the Income Tax Act.

Technical Note:

The text “Defined in this Act: ” is generated automatically on output. Punctuation is also inserted automatically “, ” (comma and space).

The content model has been relaxed from its original "(term+)" to allow for use of Arbortext Dynamic Link Manager ("DLM"), whose XML Namespace (<http://www.arbortext.com/namespace/atidlm>) Arbortext Editor parses as processing instructions rather than markup belonging to a foreign namespace. I.e., the content model of element //term.list must allow #PCDATA or text content of DLM's "term" link elements will be invalid.

Example of Use: (full href not shown)

```
<term.list><!--Defined in this Act: -->
<term href="">emergency call</term><!--, -->
<term href="">employee</term><!--, -->
<term href="">motor vehicle</term>
</term.list>
```

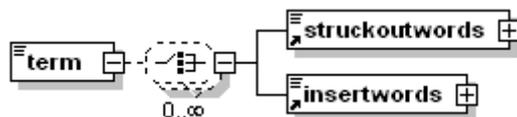
Children: term

Used in: ird.aids

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.28.4 Element term

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % term.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % term.atts "%href.att;
                    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
                    %id.att; "
                    >
<!ELEMENT term %term.model;
```

```
<!ATTLIST term %term.atts; >
```

Description:

A term being used as part of a paragraph (but not being defined). May in theory contain a link to a definition of the term. This element is also a child of element <term.list> for use in the *Income Tax Act*.

Example of Use:

```
<text>Repeal the definition of <term>matrimonial agreement</term> in <citation>section <extref>OB1</extref></citation> and substitute:</text>
```

Example of Use: In *Income Tax Act* (full href not shown)

```
<term.list><!--Defined in this Act: -->
<term href="">emergency call</term>
<term href="">employee</term>
<term href="">motor vehicle</term>
</term.list>
```

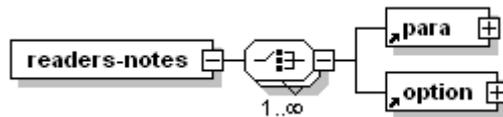
Children: struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: term.list

Attributes: href amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.28.5 Element readers-notes

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % readers-notes.model "(para | option)+" >
<ENTITY % readers-notes.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att;" >
<ELEMENT readers-notes %readers-notes.model; >
<!ATTLIST readers-notes %readers-notes.atts; >
```

Description:

Used for Reader’s Notes exclusively in the *Income Tax Act*, and Acts that amend the *Income Tax Act*.

Technical Note:

The heading “Reader’s Notes” is generated automatically on output.

Example of Use:

```
<readers-notes><!--Reader’s Notes-->
<para><text>The application of the...</text></para>
</readers-notes>
```

Children: para option

Used in: ird.aids

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.29. Administering Office

8.29.1 Element admin-office

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % admin-office.model "(#PCDATA | ministry)*" >
<!ENTITY % admin-office.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT admin-office %admin-office.model; >
<!ATTLIST admin-office %admin-office.atts; >
```

Description:

This element contains information about the government department or sector that administers the legislation in question.

The name of the administering department is inserted at the end of all public acts, but not private or local acts.

In reprints of Acts and Regulations, the administering department is placed in the Reprint Cover Note on page 1.

A very few items do not have an administering department, these include:

- *Parliamentary Superannuation Determination 1984 (SR 1984/95).*
- *Judicial Superannuation Determination 1996 (SR 1996/320).*
- Imperial Acts and Regulations.

See also element <cover.reprint.note> at section 8.42.4 .

Example of Use:

```
<admin-office>These regulations are administered in the <ministry>Department of Labour</ministry>.</admin-office>
```

Children: ministry

Used in: cover.reprint-note end promulgation

Attributes: id

8.29.2 Element ministry

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % ministry.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % ministry.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT ministry %ministry.model; >
```

```
<!ATTLIST ministry %ministry.atts; >
```

Description:

The name of the governmental department or sector that administers the legislation in question.

Example of Use:

```
<admin-office>This Act is administered in the <ministry>Ministry of Justice</ministry>.</admin-office>
```

Children: struckoutwords insertwords

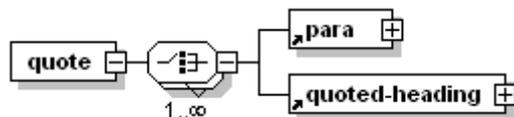
Used in: ministry

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.30. Quoted material

8.30.1 Element quote

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % quote.model "(para | quoted-heading)+">
<!ENTITY % quote.atts "%href.att;
    %lang.att;
    indented (yes | no) 'no'
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT quote %quote.model; >
<!ATTLIST quote %quote.atts; >
```

Description:

A quoted section, or “block” quote. See also element <follow-text> at section 8.30.3 .

Technical Notes:

Quotation marks are not included in the text of the markup.

The content of the <quote> element must be indented from the left context margin when @indented="yes".

Example of Use:

```
<text>Wallace J said (at p 238; p 65,375; p 6313):</text>
<quote>
<para><text>the Act is specifically designed to deal with those situations where a company has been
operating fraudulently or recklessly (s 4(a)) or, alternatively, where the ordinary law is inadequate (s
4(b)(iii)).</text></para>
</quote>
```

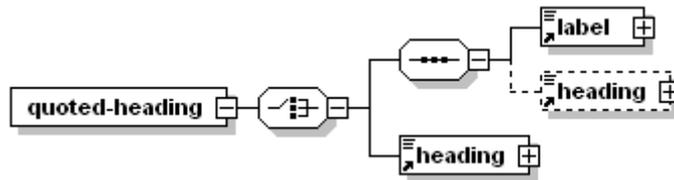
Children: para quoted-heading

Used in: para proviso
sop.para (SOPs only)

Attributes: href xml:lang indented amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2
 quote id
 deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.30.2 Element quoted-heading

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % quoted-heading.model '((label, heading?) | heading)' >
<!ENTITY % quoted-heading.atts "
    align (left | right | center) 'left'
    %lang.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT quoted-heading %quoted-heading.model; >
<!ATTLIST quoted-heading %quoted-heading.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used to represent headings within quote sections. The heading in question can be justified using the align attribute. Emphasis (bold, italic, underline, etc) can be set if required using the <emphasis> element in both <label> and <heading>.

Example of Use:

```
<quote>
...
<quoted-heading>
<label><emphasis style="bold">3</emphasis></label>
<heading><emphasis style="bold">Meetings</emphasis></heading>
</quoted-heading>
<para><text>...</text></para>
...
</quote>
```

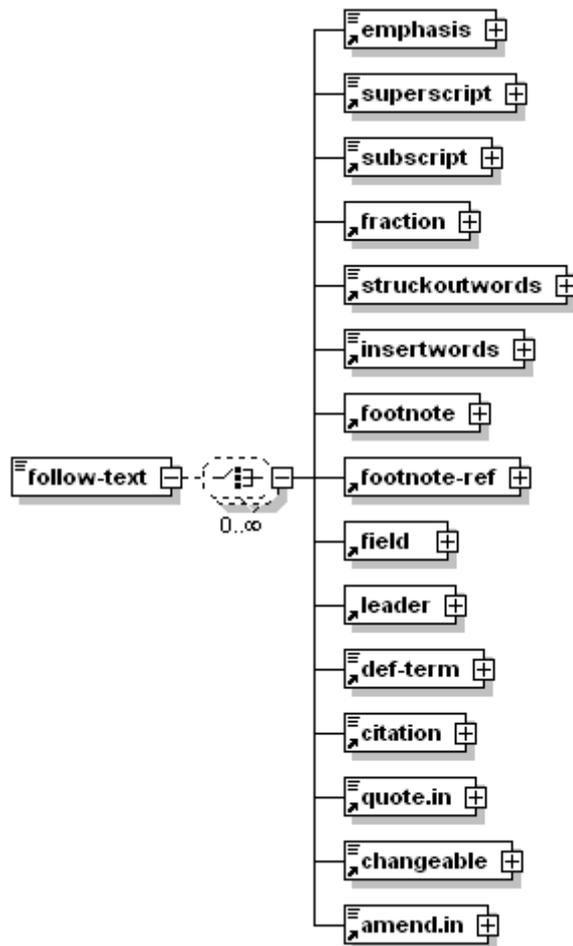
Children: label heading

Used in: quote

Attributes: align xml:lang amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
 deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.30.3 Element follow-text

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % follow-text.model "(%phrase; | amend.in)*)" >
<!ENTITY % follow-text.atts "
    space-before (yes | no) 'no'
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT follow-text %follow-text.model; >
<!ATTLIST follow-text %follow-text.atts; >
```

Description:

Text-based information following a block quotation, where the text in question is seen to follow on from the block quotation (or an <amend> block) rather than becoming a separate section.

When @space-before="yes" the content of the element is rendered on a new line. When @space-before="no" no new line is created for the content of the element. The content follows on from the last element.

Example of Use:

```
<quote>
<para><text>Accordingly, just as it is appropriate to emphasise the importance of timely disclosure ... to
assess the probable outcome.</text></para>
```

</quote>
 <follow-text space-before="yes">(vol 1, para 3.3, p 7)</follow-text>

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
 footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in amend.in
 graphic.inline

changeable (Bills, SOPs and Draft Regulations)

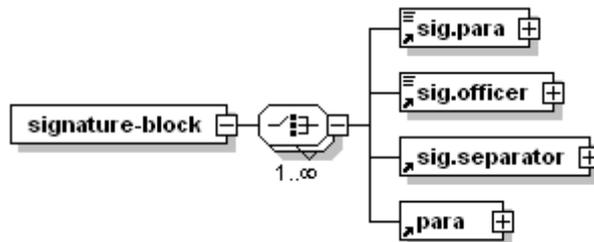
Used in: para proviso
 instrument.amend sop.para (SOPs only)

Attributes: space-before amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
 deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.31. Signature Block and assent-block

8.31.1 Element signature-block

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

    <!ENTITY % signature-block.model "(sig.para | sig.officer |
        sig.separator | para)+" >
    <!ENTITY % signature-block.atts "type NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
        %id.att; " >
    <!ELEMENT signature-block %signature-block.model; >
    <!ATTLIST signature-block %signature-block.atts; >
  
```

Description:

The Signature Block is used to indicate a section where people must sign and (in most cases) the names of the signatories are indicated. Signature block appears on the signature copy of a Regulation. Statute copies and reprints of Regulations retain a signature-block at the end, but this is a reduced block showing for example only the name of the Clerk of the Executive Council.

The type attribute identifies types 1, 2, 3 etc that can be used to identify the particular signature block types that occur in regulations

A convention may sometimes have a signature block.

Finally, signature blocks may also be useful for the markup of forms, see element <form.body> at section 8.22.2 .

See also element <assent-block>.

Technical Note:

The Signature Block may also be structured as a table (inside element <para>).

Where more vertical spacing is required, the <brk/> element can be used or empty <sig.para> elements.

Example of Use: Lotto Amendment Rules 2002

```
<signature-block>
<sig.para>Dated at Wellington this 18th day of June 2002</sig.para>
<sig.para></sig.para>
<sig.para></sig.para>
<sig.para>The Common Seal of the New Zealand Lotteries Commission was, pursuant to a resolution of the
Commission affixed in the presence of:</sig.para>
<sig.para></sig.para>
<sig.para></sig.para>
<sig.para>Kerry Marshall,<leader fill="space"/>[L.S]</sig.para>
<sig.para>Presiding Member,</sig.para>
</signature-block>
```

Example of Use: Misuse of Drugs Regulations

```
<signature-block>
<sig.para align="right">Diane Morcom,<field fill-length="7" fill="underline"/></sig.para>
<sig.para align="right">Clerk of the Executive Council.</sig.para>
</signature-block>
```

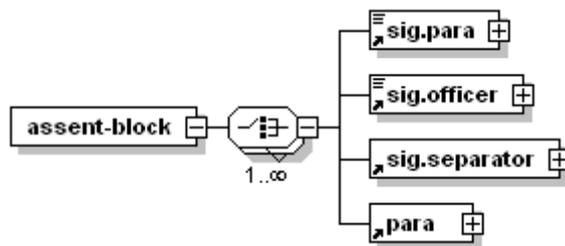
Children: para sig.para sig.officer sig.separator

Used in: conv.end form.body skeleton.reg.end
end (Regs only)

Attributes: type id

8.31.2 Element assent-block

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % assent-block.model "%signature-block.model;" >
<!ENTITY % assent-block.atts "type (gg | admin | queen) 'gg'
%id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT assent-block %assent-block.model; >
<!ATTLIST assent-block %assent-block.atts; >
```

Description:

This is used to indicate a section where people must sign and (in most cases) the names of the signatories are indicated. Signature block appears on the assent copy of a Bill/Act.

See also element <signature-block>.

Technical Note:

The Assent Block may also be structured as a table (inside element <para>).

Example of Use: (gg type)

```
<assent-block type="gg">
  <sig.para align="left">Examined and certified:</sig.para>
  <sig.officer align="center">Clerk of the House of Representatives</sig.officer>
  <sig.separator/>
  <sig.para align="justify">In the name and on behalf of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth the Second I
  hereby assent to this Act this<field fill="space" fill-length="20"/>day of<field fill="space" fill-
  length="20"/>20</sig.para>
  <sig.officer align="right">Governor-General.</sig.officer>
</assent-block>
```

The gg type of Assent Block is the most common, though other types may be used – as illustrated in the following example of the admin type.

Example of Use: (admin type)

```
<assent-block type="admin">
  <sig.para align="left">
    <emphasis style="italic">Examined and certified</emphasis>
  </sig.para>
  <sig.officer align="center">
    <emphasis style="italic">Clerk of the House of Representatives</emphasis>
  </sig.officer>
  <sig.separator/>
  <sig.para align="left">
    <emphasis style="italic">In the name and on behalf of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth
    the second I hereby assent to this Act this<field fill-length="14" fill="space"/>day
    of<field fill-length="14" fill="underline"/>2005</emphasis>
  </sig.para>
  <sig.officer align="right">
    <emphasis style="italic">Administrator of the Government.</emphasis>
  </sig.officer>
</assent-block>
```

Children: para sig.para sig.officer sig.separator

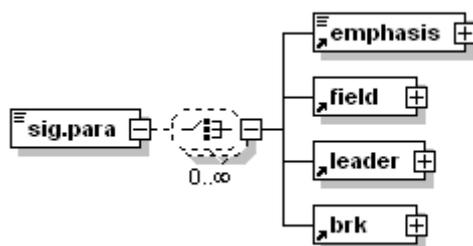
Used in: cover (Act only)

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
type	Values (gg admin queen). Default “gg”. This attribute shows the type of Assent Block. The “queen” type is rarely used. gg – assented by the Govenner-General. admin – assented by the Administrator of the Government queen – assented by the queen.
id	

8.31.3 Element sig.para

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sig.para.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements; | emphasis | field |
    leader | brk)*"
    >
<!ENTITY % sig.para.atts "
    align (left | right | center | justify) 'left'
    %id.att;"
    >
<!ELEMENT sig.para %sig.para.model;
    >
<!ATTLIST sig.para %sig.para.atts;
    >
```

Description:

A paragraph in a signature block. This is a simplified paragraph model allowing only sub-elements <emphasis>, <field>, <leader> and <brk/>.

Example of Use: Assent

```
<sig.para align="left"><emphasis style="italic">In the name and on behalf of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth
the second I hereby assent to this Act this<field fill-length="15" fill="space"/>day
of<field fill-length="15" fill="underline"/>2005</emphasis></sig.para>
```

Example of Use: Form 2, Schedule 1, Misuse of Drugs Regulations 1977 (SR 1977/37)

```
<signature-block>
<sig.para>For the month of <field fill="dot" fill-length="10"/> 19 <field fill="dot" fill-
length="5"/></sig.para>
<sig.para space-before="2" space-after="2">By <field fill="dot" fill-length="50"/> <leader fill="space"/>
Page No <field fill="dot"
fill-length="10"/></sig.para>
<sig.para>(Name and address of supplier)</sig.para>
<sig.para>Total number of pages <field fill="dot" fill-length="20"/></sig.para>
</signature-block>
```

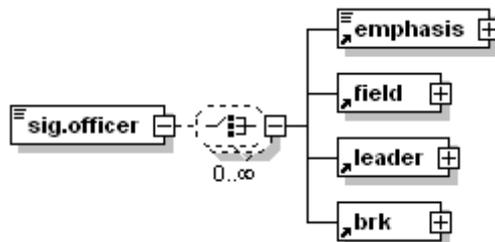
Children: emphasis field leader brk

Used in: assent-block signature-block

Attributes: align id

8.31.4 Element sig.officer

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sig.para.model "(#PCDATA | emphasis | field | leader
    | brk)*"
    >
<!ENTITY % sig.para.atts "
    align (left | right | center | justify) 'left'
    %id.att;"
    >
<!ELEMENT sig.officer %sig.para.model;
    >
<!ATTLIST sig.officer %sig.para.atts;
    >
```

Description:

This element has the same model as element <sig.para>, see Section 8.31.3 . It is used to identify the office of the signing office. This element is used in signature copies of Acts, but it is not used in a reprinted Regulation. In a reprinted regulation <sig.para> is used.

Example of Use:

```
<sig.officer align="center"><emphasis style="italic">Clerk of the House of
Representatives</emphasis></sig.officer>
```

Children: emphasis field leader brk

Used in: assent-block signature-block

Attributes: align id

8.31.5 Element sig.separator

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % sig.separator.model "EMPTY" >
<!ENTITY % sig.separator.atts "%id.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT sig.separator %sig.separator.model; >
<!ATTLIST sig.separator %sig.separator.atts; >
```

Description:

This is a separator inside a signature block. In the assent copy of an Act it is used to mark the required position of a short line centred on the page.

Example of Use:

```
<signature-block>
<sig.para align="left"><emphasis style="italic">Examined and certified</emphasis></sig.para>
<sig.officer align="center"><emphasis style="italic">Clerk of the House of
Representatives</emphasis></sig.officer>
<sig.separator/>
<sig.para align="left"><emphasis style="italic">In the name and on behalf of Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth
the second I hereby assent to this Act this<field fill-length="14" fill="space"/>day of<field fill-length="14"
fill="underline"/> 2005</emphasis></sig.para>
<sig.officer align="right"><emphasis style="italic">Administrator of the
Government.</emphasis></sig.officer>
</signature-block>
```

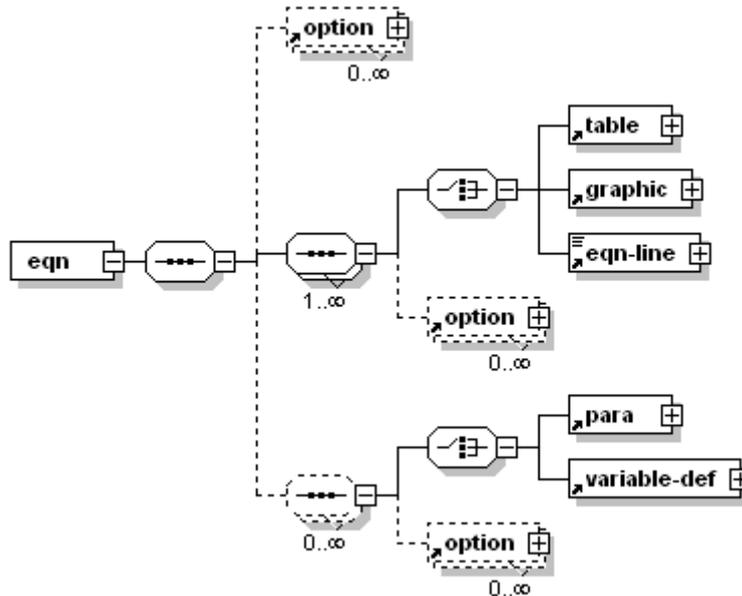
Used in: assent-block signature-block

Attributes: id

8.32. Equations

8.32.1 Element eqn

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % eqn.model "( option*,
    ((table | graphic | eqn-line), option*+),
    ((para | variable-def), option*)*)">
<!ENTITY % eqn.atts "%id.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT eqn %eqn.model; >
<!ATTLIST eqn %eqn.atts; >
```

Description:

An equation or formula, expressed as either a table, a graphic or as text.

Example of Use: Example with paragraphs

```
<eqn>
<eqn-line>(a &minus; b) &times; c</eqn-line>
<para><text>where&mdash;</text>
<label-para><label>a</label>
<para><text>is the relevant amount specified in <citation>subclause <intref>(1)(b)(i)</intref> or
<intref>(ii)</intref></citation></text></para></label-para>
<label-para><label>b</label><para><text>is the amount of the person&rsquo;s earnings as an employee
for the income year</text></para>
</label-para>
<label-para><label>c</label>
<para><text>is the earner premium (calculated for each $100) specified in <citation>regulation
<intref>4(1)</intref></citation>.</text></para>
</label-para>
</para>
</eqn>
```

Example of use: Example with graphic

```
<eqn>
<graphic fileref="ACT-NZL-PUB.1999-143.11">
<graphic-text>
```

```

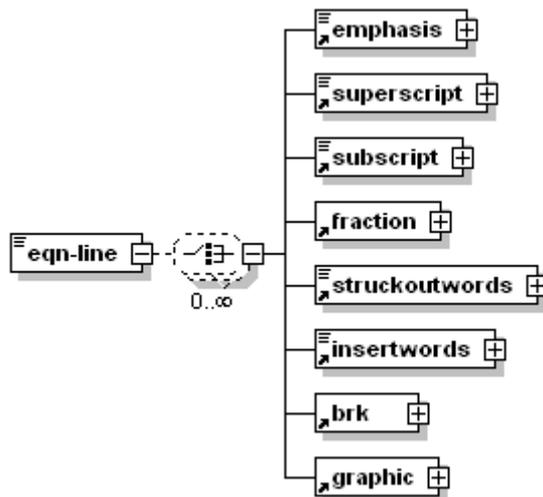
<para><text>a x b</text></para>
<para><text>c</text></para>
</graphic-text>
</graphic>
<para><text>where&mdash;</text>
<label-para><label>a</label>
<para><text>is the residual income ...</text></para>
</label-para>
<label-para><label>b</label>
<para><text>is the number of days in ...</text></para>
</label-para>
<label-para><label>c</label>
<para><text>is the number of days in ...</text></para>
</label-para>
</para>
</eqn>

```

- Children:** option table graphic eqn-line para variable-def
- Used in:** amend para proviso
instrument.amend sop.para (Sop only)
- Attributes:** id amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.32.2 Element eqn-line

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % eqn-line.model "(%basic-phrase; | brk | graphic)*" >
<!ENTITY % eqn-line.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.att;
%id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT eqn-line %eqn-line.model; >
<!ATTLIST eqn-line %eqn-line.atts; >

```

Description:

Simple textual content in an equation.

Example of Use:

```

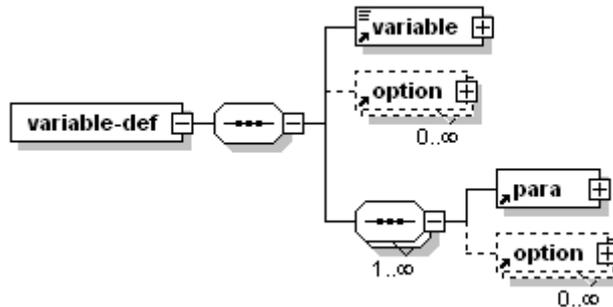
<eqn><eqn-line>a &times; b = c</eqn-line></eqn>

```

- Children:** emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords brk graphic
- Used in:** eqn
- Attributes:** amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.32.3 Element variable-def

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % variable-def.model "(variable, option*, (para, option*)+ )">
<!ENTITY % variable-def.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.atts; " >
<!ELEMENT variable-def %variable-def.model; >
<!ATTLIST variable-def %variable-def.atts; >
```

Description:

An alternative to the use of label-para for defining variables in equations. This element is useful in particular where the variable must be encoded as a graphic (element <label> in <label-para> does not allow graphics).

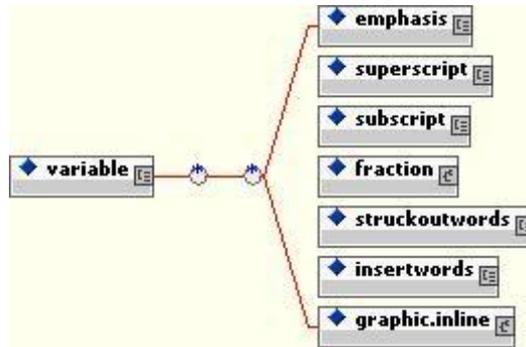
Example of Use:

```
<eqn>
<eqn-line>a &times; b = c</eqn-line>
<para><text>where&mdash;</text></para>
<variable-def><variable>a</variable>
<para><text>is the residual income tax ...</text></para>
</variable-def>
<variable-def><variable>b</variable>
<para><text>is the number of days in ...</text></para>
</variable-def>
<variable-def><variable>c</variable>
<para><text>is the number of days in ...</text></para>
</variable-def>
</eqn>
```

- Children:** variable para option
- Used in:** eqn
- Attributes:** amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.32.4 Element variable

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % variable.model "(%basic-phrase; | graphic.inline)*" >
<!ENTITY % variable.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT variable %variable.model; >
<!ATTLIST variable %variable.atts; >
```

Description:

An alternative to the use of label-para for defining variables in equations. Is useful in particular where the variable must be encoded as a graphic (element <label> in <label-para> does not allow graphics).

Example of Use:

```
<variable-def>
<variable><graphic id="xxx" fileref="yyy"></graphic></variable>
<para><text>is the residual income tax ...</text></para>
</variable-def>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords graphic.inline

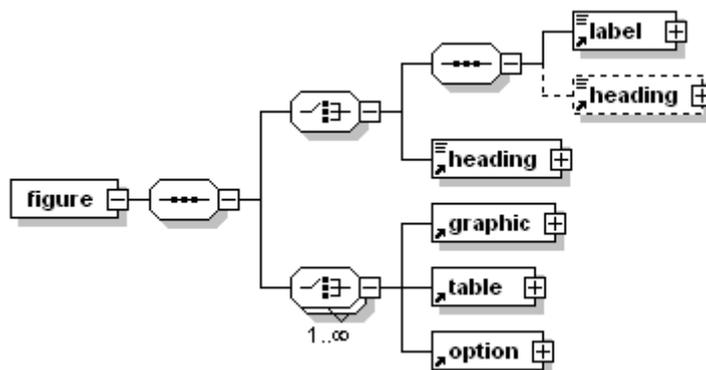
Used in: variable-def

Attributes: id

8.33. Figures and Graphics

8.33.1 Element figure

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % figure.model "(((label, heading?) | heading),
    (graphic | table | option)+)" >
<!ENTITY % figure.atts "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT figure %figure.model; >
<!ATTLIST figure %figure.atts; >
```

Description:

Figures usually consist of tables, graphics or other nontextual content, to which references are made in the main text of the document (for example “see figure 1”).

Example of Use:

```
<figure>
<label>Figure 1a</label>
<graphic id="xxx" fileref="xxx" alt-text="figure 1a">
<graphic-text>
<para><text>a x b</text></para>
<para><text>c</text></para>
</graphic-text>
</graphic>
</figure>
```

Children: label heading graphic table option

Used in: amend para proviso
instrument.amend sop.para (SOP only)

Attributes: id xml:lang amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.33.2 Element graphic

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % graphic.model "(graphic-text?)" >
<!ENTITY % graphic.atts "
    %id.att;
    %lang.att;
    %dctmlinkatts;
    fileref CDATA #REQUIRED
    width CDATA #IMPLIED
    height CDATA #IMPLIED
    scaletofit (1|0) '0'
    orientation (portrait | landscape) #IMPLIED
    border (yes | no) 'no'
    alt-text CDATA #IMPLIED
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
">
<!ELEMENT graphic %graphic.model; >
<!ATTLIST graphic %graphic.atts; >
```

Description:

A graphic.

Example of Use:

```
<figure>
<label>Figure 1a</label>
<graphic id="xxx" fileref="xxx" alt-text="figure 1a">
<graphic-text>
<para><text>a x b</text></para>
<para><text>c</text></para>
</graphic-text>
</graphic>
</figure>
```

Children: graphic-text

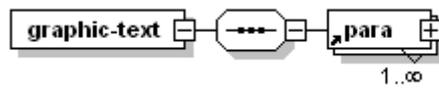
Used in: eqn eqn-line figure para proviso variable
sop.para (SOP only)

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
id	Each graphic must have a unique ID. See <i>ID Schema</i> .
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ). See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
xmlns:dctm dctm:link_obj_id dctm:link_obj_status dctm:link_version_label	Documentum Link attributes. See section 8.2 for details
fileref	A unique file reference (file name), but does not include the file extension.
width	reproWidth in mm
height	reproDepth in mm
scaletofit	Defaults to '0'. Use '1' if image is to be scaled to fit. In the Authoring Tool, for the reproWidth and reproDepth attributes to work you must also assign an attribute to 'scaleToFit' in the DCF file and this attribute must have a value of '1' in the document for re-sizing to be enabled.
orientation	Portrait or landscape orientation.
border	Border is allowed. This attribute is not currently used, but is provided for future reference.
alt-text	Used to specify Alt-Text that can be displayed on the web.
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.
quote	See section 8.8.
deletion-status	Values Act: (not-in-force repealed expired spent) Values Reg: (not-in-force revoked expired spent) Bill: @deletion-status not used SOP: @deletion-status not used

8.33.3 Element graphic-text

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % graphic-text.model "(para+)" >
<!ENTITY % graphic-text.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT graphic-text %graphic-text.model; >
<!ATTLIST graphic-text %graphic-text.atts; >
```

Description:

If the graphic represents textual contents (for example, a form), the rough textual content of the graphic can be stored in this element for the purposes of searching and indexing.

This element is *not* to be used as a brief description of the graphic in question. Brief description information would be stored in the @alt-text attribute of element <graphic>.

Example of Use:

```
<graphic id="xxx" fileref="xxx" alt-text="figure 1a">
<graphic-text>
<para><text>a x b</text></para>
<para><text>c</text></para>
</graphic-text>
</graphic>
```

Children: para

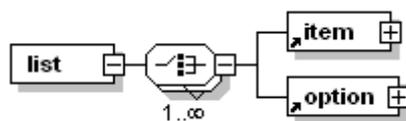
Used in: graphic

Attributes: id

8.34. Lists

8.34.1 Element list

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % list.model "(item | option)+ " >
<!ENTITY % list.atts "
    %lang.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT list %list.model; >
<!ATTLIST list %list.atts; >
```

Description:

A numeric, alpha, or unordered list (bullet, hyphen), or list with no symbol. The symbol used is determined by the contents of the <label> in element <item>. A list would not

normally be used in the body of legislation - its use is almost exclusively limited to commentaries, reprint notes, and possibly explanatory notes.

Technical Note:

Lists are used only rarely and should not be over-used. For this reason, entering list structures is a little labour intensive as each label must be entered explicitly.

Example of Use: numeric list

```
<list>
<item>
  <label>1</label>
  <para><text>General</text></para>
</item>
<item>
  <label>2</label>
  <para><text>Status of reprints</text></para>
</item>
<item>
  <label>3</label>
  <para><text>How reprints are prepared</text></para>
</item>
<item>
  <label>4</label>
  <para><text>Changes made under section 17C of the
    Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989</text></para>
</item>
<item>
  <label>5</label>
  <para><text>List of amendments incorporated in
    this reprint (most recent first)</text></para>
</item>
</list>
```

Example of Use: bullet list (nested)

```
<para><text>The following ... in the preparation of this reprint:</text>
<list>
<item>
  <label>&bull;</label>
  <para><text>the enacting words have been omitted</text></para>
</item>
<item>
  <label>&bull;</label>
  <para><text>provisions that have been...</text></para>
</item>
<item>
  <label>&bull;</label>
  <para><text>footnotes are included to indicate where&mdash;</text>
  <list>
  <item>
    <label>&bull;</label>
    <para><text>words, phrases,...</text></para>
  </item>
  <item>
    <label>&bull;</label>
    <para><text>references in a...</text></para>
  </item>
  </list>
</para>
</item>
</list>
```

```

<label>&bull;</label>
<para><text>any term used...</text></para>
</item>
<item>
<label>&bull;</label>
<para><text>references in a reprinted...</text></para>
</item>
...
</list>
</para>

```

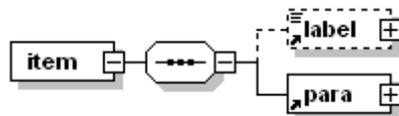
Children: item option

Used in: amend para proviso
instrument.amend sop.para (SOP only)

Attributes: xml:lang amend.level1 mend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.34.2 Element item

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % item.model "(label?, para)" >
<ENTITY % item.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.att; " >
<ELEMENT item %item.model; >
<!ATTLIST item %item.atts; >

```

Description:

An item in an ordered or unordered list. See also element <list> at 8.34.

Example of Use: (no label)

```

<list>
<item>
<para><text>1952, No 51&mdash;The <citation><leg-title>Property Law Act 1952</leg-title>: Section
<extref>133</extref>. (Reprinted 1970, Vol 3, p 2290)</citation></text></para>
</item>
...
</list>

```

Children: label para

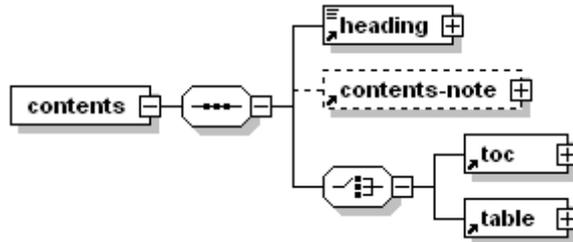
Used in: list

Attributes: amend.level1 mend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.35. Table of Contents

8.35.1 Element Contents

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % contents.model "(heading, contents-note?, (toc | table))" >
<!ENTITY % contents.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT contents %contents.model; >
<!ATTLIST contents %contents.atts; >
  
```

Description:

The main wrapper for the Table of Contents (TOC).

Technical Notes:

The TOC is generated automatically. The <toc/> element is a placeholder for the TOC. See section 8.35.3 .

Contents notes are rare, and occur typically in a convention or treaty. See section 8.35.2 .

Element <table> is also allowed instead of element <toc/>. For an example of this usage, see element <pageref> at section 0.

Example of Use: (standard)

```

<contents><heading>Contents</heading>
<toc/>
</contents>
  
```

Children: heading contents-note toc table

Used in (Act): act amend conv conv.body head1 head2 part schedule schedule.forms schedule.misc subpart

Used in (Reg): amend conv conv.body head1 head2 part regulation schedule schedule.forms schedule.misc subpart

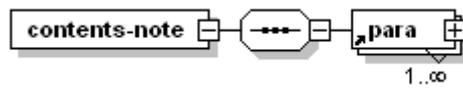
Used in (SOP): amend conv conv.body head1 head2 instrument.amend part schedule schedule.forms schedule.misc subpart

Used in (Bill): amend bill conv conv.body head1 head2 part schedule schedule.forms schedule.misc subpart

Attributes: id

8.35.2 Element contents-note

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % contents-note.model "(para+)" >
<!ENTITY % contents-note.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT contents-note %contents-note.model; >
<!ATTLIST contents-note %contents-note.atts; >
  
```

Description:

Used rarely in schedules containing treaties, conventions, or agreements drafted outside PCO. This element provides for a note relating to the TOC.

Example of Use: *Pitcairn Trials Act 2002*

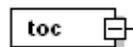
```

<contents><heading>Contents</heading>
<contents-note>
<para><text><emph style="italic">This table is not part of the Agreement and is included for
convenience</emph></text></para>
</contents-note>
<toc columns="1" page.no="yes"/>
</contents>
  
```

- Children:** para
- Used in:** contents
- Attributes:** id

8.35.3 Element toc

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % toc.model "EMPTY" >
<!ENTITY % toc.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT toc %toc.model; >
<!ATTLIST toc %toc.atts; >
  
```

Description:

Table of Contents element. This is an empty element used as a place-holder for the automatic generation of the TOC.

From 1 January 2006, legislation will use TOCs that are single column, with page numbers, and with a heading for the page numbers column. All legislation will use this form of TOC, whether drafted by PCO, IRD, or OC, and wherever the TOC appears, whether at the front, in a subpart, or in a schedule.

Technical Notes:

The TOC is generated automatically at the point of output for either print or web. The TOC normally includes headings for each of Part, Subpart, cross-headings, forms and schedule.

Headings included in the <amend> element are also reproduced in the TOC with additional indentation. For example if the amendment inserts a Part with provisions, then the part and provision headings are included in the TOC. However, if the amendment inserts only a Part heading, then the Part heading does not appear in the TOC. Since this behaviour is not consistent it must be controlled by the inclusion of a toc attribute with yes/no values (default 'yes') that has been added to each of elements <part>, <subpart>, <form> and <schedule>.

The addition of the toc attribute may also assist in controlling the production of tocs inside schedules.

The TOC element is used in elements <act>, <regulation>, <bill>, <part>, <subpart> and <schedule>. The TOC element also appears in treaties and conventions.

Example of Use: (standard)

```
<contents><heading>Contents</heading>
<toc/>
</contents>
```

Example of Use: (non-standard)

```
<contents><heading>Contents</heading>
<contents-note>
<para><text>[<emphasis style="italic">This table is not part of the Agreement and is included for
convenience</emphasis>]</text></para>
<contents-note>
<toc/>
</contents>
```

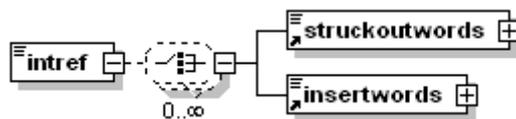
Used in: contents

Attributes: id

8.36. Cross References

8.36.1 Element intref

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % intref.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % intref.atts "%href.att;
                    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
                    %id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT intref %intref.model; >
<!ATTLIST intref %intref.atts; >
```

Description:

A link to an element in the current item of New Zealand legislation. The link address is stored in the href attribute.

Technical Notes:

During component drafting, a link from within one Part to another Part, the link source and target, while in the same item of legislation, may be in separate files.

Example of Use:

```
<text>See <citation>
<intref href="ACT-NZL-PUB.1976-166.BDY.PT.9">Part 9</intref> of this Act</citation> as to the...
```

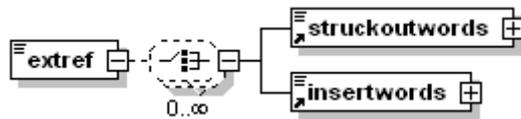
Children: struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: citation commencement

Attributes: href amend.level1 mend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.36.2 Element extref

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % extref.model "(#PCDATA | %change.tracked.elements;)*" >
<!ENTITY % extref.atts "%href.att;
%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att;
document CDATA #IMPLIED" >
<!ELEMENT extref %extref.model; >
<!ATTLIST extref %extref.atts; >
```

Description:

A link to an element in another item of New Zealand legislation. The link address is stored in the href attribute.

Example of Use:

```
<text>See <citation>
<extref href="ACT-NZL-PUB.1976-166.BDY.PT.9">Part 9</extref> of the <leg-title>Acts and Regulations
Publication Act 1989</leg-title></citation> and...
```

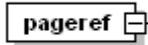
Children: struckoutwords insertwords

Used in: citation commencement

Attributes: href amend.level1 mend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote document id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.36.3 Element pageref

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % pageref.model "EMPTY" >
<!ENTITY % pageref.atts "%href.att;
%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT pageref %pageref.model; >
<!ATTLIST pageref %pageref.atts; >
```

Description:

A cross-reference element used to generate, at output, the page number of the target structure. The use of this element is restricted exclusively to its use in a table cell, and should be used only in the context of a “manual” Table of Contents in a Treaty or convention. See also the definition of %paracon; at section 8.12.3 .

Page numbers may also be generated in a Table of Contents generated at element <toc/>, see section 8.35.

Example of Use: (Not actual column widths)

```
<contents><heading>Contents</heading>
<contents-note>
<para><text>[<emphasis style="italic">This table is not part of the Agreement and is included for
convenience</emphasis>]</text></para>
<contents-note>
<table frame="none">
<tgroup cols="3">
<colspec colname="col1" colwidth="1*" align="right"/>
<colspec colname="col2" colwidth="10*" align="left"/>
<colspec colname="col3" colwidth="1*" align="right"/>
<thead valign="top">
<row>
<entry valign="top" align="center"><emphasis style="bold">Article
No</emphasis></entry>
<entry></entry>
<entry valign="top" align="center"><emphasis style="bold">Page
No</emphasis></entry>
</row>
</thead>
<tbody valign="bottom">
<row>
<entry>1</entry>
<entry>Definitions</entry>
<entry><pageref href="...END.SCHG.SCH.1.S1"/></entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>2</entry>
<entry>Purpose and Scope of the Agreement</entry>
<entry><pageref href="...END.SCHG.SCH.1.S2"/></entry>
</row>
...
</tbody>
</tgroup>
```

</table>
</contents>

Used by: entry

Attributes: href id

8.37. Footnotes

8.37.1 Element footnote

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % footnote.model "(para | option)+">
<!ENTITY % footnote.atts "%id.att;
                        %lang.att;
                        %standard-statuses.meta.att;" >
<!ELEMENT footnote %footnote.model; >
<!ATTLIST footnote %footnote.atts; >
```

Description:

This element indicates a section of information to be placed in a footnote. This footnote can be referenced in the text a second or third time via the <footnote-ref> element.

Note that the practice of using footnotes in the title provisions of Bills and Regulations has been discontinued as at late 2005.

Example of Use:

```
...to be performed as well on the parte and bihalfe of the said leases and grauntis <footnote id="ACT-NZL-
PUB.1540-034:BDY-S.1-FTNT..1">
<para><text>lessees O.</text></para>
</footnote>
```

Example of Use:

```
<footnote id="XXXX.FTNT.23"><para><text>Term not used in the Insolvency Act
1967</text></para></footnote>
```

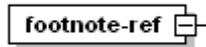
Children: para option

Used in: amend.in crosshead description emphasis entry explnote.crosshead
explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 follow-text
heading insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead
preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords
subheading subprov.crosshead text
proclamation (Reg only)

Attributes: id xml:lang amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.37.2 Element footnote-ref

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % footnote-ref.model "EMPTY" >
<!ENTITY % footnote-ref.atts "%href.att;
%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT footnote-ref %footnote-ref.model; >
<!ATTLIST footnote-ref %footnote-ref.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used, in a passage of text, to link to a footnote already created by the footnote element. See also element <footnote>.

Example of Use:

```
...Paid fee to counsel
<footnote id="REG-NZL-PUB.1982-167:END-SCH.II-CONV-SCH.B-PT.I-TBL..180-FTNT..231">
<para><text>One Counsel only is allowed. Retainer fee not allowed.</text></para>
</footnote>
...
...Paid Counsel's fee
<footnote-ref href="REG-NZL-PUB.1982-167:END-SCH.II-CONV-SCH.B-PT.I-TBL..180-FTNT..231"/>
...
```

Used in: amend.in crosshead description emphasis entry explnote.crosshead
explnote.ird-crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 follow-text
heading insertwords ird-crosshead issue-authority label-para.crosshead
preamble.headlev2 preamble.headlev3 quote.in struckoutwords
subheading subprov.crosshead text
proclamation (Reg only)

Attributes: href xml:lang amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote id
deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.38. Notes elements

8.38.1 Element notes

Diagram: (Bill)

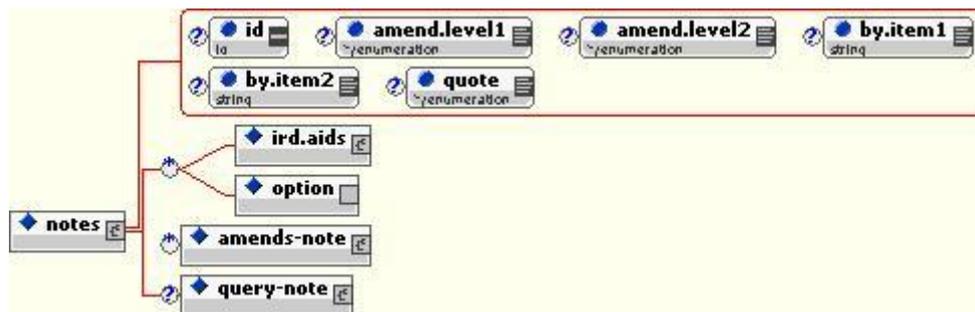
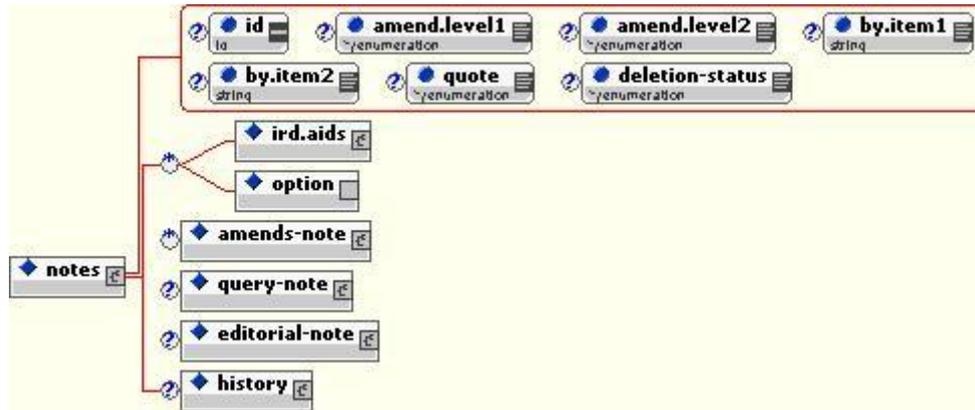


Diagram: (Act)



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % notes.model '((ird.aids | option)* ,
    amends-note*, query-note?, editorial-note?, history?)">
<!ENTITY % notes.atts "%id.att;
    %standard-statuses.meta.atts;" >
<!ELEMENT notes %notes.model; >
<!ATTLIST notes %notes.atts; >
```

Description:

A container element for different types of notes such editorial and history notes.

Example of Use:

```
<notes>
<history>
<history-note>The short title of this Act was <amending-operation>amended</amending-operation>, as
from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision href="ACT-NZL-
PUB.2001-5.BDY.S.5.SS.2">5(2)</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships)
Amendment Act 2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5) <amending-instruction>by substituting the words
<quote.in>Property (Relationships)</quote.in> for the words <quote.in>Matrimonial
Property</quote.in></amending-instruction>.</history-note>
<editorial-note>
<para><text>...</text></para></editorial-note>
</history>
</notes>
```

Children: ird.aids option query-note
 editorial-note history amends-note (Acts and Regs only)

Used in (Act): body conv conv.body cover def-para form head1 head2 label-para long-title
 para part preamble-block prov schedule schedule.forms schedule.misc
 schedule.provisions subpart subprov

Used in (Reg): body conv conv.body cover def-para form head1 head2 label-para long-
 title para part preamble-block prov schedule schedule.forms schedule.misc
 schedule.provisions subpart subprov

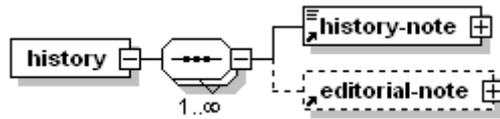
Used in (Bill): body conv conv.body def-para form head1 head2 label-para long-title para
 part preamble-block prov schedule schedule.forms schedule.misc
 schedule.provisions subpart subprov

Used in (SOP): conv conv.body def-para form head1 head2 label-para long-title para part
 preamble-block prov schedule schedule.forms schedule.misc
 schedule.provisions sop.para subpart subprov

Attributes: id xml:lang amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 quote deletion-status (Acts and Regs only)

8.38.2 Element history

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % history.model "(history-note, editorial-note?)+">
<!ENTITY % history.atts "%id.att;" >
<ELEMENT history %history.model; >
<!ATTLIST history %history.atts; >
```

Description:

This element models information about previous versions of the current legislation or about events in the history of the legislation.

See Glossary: Amending Legislation

Example of Use:

```
<history>
<history-note>The short title of this Act was <amending-operation>amended</amending-operation>, as
from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision href="ACT-NZL-
PUB.2001-5.BDY.S.5.SS.2">5(2)</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships)
Amendment Act 2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5) <amending-instruction>by substituting the words
<quote.in>Property (Relationships)</quote.in> for the words <quote.in>Matrimonial
Property</quote.in></amending-instruction>.</history-note>
</history>
```

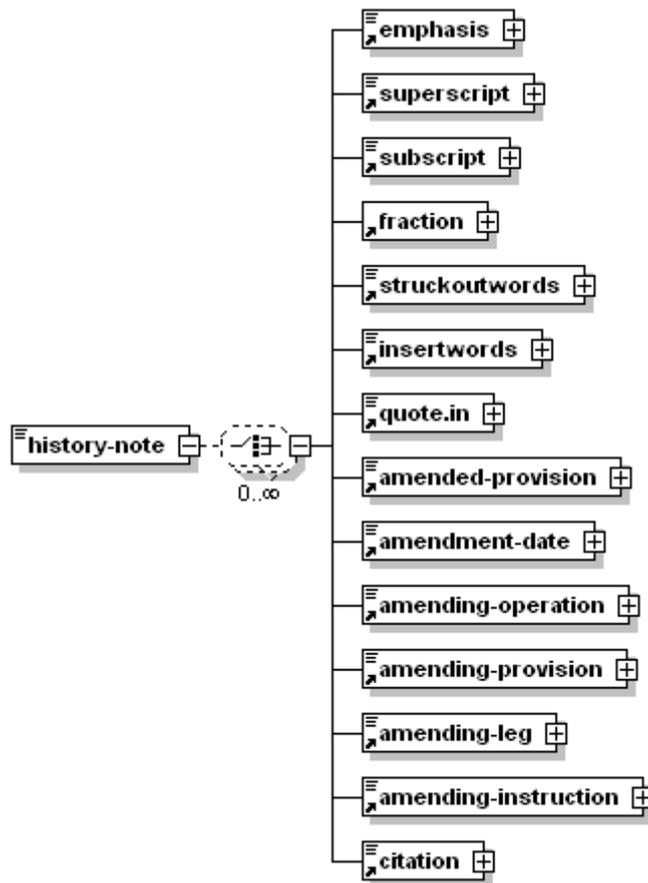
Children: history-note editorial-note

Used in: notes (Acts and Regs only)

Attributes: id

8.38.3 Element history-note

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % history-note.model "(%basic-phrase; | quote.in
    | amended-provision | amendment-date
    | amending-operation | amending-provision
    | amending-leg | amending-instruction | citation)*">
<!ENTITY % history-note.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT history-note %history-note.model; >
<!ATTLIST history-note %history-note.atts; >
```

Description:

This element models information about the manner in which the legislation in question was amended, or references to the legislation, which amended the current legislation. It is not to be confused with element <editorial-note>, which is used to mark up more general notes.

Technical Note:

The @id was added to elements <history-note> and <editorial-note> to support production of the index in the older style reprint notes. This attribute is now obsolete.

Example of Use:

<history-note>The short title of this Act was <amending-operation>amended</amending-operation>, as from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision href="">5(2)</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5) <amending-instruction>by substituting the words <quote.in>Property

(Relationships)</quote.in> for the words <quote.in>Matrimonial Property</quote.in></amending-instruction>.</history-note>

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords quote.in amended-provision amendment-date amending-operation amending-provision amending-leg amending-instruction citation

Used in: history

Attributes: id

8.38.4 Element amended-provision

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amended-provision.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % amended-provision.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amended-provision %amended-provision.model; >
<!ATTLIST amended-provision %amended-provision.atts; >
```

Description:

This element contains a reference to a structure which has been amended.

Technical Notes:

In a History Note, this model captures the label of the amended provision. Only the label(s) of the structure(s) that have been amended go inside this element.

Example of Use:

```
<history-note>Part <amended-provision>1</amended-provision> (comprising <citation>ss <intref>1A to 1L</intref></citation>) was <amending-operation>inserted</amending-operation>, as from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision href="">6</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5).</history-note>
```

Used in: history-note

Attributes: id

8.38.5 Element amendment-date

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amendment-date.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % amendment-date.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amendment-date %amendment-date.model; >
<!ATTLIST amendment-date %amendment-date.atts; >
```

Description:

This element models the date at which the amendment came into force.

Example of Use:

<history-note>Part <amended-provision>1</amended-provision> (comprising <citation>ss <intref>1A to 1L</intref></citation>) was <amending-operation>inserted</amending-operation>, as from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision href="">6</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5).</history-note>

Used in: history-note

Attributes: id

8.38.6 Element amending-operation

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amending-operation.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % amending-operation.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amending-operation %amending-operation.model; >
<!ATTLIST amending-operation %amending-operation.atts; >
```

Description:

This element describes the manner in which the legislation was amended.

Example of Use:

<history-note>The short title of this Act was <amending-operation>amended</amending-operation>, as from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision href="">5(2)</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5) <amending-instruction>by substituting the words <quote.in>Property (Relationships)</quote.in> for the words <quote.in>Matrimonial Property</quote.in></amending-instruction>.</history-note>

Used in: history-note

Attributes: id

8.38.7 Element amending-provision

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amending-provision.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % amending-provision.atts "%href.att;
%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amending-provision %amending-provision.model; >
<!ATTLIST amending-provision %amending-provision.atts; >
```

Description:

This element models a reference to the provision by which the legislation was amended.

Technical Notes:

May also contain a link to the provision in question, using the href attribute.

See Glossary: Amending Legislation

Example of Use:

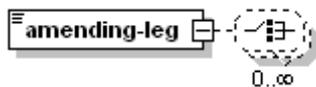
<history-note>The short title of this Act was <amending-operation>amended</amending-operation>, as from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision href="">5(2)</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5) <amending-instruction>by substituting the words <quote.in>Property (Relationships)</quote.in> for the words <quote.in>Matrimonial Property</quote.in></amending-instruction>.</history-note>

Used in: history-note

Attributes: href id

8.38.8 Element amending-leg

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amending-leg.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % amending-leg.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amending-leg %amending-leg.model; >
<!ATTLIST amending-leg %amending-leg.atts; >
```

Description:

This element contains the title of the legislation by which the legislation in question was amended.

See Glossary: Amending Legislation

Example of Use:

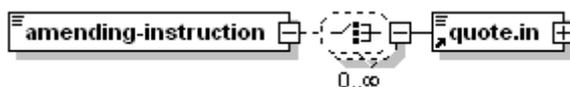
<history-note>The short title of this Act was <amending-operation>amended</amending-operation>, as from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision href="">5(2)</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act 2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5) <amending-instruction>by substituting the words <quote.in>Property (Relationships)</quote.in> for the words <quote.in>Matrimonial Property</quote.in></amending-instruction>.</history-note>

Used in: history-note

Attributes: id

8.38.9 Element amending-instruction

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amending-instruction.model "(#PCDATA | quote.in)*" >
<!ENTITY % amending-instruction.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amending-instruction %amending-instruction.model; >
<!ATTLIST amending-instruction %amending-instruction.atts; >
```

Description:

This element is used when the history-note goes into greater detail about how the legislation was amended.

Example of Use:

```
<history-note>The short title of this Act was <amending-operation>amended</amending-operation>, as
from <amendment-date>1 February 2002</amendment-date>, by s <amending-provision
href="">5(2)</amending-provision> <amending-leg>Property (Relationships) Amendment Act
2001</amending-leg> (2001 No 5) <amending-instruction>by substituting the words <quote.in>Property
(Relationships)</quote.in> for the words <quote.in>Matrimonial Property</quote.in></amending-
instruction>.</history-note>
```

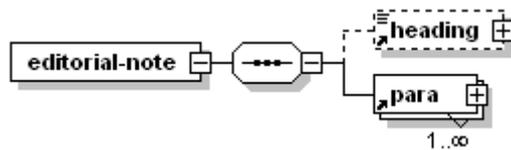
Children: quote.in

Used in: history-note

Attributes: id

8.38.10 Element editorial-note

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % editorial-note.model "(heading?, para+)" >
<!ENTITY % editorial-note.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT editorial-note %editorial-note.model; >
<!ATTLIST editorial-note %editorial-note.atts; >
```

Description:

This element models notes that are pertinent to the paragraph or section in question. The heading is optional.

Technical Note:

Id attribute was added to elements history-note and editorial-note to support production of the older style index in reprint notes. This attribute is now obsolete.

Example of Use:

```
<editorial-note>
<para><text>See <citation>Part <intref>9</intref> of this Act</citation> as to the transitional and saving
povisions.</text> </para>
</editorial-note>
```

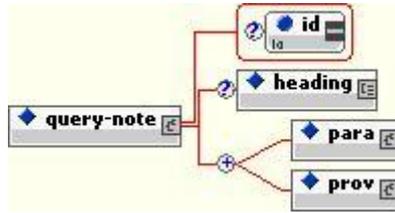
Children: heading para

Used in: history notes

Attributes: id

8.38.11 Element query-note

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % query-note.model "(heading?, (para | prov)+)" >
<!ENTITY % query-note.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT query-note %query-note.model; >
<!ATTLIST query-note %query-note.atts; >
```

Description:

Drafters’ query notes. Allows an optional heading and a series of paragraphs. Also allows the drafter to use the prov model as the basis for drafting alternative forms of a provision inside the query-note.

Technical Notes:

Query notes are not to be shown in published documents.

Example of Use:

```
<query-note>
<para><text>Has someone checked this?</text></para>
</query-note>
```

Children: heading para prov

Used in: notes

Attributes: id

8.39. Amends Notes

8.39.1 Overview

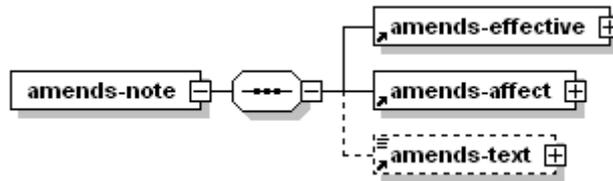
The amend-notes model supports the requirements for skeletonisation, and provides the basis for future applications to support the compilation process. The contents of a memo prepared by Mark Bacon on 16 May 2002 “Intended use of *amends-note* as defined in PCO DTDs” has been reproduced in Appendix I. Appendix I describes the operation of *amends-note* in some detail along with proposed simpler models.

The *amends-note* elements will not be required during the initial data-acquisition phase.

On a go forward basis, the *amends-note* element will not be employed for the ability to skeletonise legislation, however it may be used to populate an Editorial Diary system that will be used for compilation tracking. The *<amends-note>* element will be reviewed in the context of the development of an Editorial Diary.

8.39.2 Element amends-note

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amends-note.model "(amends-effective, amends-affect,
amends-text?)" >
<!ENTITY % amends-note.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amends-note %amends-note.model; >
<!ATTLIST amends-note %amends-note.atts; >
```

Description:

amends-note is for information on the amending effect of a provision - info to be:

- extracted to compile editorial diary; and
- used for skeletonising the provision as the amendment comes into effect.

Technical Note:

Skeltonisation of amending provisions in future reprints will not include production of a note of the effect of the provisions. Element amends-text is therefore redundant but has been retained as an optional element for possible future use.

Example of Use:

```
<amends-note>
<amends-effective>
<authority>Authority for this amendment to come into effect will be given by order in council</authority>
<date>...</date>
</amends-effective>
...
</amends-note>
```

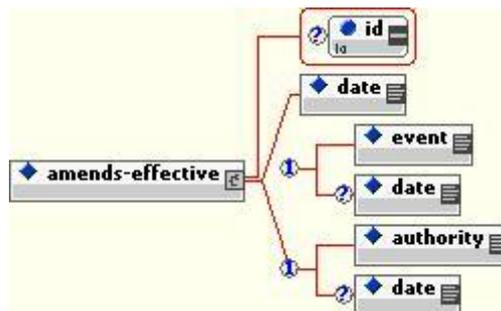
Children: amends-effective amends-affect amends-text

Used in: notes (Acts and Regs only)

Attributes: id

8.39.3 Element amends-effective

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amends-effective.model "(date | (event, date?) |
(authority, date?))" >
<!ELEMENT amends-effective %amends-effective.model; >
```

Description:

Element <amends-effective> contains information to determine the date an amendment executes.

Example of Use:

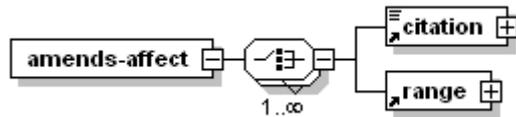
```
<notes>
<amends-note>
<amends-effective>
<authority>Authority for this amendment to come into effect will be given by order in council</authority>
<date>...</date>
</amends-effective>
...
</amends-note>
</notes>
```

Children: date event authority

Used in: amends-note

8.39.4 Element amends-affect

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amends-affect.model "(citation | range)+" >
<!ELEMENT amends-affect %amends-affect.model; >
```

Description:

Element <amends-affect> contains information on what will be affected when the amendment executes.

Example of Use:

```
<amends-affect>
<range>
<citation>
<extref>Sections 49</extref>
</citation>
<citation>
<extref>60</extref>
<leg-title>The Fake Amended Act</leg-title>
</citation>
</range>
...
</amends-affect>
```

Children: citation range

Used in: amends-note

8.39.5 Element amends-text

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amends-text.model "(#PCDATA | citation)*" >
<!ELEMENT amends-text %amends-text.model; >
```

Description:

Element <amends-text> contains the text with which the amending provision will be replaced on execution of the amendment.

Technical Note:

Skeltonisation of amending provisions in future reprints will not include production of a note of the effect of the provisions. Element amends-text is therefore redundant but has been retained as an optional element for possible future use. See element <amends-note>.

Example of Use:

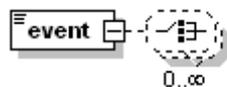
```
<amends-text>Section 2 amended<citation>
<extref>section 32A</extref> of the principal Act.</citation>
</amends-text>
```

Children: citation

Used in: amends-note

8.39.6 Element event

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % event.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ELEMENT event %event.model; >
```

Description:

When an amendment is to come into effect on an event taking place, details of that event are to be recorded in the <event> element. Element <date>s then completed on event taking place. See <amends-effective>.

Example of Use:

```
<notes>
<amends-note>
<amends-effective>
<event>Ratification by United Nations of Cats and Dogs Convention</event>
<date></date>
</amends-effective>
</amends-note>
</notes>
```

Used in: amends-effective

8.39.7 Element authority

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % authority.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ELEMENT authority %authority.model; >
```

Description:

When an amendment is to come into effect by authority of a document yet to be issued, relevant details are to be recorded in the <authority> element. When that document’s issuing date is completed, details in <authority> may be changed. See <amends-effective>.

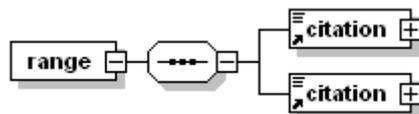
Example of Use:

```
<notes>
<amends-note>
<amends-effective>
<authority>Authority for this amendment to come into effect will be given by order in council</authority>
<date>...</date>
</amends-effective>
...
</amends-note>
</notes>
```

Used in: amends-effective

8.39.8 Element range

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % range.model "(citation, citation)" >
<!ELEMENT range %range.model; >
```

Description:

When amendment affects a range, the <range> element lists start/end points in the range.

Example of Use:

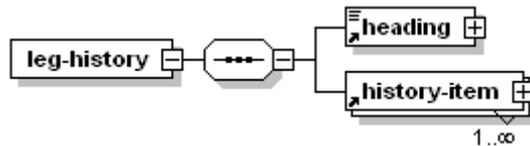
```
<amends-affect>
<range>
<citation>
<extref>Sections 49</extref>
</citation>
<citation>
<extref>60</extref>
<leg-title>The Fake Amended Act</leg-title>
</citation>
</range>
...
```

Children: citation
Used in: amends-affect

8.40. Legislation History

8.40.1 Element leg-history

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % leg-history.model "(heading, history-item+)" >
<!ENTITY % leg-history.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT leg-history %leg-history.model; >
<!ATTLIST leg-history %leg-history.atts; >
```

Description:

This element contains brief historical information about the legislation, which is included as part of the legislation in recent New Zealand Acts. This element is also used in Bar –2 onwards Bills to provide information in regards to the stages of its progress through parliament.

Example of Use: (Act)

```
<leg-history>
<heading>Legislative History</heading>
<history-item>
<date>24 March 1998</date>
<description>Introduction and first reading (Bill 109-1)</description>
</history-item>
<history-item>
<date>6 May 1998</date>
<description>Second reading and referral to Government Administration Committee</description>
</history-item>
...
</leg-history>
```

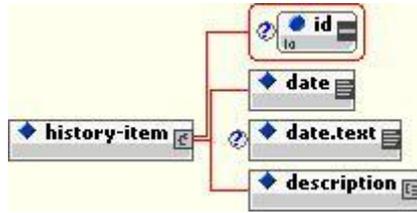
Example of Use: (Bill)

```
<leg-history>
<heading>Legislative History</heading>
<history-item>
<date>22 August 2000</date>
<description>Divided from the Economic Development (Industry New Zealand and Ministry of Economic
Development) Bill (17-2), (Bill 17-3B)</description>
</history-item>
</leg-history>
```

Children: heading history-item
Used in: end (Acts and Bills only)
Attributes: id

8.40.2 Element history-item

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % history-item.model "(date, date.text?, description)" >
<!ELEMENT history-item %history-item.model; >
  
```

Description:

A item in a list of events in the history of a piece of legislation.

Example of Use:

```

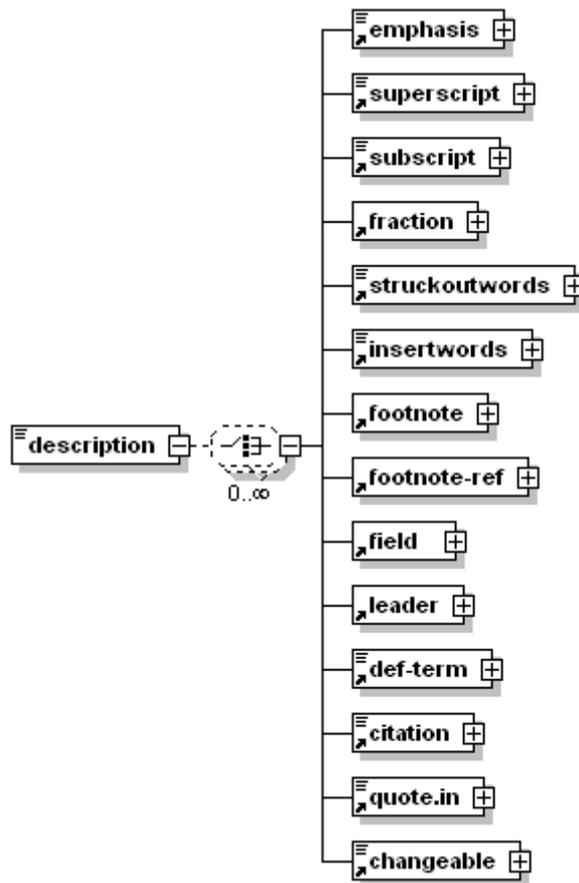
<leg-history>
<heading>Legislative History</heading>
<history-item>
<date>22 August 2000</date>
<description>Divided from the Economic Development (Industry New Zealand and Ministry of Economic
Development) Bill (17-2), (Bill 17-3B)</description>
</history-item>
</leg-history>
  
```

Children: date date.text description

Used in: leg-history

8.40.3 Element description

Diagram: (Bill)



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % description.model "(%phrase;)*" >
<!ELEMENT description %description.model; >
```

Description:

A description of the particular event in the history of a piece of legislation.

Example of Use:

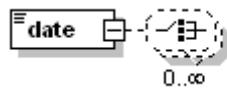
```
<history-item>
<date>22 August 2000</date>
<description>Divided from the Economic Development (Industry New Zealand and Ministry of Economic
Development) Bill (17-2), (Bill 17-3B)</description>
</history-item>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in graphic.inline
changeable (Bills only)

Used in: history-item

8.40.4 Element date

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % date.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ELEMENT date %date.model; >
```

Description:

A date. This element is used inside element <history-item>, and also inside element <amends-effective>.

Example of Use:

```
<history-item>
<date>24 March 1998</date><description>Introduction and first reading (Bill 109-1)</description>
</history-item>
```

Used in: amends-effective history-item
sop (SOPs and Bill-SOPs only)

8.40.5 Element date.text

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % date.text.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % date.text.atts "" >
<!ELEMENT date.text %date.model; >
<!ATTLIST date.text %date.atts; >
```

Description:

Events in legislative history – for example reading of a Bill – may take place over several days, and date-descriptive text rather than a single date value may be required in renditions. E.g.:

“7, 8 December 2007 and 10-15 February 2008”

Element //date.text is used when date-descriptive text is required, allowing content of element //date.text/preceding-sibling::date to be restricted to single, valid date values which may be easily extracted as date metadata.

Example of Use:

```
<history-item>
<date>1999-09-15</date>
<date.text>1, 2&#x2013;4 August 1999 and 15 September
1999</date.text>
<description>Reported from Government Administration Committee (Bill
109-2)</description>
</history-item>
<history-item>
<date>2000-02-29</date>
<date.text>25&#x2013;29 February 2000</date.text>
<description>Consideration of report</description>
```

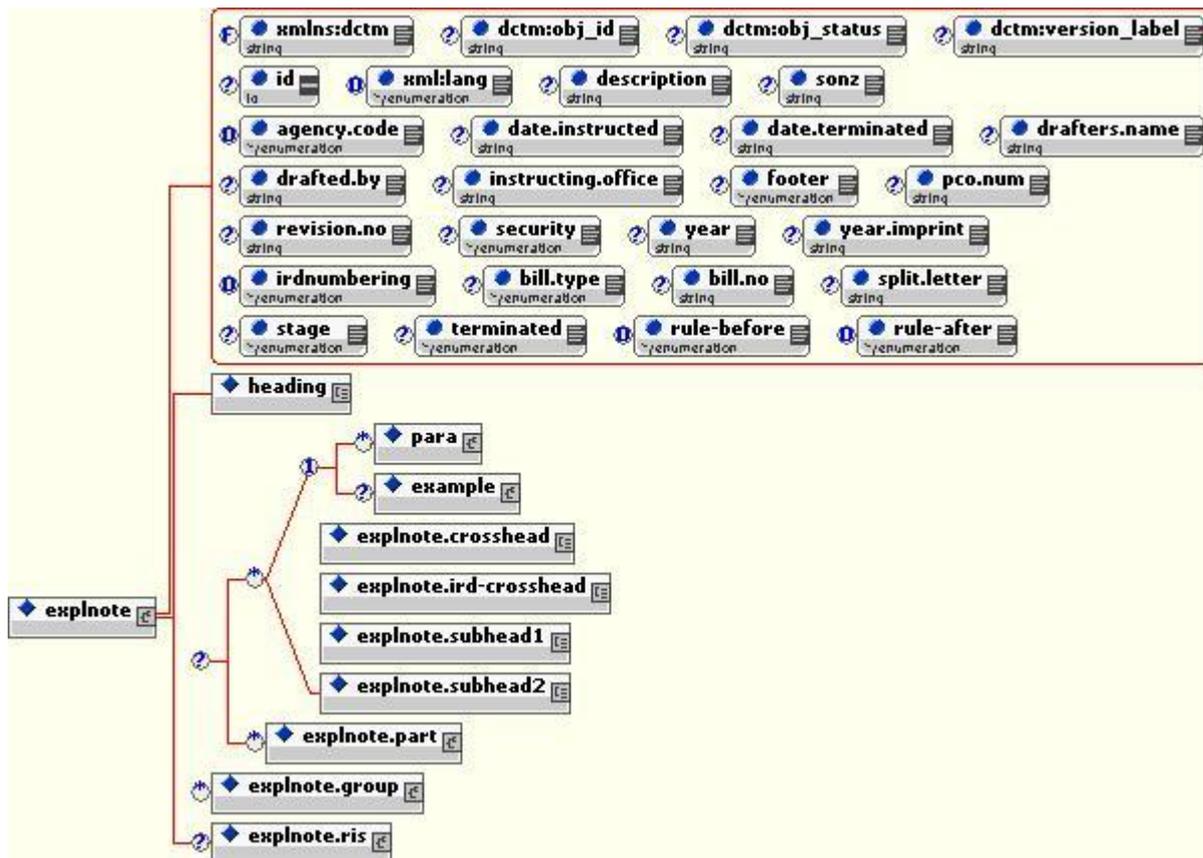
</history-item>

Used in: history-item

8.41. Explanatory notes

8.41.1 Element explnote

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % explnote.model "(heading , (((para* , example?) |
explnote.crosshead | explnote.ird-crosshead | explnote.subhead1 |
explnote.subhead2)* , explnote.part*)? , explnote.group* ,
explnote.ris?)">
<!ENTITY % explnote.atts "
    %global.atts;
    %doctype.local.atts;
    rule-before (yes | no) 'yes'
    rule-after (yes | no) 'yes' " >
<!ELEMENT explnote %explnote.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote %explnote.atts; >
```

Description:

The Explanatory Note preceding a Bill on its first reading is captured with the <explnote> element.

This model is also used to capture the Explanatory note on the end of an SOP.

This element is also used in Regulations to mark up the Explanatory Note. The Explanatory Note is a general summary ,which is not officially part of the Statutory Regulation, but is included with it.

Example of Use: Bill

```
<explnote>
<heading>Explanatory Note</heading>
<explnote.group>
<heading>General Policy Statement</heading>
...
</explnote.group>
</explnote>
```

Example of Use: Regulation

```
<explnote>
<heading>Explanatory Note</heading>
<para><text><emphasis>This note is not part of the regulations, but is intended to indicate their general
effect.</emphasis></text></para>
<para>...</para>
</explnote>
```

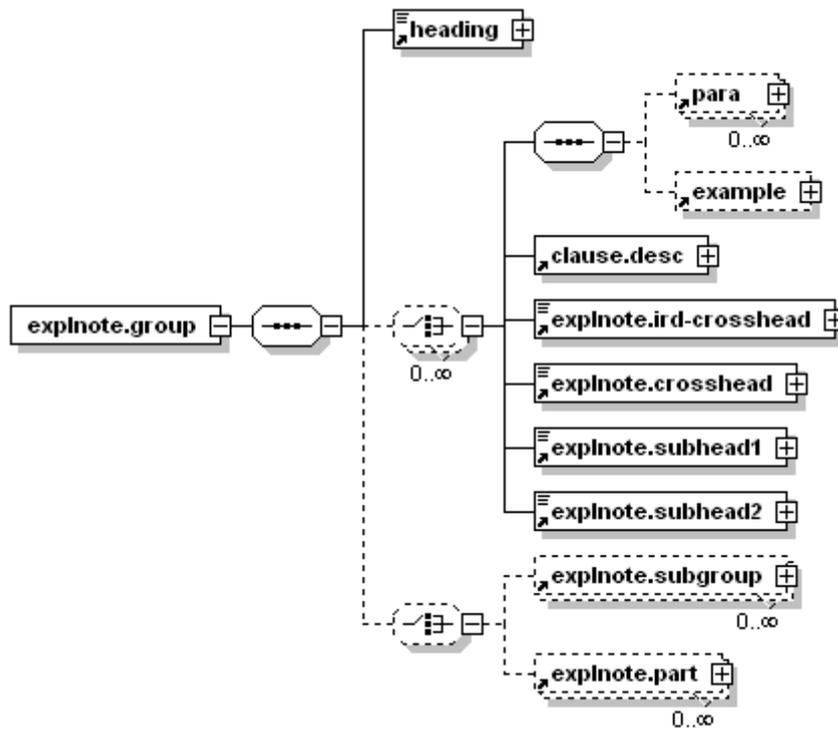
Children: heading para example explnote.crosshead explnote.ird-crosshead
explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 explnote.part explnote.group
explnote.ris

Used in: sop billdetail end (not used in Acts)

Attributes: id xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label drafters
name revision.no xml:lang description sonz agency.code date.instructed
date.terminated drafted.by instructing.office footer pco.num security year
year.imprint irdnumbering act.type act.no assent-copy date.as.at
date.assent date.first.valid hard.copy.reprint official reprints.no
reprints.officer stage terminated rule-before rule-after doc.title
doc.context doc.id in.amend

8.41.2 Element explnote.group

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % explnote.group.model "(heading,
    ((para*, example?) | clause.desc | explnote.ird-crosshead |
    explnote.crosshead | explnote.subhead1 |
    explnote.subhead2)*,
    (explnote.subgroup* | explnote.part*))" >
<!ENTITY % explnote.group.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT explnote.group %explnote.group.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote.group %explnote.group.atts; >
```

Description:

Major group structure in an Explanatory Note.

Example of Use:

```
<explnote.group>
<heading>General Policy Statement</heading>
<para><text>This Bill amends the Matrimonial Property Act 1976 to provide for the ... </text></para>
</explnote.group>
```

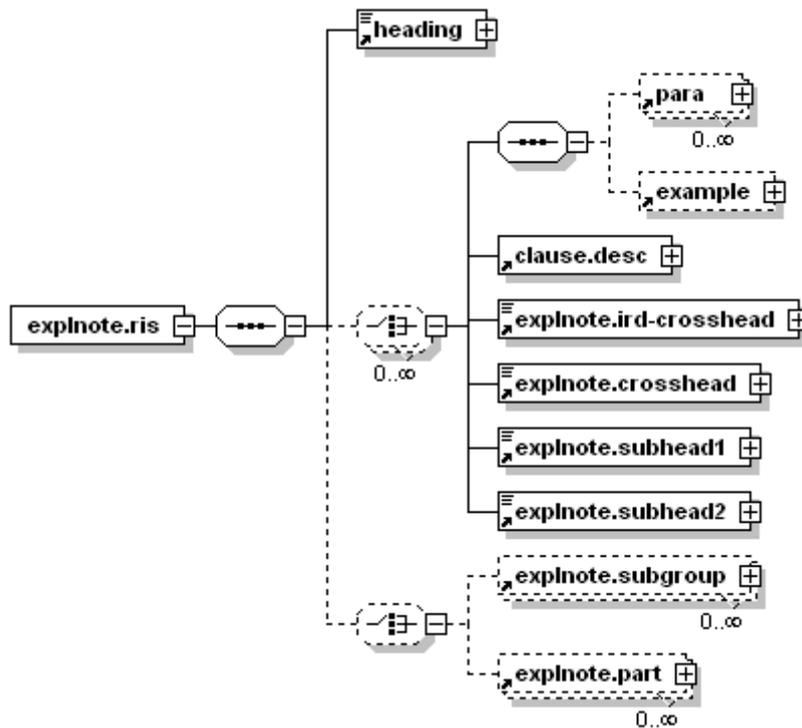
Children: heading para example clause.desc explnote.subgroup explnote.part
explnote.crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2

Used in: explnote

Attributes: id

8.41.3 Element explnote.ris

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ELEMENT explnote.ris %explnote.group.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote.ris %explnote.group.atts; >
```

Description:

The Regulatory Impact Statement (RIS) is used as a major group structure in an Explanatory Note. The RIS is the same as an <explnote.group> but it appears on a new page in the Explanatory Note.

Example of Use:

```
<explnote.ris>
<heading>Regulatory impact and business compliance cost statement</heading>
<explnote.subgroup><heading>Nature and magnitude of problem</heading>
<para><text>The problem that needs to be addressed is the way in which traditional tax drafting has dealt
with the complexity of tax law. The structure on which the...</text></para>
...
</explnote.ris>
```

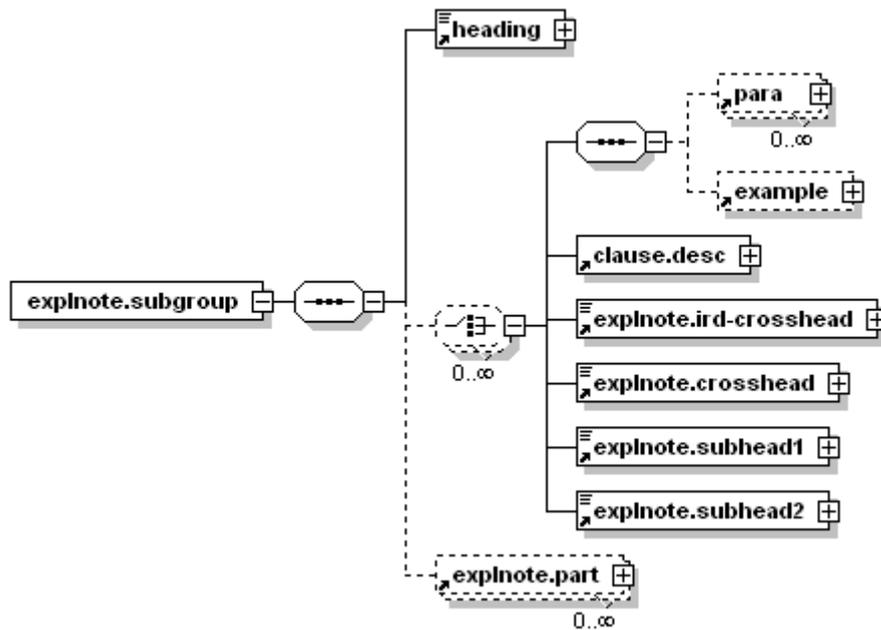
Children: heading para example clause.desc explnote.subgroup explnote.part
explnote.crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2

Used in: explnote

Attributes: id

8.41.4 Element explnote.subgroup

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % explnote.subgroup.model "(heading,
    ((para*, example?) | clause.desc | explnote.ird-crosshead |
    explnote.crosshead | explnote.subhead1 |
    explnote.subhead2)*, explnote.part*)" >
<!ENTITY % explnote.subgroup.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT explnote.subgroup %explnote.subgroup.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote.subgroup %explnote.subgroup.atts; >
```

Description:

A grouping mechanism used within an Explanatory Note. Used to group related information. Typically, this is used to group paragraphs introduced by minor headings within an <explnote.group> structure.

Example of Use:

```
<explnote.subgroup>
<heading>Background</heading>
<para><text>The Matrimonial Property Act 1976 which came into force on ...
</text></para>
</explnote.subgroup>
```

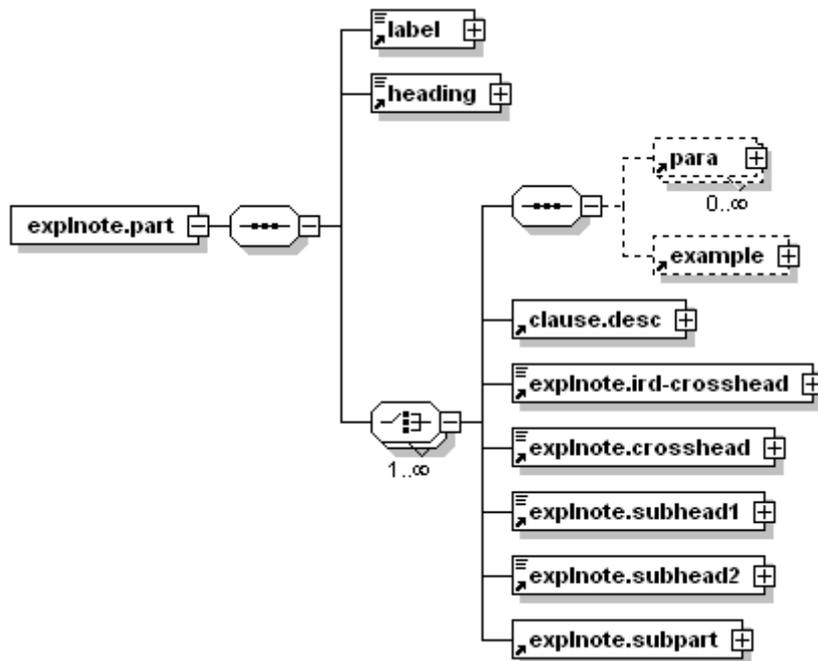
Children: heading para example clause.desc explnote.ird-crosshead
explnote.crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2 explnote.part

Used in: explnote.group explnote.ris

Attributes: id

8.41.5 Element explnote.part

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % explnote.part.model "(label , heading ,
((para* , example?) | clause.desc |
explnote.ird-crosshead | explnote.crosshead |
explnote.subhead1 | explnote.subhead2 |
explnote.subpart)+)">
<!ENTITY % explnote.part.atts "
%dtmatts;
%id.att;
%lang.att;
drafters.name CDATA #IMPLIED
revision.no CDATA #IMPLIED">
<!ELEMENT explnote.part %explnote.part.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote.part %explnote.part.atts; >

```

Description:

Used to capture the data when a Part from the Bill is being discussed within the Explanatory Note. These are typically identified by the Part number and heading being used to introduce the discussion paragraphs.

Example of Use: Note: in this example autonumbering is on, hence labels are empty.

```

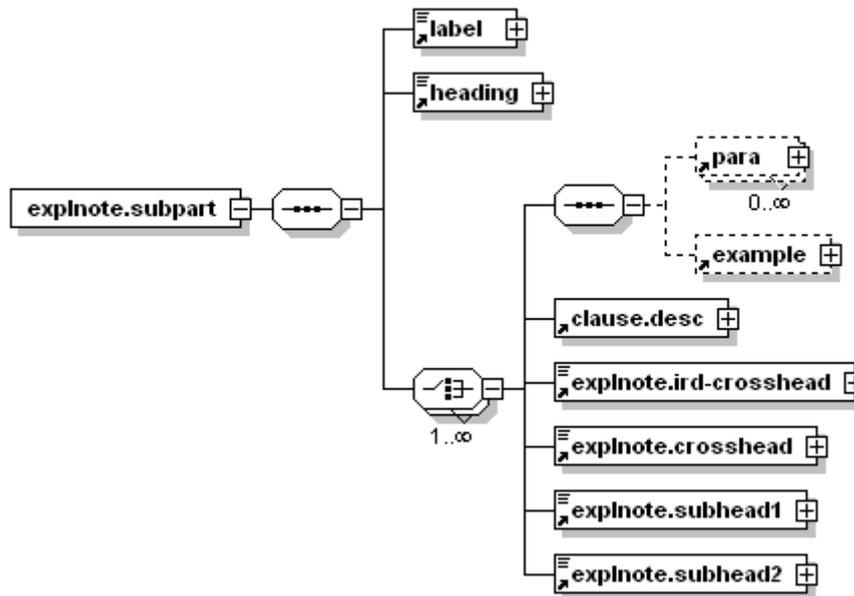
<explnote.part><label></label>
<heading>Preliminary provisions</heading>
<clause.desc>
<para><text><citation><intref>Clause 2</intref></citation> is the commencement clause. Most clauses will
come into force on the day after the date on which the Bill receives the Royal assent.
...
</text></para>
</clause.desc>
...
</explnote.part>

```

- Children:** label heading para example clause.desc explnote.ird-crosshead
explnote.crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2
explnote.subpart
- Used in:** explnote explnote.group explnote.ris explnote.subgroup
- Attributes:** xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label id xml:lang
drafters.name revision.no

8.41.6 Element explnote.subpart

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % explnote.subpart.model "(label , heading ,
((para* , example?) | clause.desc |
explnote.ird-crosshead | explnote.crosshead |
explnote.subhead1 | explnote.subhead2)+)">
<!ENTITY % explnote.subpart.atts "
%dictmatts;
%id.att;
%lang.att;
drafters.name CDATA #IMPLIED
revision.no CDATA #IMPLIED" >
<!ELEMENT explnote.subpart %explnote.subpart.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote.subpart %explnote.subpart.atts; >
```

Description:

When sub parts are being discussed within a bill, they will be captured by the <explnote.subpart> element.

Example of Use: Note: in this example autonumbering is on, hence labels are empty.

```
<explnote.subpart>
<label></label><heading>Clauses in original Bills</heading>
<clause.desc>
<para><text><citation><intref>Clause 8</intref></citation> is a clause with multiple paragraph
levels.</text></para>
</clause.desc>
```

```
<clause.desc><para><text><citation><intref>Clause 9</intref></citation> is a clause that has paragraph
headings.</text></para>
</clause.desc>
```

...

```
<clause.desc><para><text><citation><intref>Clauses 14 and 15</intref></citation> contain compare
references of different lengths.</text></para>
</clause.desc>
```

```
</explnote.subpart>
```

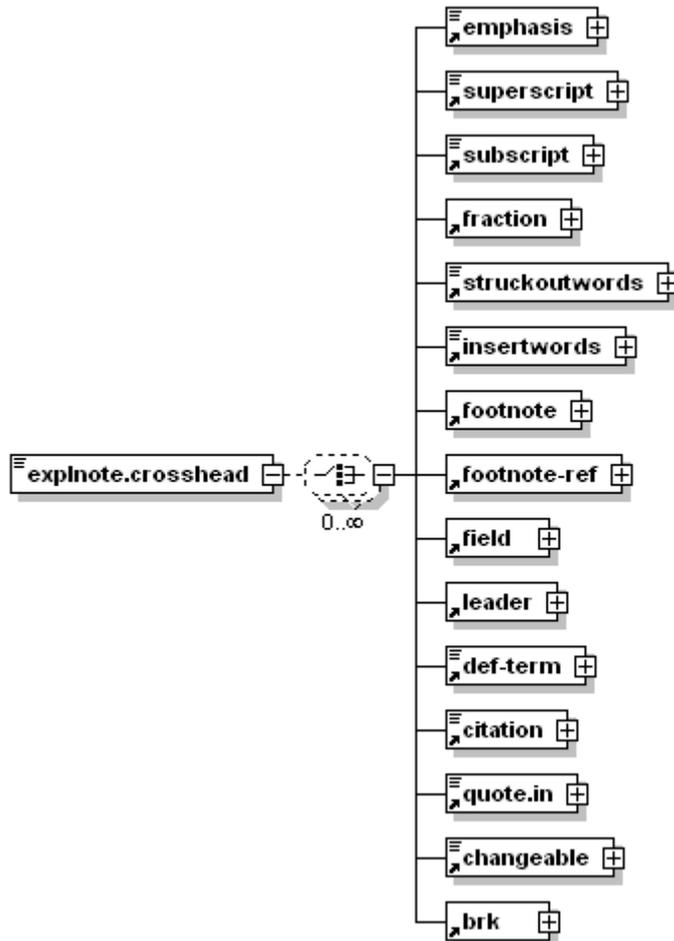
Children: label heading para example clause.desc explnote.ird-crosshead
explnote.crosshead explnote.subhead1 explnote.subhead2

Used in: explnote.part

Attributes: xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label drafters name
revision.no id xml:lang

8.41.7 Elements explnote.crosshead, explnote.ird-crosshead, explnote.subhead1,
explnote.subhead2

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ELEMENT explnote.crosshead %heading.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote.crosshead %heading.atts; >

<!ELEMENT explnote.ird-crosshead %heading.model; >
```

```

<!ATTLIST explnote.ird-crosshead %heading.atts; >

<!ELEMENT explnote.subhead1 %heading.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote.subhead1 %heading.atts; >

<!ELEMENT explnote.subhead2 %heading.model; >
<!ATTLIST explnote.subhead2 %heading.atts; >

```

Description:

A set of general crossheadings unrelated to Parts or Subparts. More likely to be used in a Regulation than in a Bill or SOP. Like crossheadings in the body of legislation, these are floating structures. The level 2 subhead is generally subordinate to the level 1 subhead, which in turn is generally subordinate to the crosshead, however, these rules cannot be applied or validated via the DTD.

Example of Use:

```

<explnote.crosshead>Amendments to Matrimonial Property Act 1976</explnote.crosshead>
<explnote.subhead1>Extension to de facto partners (including same-sex partners)</explnote.subhead1>
<para><text>This SOP proposes to extend ...</text></para>
...

```

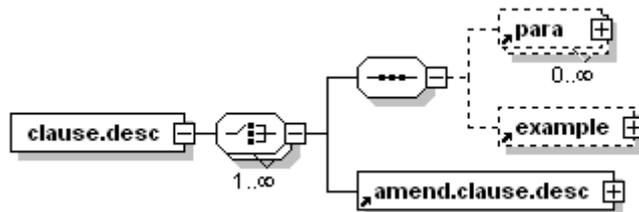
Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
 footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in brk
 graphic.inline
 changeable (Bills, Sops and Draft Regs only)

Used in: explnote explnote.group explnote.part explnote.ris explnote.subgroup
 explnote.subpart

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 xml:lang id
 deletion-status (Regs only)

8.41.8 Element clause.desc

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % clause.desc.model '((para*, example?) |
    amend.clause.desc)+'' >
<!ENTITY % clause.desc.atts ''
    clause.id CDATA #IMPLIED
    drafters.name CDATA #IMPLIED
    revision.no CDATA #IMPLIED
    %id.att;'' >
<!ELEMENT clause.desc %clause.desc.model; >
<!ATTLIST clause.desc %clause.desc.atts; >

```

Description:

The Clause description is used within the clause by clause analysis to capture the discussion, or analysis, of each clause in the bill.

The clause.id is used to capture the ID of the (first) clause to which this clause analysis is referring.

Example of Use:

```
<clause.desc>
<para><text><intref>Clause 1</intref> deals with the Short Title and commencement. The Bill has the same
date of commencement, <changeable> 1 July 1999</changeable>, as the <citation>
<leg-title>De Facto Relationships (Property) Bill</leg-title>
</citation>.</text></para>
</clause.desc>
```

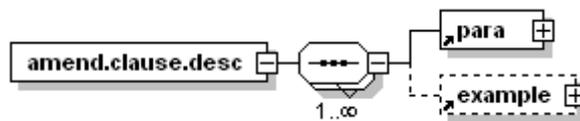
Children: para example amend.clause.desc

Used in: explnote.group explnote.part explnote.ris explnote.subgroup
explnote.subpart

Attributes: clause.id drafters.name revision.no id

8.41.9 Element amend.clause.desc

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % amend.clause.desc.model "(para, example?)+ " >
<!ENTITY % amend.clause.desc.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT amend.clause.desc %amend.clause.desc.model; >
<!ATTLIST amend.clause.desc %amend.clause.desc.atts; >
```

Description:

This item is used to discuss those clauses within the bill that are amendments to a principal Act. The amending clause description is available only within element <clause.desc>, just as an <amend> element is introduced by a clause.

Example of Use:

```
<clause.desc>
<para><text><citation><intref>Clause 21</intref></citation> replaces the existing provisions on debts.
<citation><intref>New section 20</intref></citation> defines the terms <quote.in>personal
debt</quote.in> and <quote.in>matrimonial debt</quote.in>.</text></para>
<amend.clause.desc>
<para><text><citation><intref>New section 20C</intref></citation> sets out what effect the bankruptcy of
one spouse has on the protected interest of the other spouse.
...
</text></para>
...
</amend.clause.desc>
</clause.desc>
```

Children: para example

Used in: clause.desc

Attributes: id

8.42. Reprints

8.42.1 Overview

Official reprints of Acts and Statutory Regulations contain structures not found in the Statute copies. These major structures are

- Cover Reprint Note
- End Reprint Note
- Skeleton Acts and Regulations

There are also differences in the front cover and end sections.

8.42.2 No Square Brackets or Ellipses

The square bracketing (“[text]”) and ellipses (“...”) that appear in some reprints, have been discontinued (See for example *Property (Relationships Act) 1976*, Reprinted as at 1 February 2002). The LENZ DTDs do not provide any elements to support these features.

In legacy data, square brackets and ellipses are represented by character entities, and will be removed by PCO during officialisation.

8.42.3 Element reprint-date

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reprint-date.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ENTITY % reprint-date.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT reprint-date %reprint-date.model; >
<!ATTLIST reprint-date %reprint-date.atts; >
```

Description:

The date of an official Reprint or prospective consolidation. Appears on the front cover of reprinted Acts and Regulations.

Technical Note:

The word “Reprint” is not included in the text of the markup.

Example of Use:

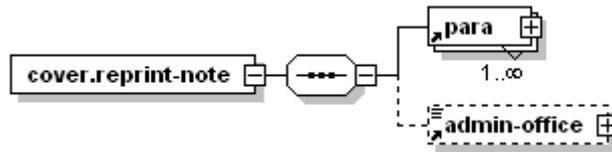
```
<!--Reprint-->
<reprint-date>as at 11 February 2005</reprint-date>
```

Used in: cover (Acts and Regs only)

Attributes: id

8.42.4 Element cover.reprint-note

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % cover.reprint-note.model "(para+, admin-office?)" >
<!ENTITY % cover.reprint-note.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT cover.reprint-note %cover.reprint-note.model; >
<!ATTLIST cover.reprint-note %cover.reprint-note.atts; >
```

Description:

The note that appears on the front page of official reprints or prospective consolidations of Acts and Regulations.

Example of Use:

```
<cover.reprint-note>
<para><text>Changes authorised by section 17C... </text></para>
<para><text>A general outline of these changes ... </text></para>
<admin-office>Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993 is administered in <ministry>Te Puni
K&omacr;kiri</ministry></admin-office>
</cover.reprint-note>
```

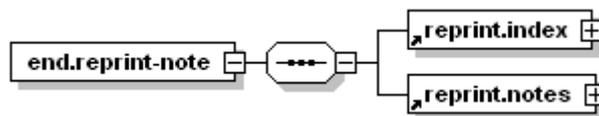
Children: para admin-office

Used in: cover (Acts and Regs only)

Attributes: id

8.42.5 Element end.reprint-note

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % end.reprint-note.model "(reprint.index, reprint.notes)" >
<!ENTITY % end.reprint-note.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT end.reprint-note %end.reprint-note.model; >
<!ATTLIST end.reprint-note %end.reprint-note.atts; >
```

Description:

The notes that appear at the end of a reprint just before the Legislation History.

Example of Use:

```
<end.reprint-note>
<reprint.index>
<heading>Index to notes</heading>
<para>
<list>
<item><label>1</label><para><text>General</text></para></item>
<item><label>2</label><para><text>Status of reprints
```

```

        </text></para></item>
    ...
</list></para>
</reprint.index>
<reprint.notes>
<heading>Notes</heading>
<reprint.note>
<label>1</label><heading>General</heading>
    ...
</reprint.note>
    ...
</reprint.notes>
</end.reprint-note>

```

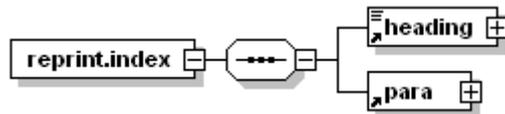
Children: reprint.index reprint.notes

Used in: end (Acts and Regs only)

Attributes: id

8.42.6 Element reprint.index

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % reprint.index.model "(heading, para)" >
<!ENTITY % reprint.index.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT reprint.index %reprint.index.model; >
<!ATTLIST reprint.index %reprint.index.atts; >

```

Description:

The Index to the Reprint Notes; "Index to notes".

Example of Use:

```

<reprint.index>
<heading>Index to notes</heading>
<para>
<list>
<item><label>1</label><para><text>General</text></para></item>
<item><label>2</label><para><text>Status of reprints
</text></para></item>
<item><label>3</label><para><text>How reprints are prepared
</text></para></item>
<item><label>4</label><para><text>Changes made ...</text></para></item>
<item><label>5</label><para><text>List of amendments
...</text></para></item>
</list></para>
</reprint.index>

```

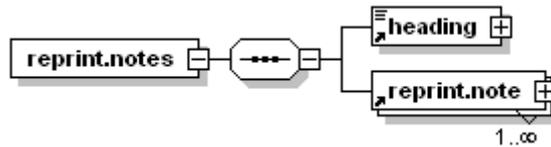
Children: heading para

Used in: end.reprint-note

Attributes: id

8.42.7 Element reprint.notes

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reprint.notes.model "(heading, reprint.note+)" >
<!ENTITY % reprint.notes.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT reprint.notes %reprint.notes.model; >
<!ATTLIST reprint.notes %reprint.notes.atts; >
```

Description:

The body of the Reprint Notes.

Example of Use:

```
<reprint.notes>
<heading>Notes</heading>
<reprint.note>
<label>1</label><heading>General</heading>
...
</reprint.note>
<reprint.note>
<label>2</label><heading>Status of reprints</heading>
...
</reprint.note>
...
</reprint.notes>
```

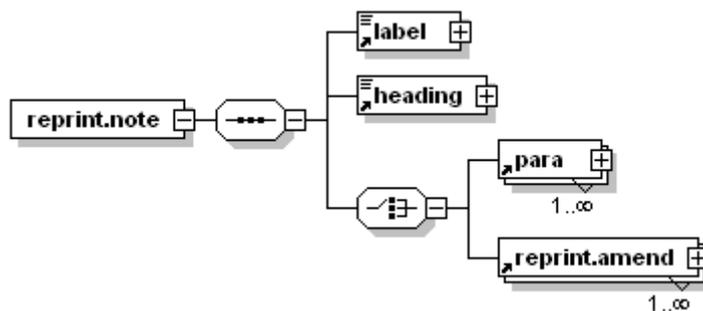
Children: heading reprint.note

Used in: end.reprint-note

Attributes: id

8.42.8 Element reprint.note

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reprint.note.model "(label, heading,
(para+ | reprint.amend+))" >
<!ENTITY % reprint.note.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT reprint.note %reprint.note.model; >
<!ATTLIST reprint.note %reprint.note.atts; >
```

Description:

Numbered items in the End Reprint Notes.

Example of Use:

```
<reprint.note>
<label>1</label><heading>General</heading>
<para><text>This is a reprint of the ...</text></para>
<para><text>Relevant provisions of the amending Act are also reprinted after the principal
Act.</text></para>
</reprint.note>
```

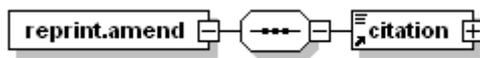
Children: label heading para reprint.amend

Used in: reprint.notes

Attributes: id

8.42.9 Element reprint.amend

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % reprint.amend.model "(citation)" >
<!ENTITY % reprint.amend.atts "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT reprint.amend %reprint.amend.model; >
<!ATTLIST reprint.amend %reprint.amend.atts; >
```

Description:

Individual items in the List of amendments incorporated in a reprint.

Example of Use:

```
<reprint.note>
<label>5</label><heading>Index</heading>
<reprint.amend><citation><leg-title>Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989</leg-title>: <intref>section
17C</intref></citation></reprint.amend>
...
</reprint.note>
```

Children: citation

Used in: reprint.note

Attributes: id

8.43. Skeletons

8.43.1 Entity %skeleton.meta.att;

Declaration:

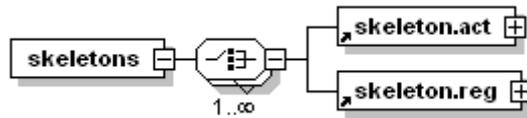
```
<!ENTITY % skeleton.meta.att "skeleton (yes | no) 'no'" >
```

Description:

Identifies structures that have been skeletonised within skeletons at the end of a reprinted Act or Regulation. The value @skeleton="yes" is used to indicate that the content of the provision has been removed and that the remaining content in the provision is a skeleton describing the commenced amendment.

8.43.2 Element skeletons

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % skeletons.model "(skeleton.act | skeleton.reg)+">
<!ENTITY % skeletons.atts "
    %id.att;
    %lang.att;
    %dctmatts;
    %standard-statuses.meta.att;
">
<!ELEMENT skeletons %skeletons.model; >
<!ATTLIST skeletons %skeletons.atts; >
  
```

Description:

Used as a wrapper element to model one or more skeletons. In the case of an Act, this may include skeleton Acts and Skeleton Regulations.

Example of Use:

```

<skeletons>
<skeleton.act type="public" year="2004" act.no="50">
<skeleton.act.cover>
<title>Corrections Act 2004</title>
<assent>3 June 2004</assent>
<commencement>see section 2</commencement>
</skeleton.act.cover>
<body prov-type="section">
...
</body>
</skeleton.act>
</skeletons>
  
```

Example of Use:

```

<skeletons>
<skeleton.reg type="regulation" year="2004" sr.no="315">
...
</skeleton.reg>
</skeletons>
  
```

Children: skeleton.act skeleton.reg

Used by: end (Acts and Regs only)

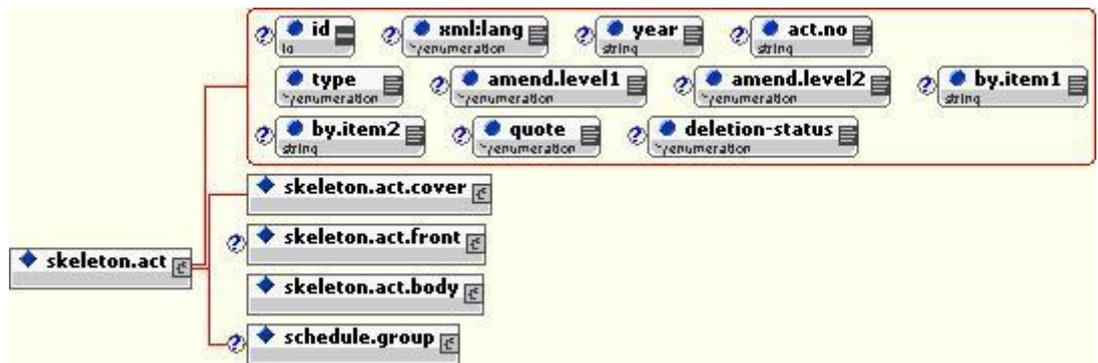
Attributes:

Attribute	Description
id	A unique identifier for the skeletons block
xmlns:dctm dctm:obj_id dctm:obj_status dctm:version_label	Documentum related attributes. See Section 8.2.

Attribute	Description
xml:lang	Optional language identifier. English or Maori. Values (en-NZ mi-NZ). See description of %lang.att; at Section 8.5.3 for more detail
deletion-status	Values Act: (not-in-force repealed expired spent) Values Reg: (not-in-force revoked expired spent) Bill: @deletion-status not used SOP: @deletion-status not used
amend.level1 amend.level2	See section 8.8.
by.item1 by.item2	See section 8.8.
quote	See section 8.8.

8.43.3 Element skeleton.act

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % skeleton.act.model "(skeleton.act.cover, skeleton.act.front?,
skeleton.act.body, schedule.group?)">
<ENTITY % skeleton.act.atts "
  %id.att;
  %lang.att;
  year CDATA #IMPLIED
  act.no CDATA #IMPLIED
  type %act-types; #REQUIRED
  %standard-statuses.meta.atts;
">
<ELEMENT skeleton.act %skeleton.act.model; >
<!ATTLIST skeleton.act %skeleton.act.atts; >

```

Description:

A skeleton Act. Commenced amendments in the amending legislation are shown as skeleton provisions in which the content has been removed and replaced with a note with similar content to the corresponding history note in the amended legislation.

Example of Use:

```

<skeleton.act type="public" year="2004" act.no="35">
<skeleton.act.cover>
<title>Income Tax Act 2004</title>
<assent>7 May 2004</assent>

```

```

<commencement>see Section A 2</commencement>
</skeleton.act.cover>
<body prov-type="section">
<prov><label>A 1</label><heading>Title</heading>
<prov.body>
<para><text>This Act is the Income Tax Act 2004</text></para>
<cf>194 No 164 s A 1(1)</cf>
</prov.body>
</prov>
...
</prov.body>
</prov>
</body>
</skeleton.act>

```

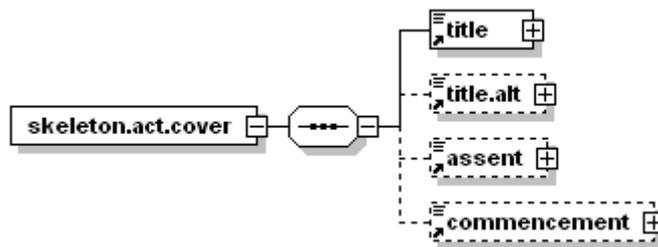
Children: skeleton.act.cover skeleton.act.front body schedule.group

Used in: skeletons

Attributes: id lang year act.no type amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2
deletion-status quote

8.43.4 Element skeleton.act.cover

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % skeleton.act.cover.model "(title, title.alt?, assent?,
commencement?)"
>
<ENTITY % skeleton.act.cover.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att;"
>
<ELEMENT skeleton.act.cover %skeleton.act.cover.model;
>
<ATTLIST skeleton.act.cover %skeleton.act.cover.atts;
>

```

Description:

This element has the same role as element <cover> in a principal Act, but has a more limited set of sub-elements.

Technical Note:

As with Acts, the Act type, year and number are generated from higher level attributes.

Example of Use:

```

<skeleton.act type="public" year="2004" act.no="35">
<skeleton.act.cover>
<title>Income Tax Act 2004</title>
<assent>7 May 2004</assent>
<commencement>see Section A 2</commencement>
</skeleton.act.cover>
...

```

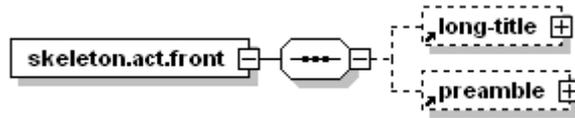
Children: title title.alt assent commencement

Used in: skeleton.act

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 deletion-status quote id

8.43.5 Element skeleton.act.front

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % skeleton.act.front.model "(long-title?, preamble?)" >
<!ENTITY % skeleton.act.front.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT skeleton.act.front %skeleton.act.front.model; >
<!ATTLIST skeleton.act.front %skeleton.act.front.atts; >
```

Description:

This element has the same role as element <front> in a principal Act, but has a more limited set of sub-elements.

Example of Use:

```
<skeleton.act.front>
<long-title><para><text>An Act to amend the Matrimonial Property Act 1976</text></para></long-title>
</skeleton.act.front>
```

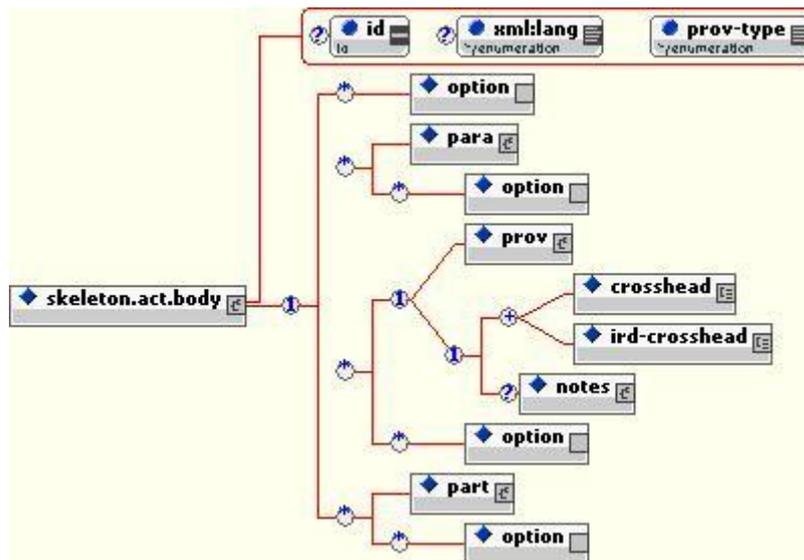
Children: long-title preamble

Used in: skeleton.act

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 deletion-status quote id

8.43.6 Element skeleton.act.body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % skeleton.act.body.atts
```

```

        "%id.att;
        %lang.att;
        prov-type %prov-types; #REQUIRED">
<!ELEMENT skeleton.act.body (%body.model);>
<!ATTLIST skeleton.act.body %skeleton.act.body.atts;>
    
```

Description:

This element has the same role as element <body>, but allows for the body of a skeleton Act, contained in a Regulation, to vary from the Regulation <body> model.

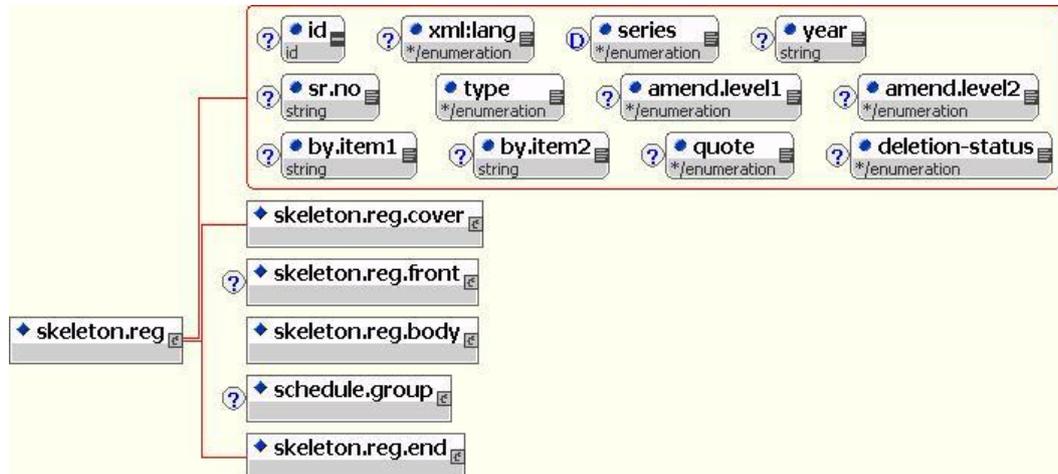
Children: option para prov crosshead ird-crosshead notes part

Used in: skeleton.act

Attributes: id xml:lang prov-type

8.43.7 Element skeleton.reg

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<ENTITY % skeleton.reg.model "(skeleton.reg.cover,
        skeleton.reg.front?,skeleton.reg.body,
        schedule.group?, skeleton.reg.end)">
<ENTITY % series-att
        "series (statutory-regulation | legislative-instrument)
        'statutory-regulation'" >
<ENTITY % skeleton.reg.atts "
        %id.att;
        %lang.att;
        %series-att;
        year CDATA #IMPLIED
        sr.no CDATA #IMPLIED
        type %reg-types; #REQUIRED
        %standard-statuses.meta.atts;">
<ELEMENT skeleton.reg %skeleton.reg.model; >
<!ATTLIST skeleton.reg %skeleton.reg.atts; >
    
```

Description:

A skeleton Regulation. Commenced amendments in the amending legislation are shown as skeleton provisions in which the content has been removed and replaced with a note with similar content to the corresponding history note in the amended legislation.

See Section 4.3.3 regarding definition of the @series attribute.

Example of Use:

```
<skeleton.reg type="regulation" year="2004" sr.no="315">
<skeleton.reg.cover>
...
</skeleton.reg.cover>
<body prov-type="regulation">
...
</body>
<skeleton.reg.end>
...
</skeleton.reg.end>
</skeleton.reg>
```

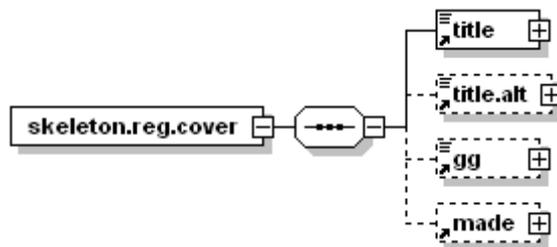
Children: skeleton.reg.cover skeleton.reg.front skeleton.reg.body schedule.group skeleton.reg.end

Used in: skeletons

Attributes: id lang year sr.no type amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 deletion-status quote

8.43.8 Element skeleton.reg.cover

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % skeleton.reg.cover.model "(title, title.alt?, gg?, made?)">
<!ENTITY % skeleton.reg.cover.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT skeleton.reg.cover %skeleton.reg.cover.model; >
<!ATTLIST skeleton.reg.cover %skeleton.reg.cover.atts; >
```

Description:

This element has the same role as element <cover> in a principal Regulation, but has a more limited set of sub-elements.

Technical Note:

As with Regulation, the year and SR number are generated from higher level attributes.

Example of Use:

```
<skeleton.reg.cover>
<title>Misuse of Drugs (Ephedrine and<br/>
Pseudoephedrine) Amendment<br/>
Regulations 2004</title>
<gg>Silvia Cartwright, Governor-General</gg>
<made>
<made.at>At Wellington this 13th day of September 2004</made.at>
<made.present>The Right Hon Helen Clark presiding in Council</made.present>
</made>
</skeleton.reg.cover>
```

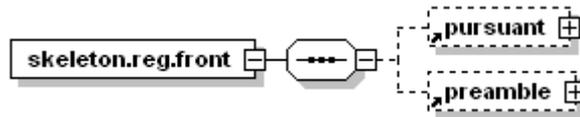
Children: title title.alt gg made

Used in: skeleton.reg

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 deletion-status quote id

8.43.9 Element skeleton.reg.front

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % skeleton.reg.front.model "(pursuant?, preamble?)" >
<!ENTITY % skeleton.reg.front.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
%id.att; " >
<!ELEMENT skeleton.reg.front %skeleton.reg.front.model; >
<!ATTLIST skeleton.reg.front %skeleton.reg.front.atts; >
```

Description:

This element has the same role as element <front> in a principal Regulation, but has a more limited set of sub-elements.

Example of Use:

```
<skeleton.reg.front>
<pursuant>
<para><text>Pursuant to section 37 of the Misuse of Drugs Act 1975, Her Excellency the Governor-General,
acting on the advice and with the consent of the Executive Council, makes the following regulations.
</text></para>
</pursuant>
</skeleton.reg.front>
```

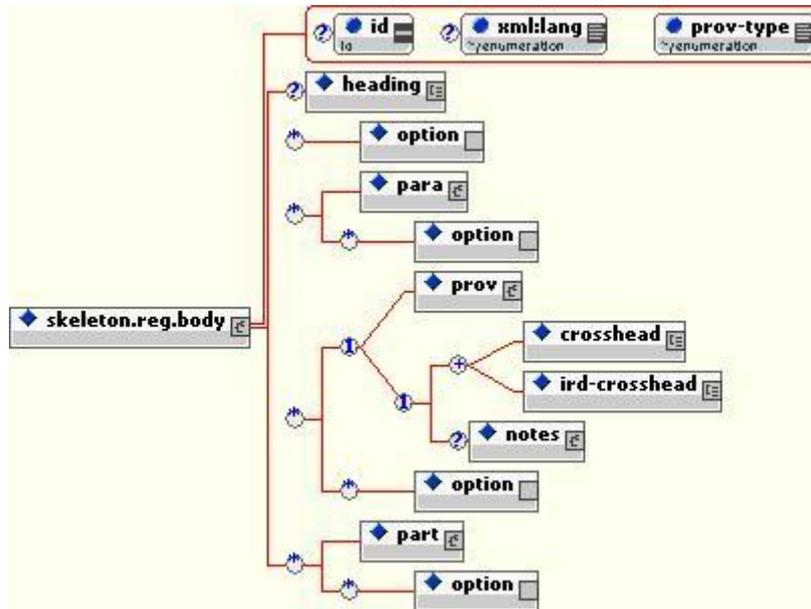
Children: preamble pursuant

Used in: skeleton.reg

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 deletion-status quote id

8.43.10 Element skeleton.reg.body

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % skeleton.reg.body.atts
    "%id.att;
    %lang.att;
    prov-type %prov-types; #REQUIRED">
<ELEMENT skeleton.reg.body (heading?, %body.model;)>
<ATTLIST skeleton.reg.body %skeleton.reg.body.atts;>
```

Description:

This element has the same role as element <body>, but allows for the body of a skeleton Regulations, contained in an Act, to vary from the Act <body> model.

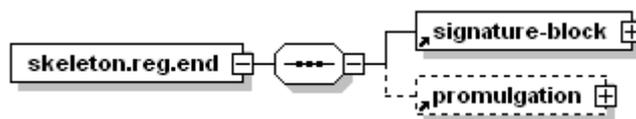
Children: heading option para prov crosshead ird-crosshead notes part

Used in: skeleton.reg

Attributes: id xml:lang prov-type

8.43.11 Element skeleton.reg.end

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<ENTITY % skeleton.reg.end.model "(signature-block, promulgation?)" >
<ENTITY % skeleton.reg.end.atts "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
    %id.att;" >
<ELEMENT skeleton.reg.end %skeleton.reg.end.model; >
<ATTLIST skeleton.reg.end %skeleton.reg.end.atts; >
```

Description:

This element has the same role as element <end> in a principal Regulation, but has a more limited set of sub-elements.

Example of Use:

```
<skeleton.reg.end>  
<signature-block>  
<para><text>Diane Morcom,</text></para>  
<para><text>Clerk of the Executive Council.</text></para>  
</signature-block>  
<promulgation>  
<gazette-date>Date of notification in <emphasis>Gazette</emphasis>: 16 September 2004.</gazette-date>  
</promulgation>  
</skeleton.reg.end>
```

Children: signature-block promulgation

Used in: skeleton.reg

Attributes: amend.level1 amend.level2 by.item1 by.item2 deletion-status quote id

9. TABLE DTD

9.1. Introduction

The Tables DTD is based on the Oasis XML Exchange Table Model, which provides an XML version of the CALs model.

Public Identifier:

"-//OASIS//DTD XML Exchange Table Model 19990315//EN"

Shared Components:

The table DTD has no shared components.

9.2. Entities

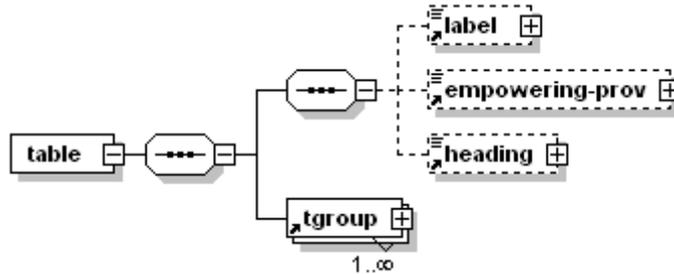
```
<!ENTITY % yesorno 'NMOKEN'>
<!ENTITY % titles 'title?'>
<!ENTITY % paracon '#PCDATA'>
<!ENTITY % tbl.table.name "table">
<!ENTITY % tbl.table-titles.mdl "%titles;,">
<!ENTITY % tbl.table-main.mdl "tgroup+">
<!ENTITY % tbl.table.mdl "%tbl.table-titles.mdl;
%tbl.table-main.mdl;">
<!ENTITY % bodyatt "">
```

Entity Name	Where Used	Description
%yesorno	In ATTLIST of: almost all elements	An attribute declared value for a “boolean” attribute.
%titles	In content model of: table element	The “title” part of the model group for the <table> element.
%paracon	In content model of: entry element	The “text” (logical content) of the model group for <entry>. Is redefined in the top level DTDs.
%tbl.table.name	In declaration of: table element	The name of the “table” element
%tbl.table-titles.mdl	In content model of: table elements	The model group for the title part of the content model for <table> element
tbl.table-main.mdl	In content model of %tbl.table.mdl	Defines a Table as being tgroup+
%tbl.table.mdl	In content model of: table elements	The model group for the content model for <table> element, often (and by default) defined in terms of %tbl.table-titles.mdl and <tgroup>
%bodyatt	In ATTLIST of: table element	Additional attributes on the <table> element (for backward compatibility with the SGML model)

9.3. Table Elements

9.3.1 Element table

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ELEMENT %tbl.table.name; (%tbl.table.mdl);>
<!ENTITY %tbl.table.att " pgwide %yesorno; #IMPLIED ">
<!ATTLIST %tbl.table.name;
    frame (top|bottom|topbot|all|sides|none) "none"
    colsep %yesorno; "0"
    rowsep %yesorno; "0"
    %tbl.table.att;
    %bodyatt; >
  
```

Description:

The top level element of a table.

Technical Notes:

Tables in the LENZ DTDs follow the Oasis XML Exchange Table model.

Example of Use:

```

<table>
  <tgroup cols="2">
    <colspec colnum="1" colname="col1" colwidth="2.75*"/>
    <colspec colnum="2" colname="col2" colwidth="2.75*"/>
  <tbody valign="top">
    <row>
      <entry valign="top" align="center">Proclamation</entry>
      <entry valign="top" align="center">Statutory Regulations Serial
        Number</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
      <entry valign="top" align="left">The Decimal Currency (End of
        Transitional Period) Proclamation 1986</entry>
      <entry valign="top" align="center">1968/86</entry>
    </row>
  </tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>
  
```

Children: label heading tgroup

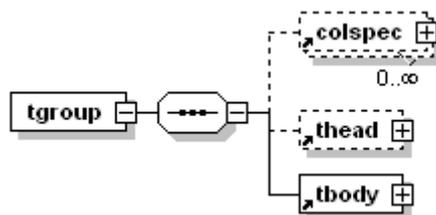
Used in: amend contents eqn figure para proviso
instrument.amend sop.para (SOPs only)

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
id	A unique identifier for the table.
frame	Specifies the borders surrounding the table. The default value is "all", which means that the table will be enclosed in a box.
orientation	The orientation of the table on the page.
pgwide	See definition of %tbl.table.att; This attribute specifies the width of the table on the page. A value of "1" specifies that the table spans the entire width of the page and a value of "0" specifies that the table fits to the current indent level implied by containing elements.
rowsep	Specifies whether the table rows within the group have a border below the row. Declared as %yesorno. "0" means no rowsep, and "1" means that a rowsep is required. DTD does not currently allow single or double line row and colsep styles to be specified, and this might be achieved by using additional values "2", "3" etc.
colsep	Specifies whether the table columns within the group have a border on the right hand side of the column. For interpretation of allowed values, see also rowsep above.
amend.level1	See section 8.8.8
amend.level2	
by.item1	See section 8.8.8
by.item2	
quote	See section 8.8.8
align	See section 8.12.7
fontsize	See section 8.12.7
leading	See section 8.12.7
deletion-status	See sections 8.7.1

9.3.2 Element tgroup

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % tbl.tgroup.mdl "colspec*,thead?,tbody">
<!ENTITY % tbl.tgroup.att "%id.att;" >
```

```
<!ELEMENT tgroup (%tbl.tgroup.mdl;) >
<!ATTLIST tgroup
  cols      NMTOKEN          #REQUIRED
  colsep    %yesorno;        #IMPLIED
  rowsep    %yesorno;        #IMPLIED
  align     (left|right|center|justify|char) #IMPLIED
%tbl.tgroup.att; >
```

Description:

This element identifies a new table section.

Example of Use:

```
<tgroup cols="2">
  <colspec colnum="1" colname="col1" colwidth="2.75*"/>
  <colspec colnum="2" colname="col2" colwidth="2.75*"/>
  ...
</tgroup>
```

Children: colspec thead tbody

Used in: table

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
align	Specifies the default horizontal alignment for all table entries.
cols	Specifies the number of columns in the table group. This is a required attribute.
colsep	Specifies whether the table columns within the group have a border on the right hand side of the column. See also the attribute descriptions in element Table (Section 9.3).
rowsep	Specifies whether the table rows within the group have a border below the row. See also the attribute descriptions in element Table (Section 9.3).
id	

9.3.3 Element colspec

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY %tbl.colspec.att "%id.att;">
<!ELEMENT colspec EMPTY >
<!ATTLIST colspec
  colnum    NMTOKEN          #IMPLIED
  colname   NMTOKEN          #IMPLIED
  colwidth  CDATA            #IMPLIED
  colsep    %yesorno;        #IMPLIED
  rowsep    %yesorno;        #IMPLIED
  align     (left|right|center|justify|char) #IMPLIED
  char      CDATA            #IMPLIED
  charoff   NMTOKEN          #IMPLIED
%tbl.colspec.att; >
```

Description:

This element defines a table column and its associated properties.

Technical Notes:

A colspec only defines a column for its parent group i.e that table section. It does not apply to any later groups.

Example of Use:

```
<tgroup cols="2">
  <colspec colnum="1" colname="col1" colwidth="2.75*"/>
  <colspec colnum="2" colname="col2" colwidth="2.75*"/>
</tgroup>
```

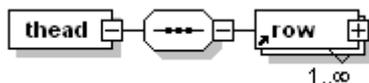
Used in: tgroup

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
align	Specifies the default horizontal alignment for all table entries.
char	Specifies the character that is used for aligning the table column when @align = "char".
charoff	Specifies the character offset when @align = "char".
colname	Specifies the name of the column. The colname in element entry should match one of the column names in a colspec element.
colnum	Specifies the column number.
colsep	Specifies whether the table columns within the group have a border on the right hand side of the column. See also the attribute descriptions in element Table (Section 9.3).
rowsep	Specifies whether the table rows within the group have a border below the row. See also the attribute descriptions in element Table (Section 9.3).
colwidth	Specifies the width of a column. This can be specified with an absolute value in millimetres or a proportional value.
id	

9.3.4 Element thead

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % tbl.thead.att "%id.att;">
<!ELEMENT thead (row+)>
<!ATTLIST thead
  valign (top|middle|bottom) #IMPLIED
  %tbl.thead.att; >
```

Description:

This element identifies the "heading" rows in a table i.e the row or rows which describe the content of the columns.

Technical Notes:

Other than its name, this element is exactly the same as the tbody element.

Example of Use:

```
<thead valign="top">
  <row>
    <entry valign="top" align="center">Column A</entry>
    <entry valign="top" align="center">Column B</entry>
  </row>
</thead>
```

Children: row

Used in: tgroup

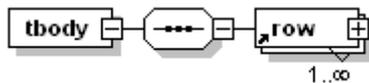
Attributes:

Attribute	Description
Valign	Specifies the default vertical alignment of entries within the thead row(s).
id	

9.3.5

Element tbody

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % tbl.tbody.att      "%id.att; ">
<!ELEMENT tbody (row+)>
<!ATTLIST tbody
  valign      (top|middle|bottom)      #IMPLIED
  %tbl.tbody.att; >
```

Description:

This element identifies the "body" rows in a table i.e the main bulk of the table in question.

Example of Use:

```
<tbody valign="top">
  <row>
    <entry valign="top" align="center">Proclamation</entry>
    <entry valign="top" align="center">Statutory Regulations Serial
      Number</entry>
  </row>
  <row>
    <entry valign="top" align="left">The Decimal Currency (End of
      Transitional Period) Proclamation 1986</entry>
    <entry valign="top" align="center">1968/86</entry>
  </row>
</tbody>
```

Children: row

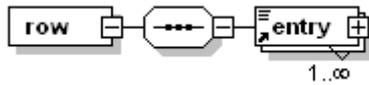
Used in: tgroup

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
Valign	Specifies the default vertical alignment of entries within the rows in tbody.
id	

9.3.6 Element row

Diagram:



Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % tbl.row.mdl      "entry+">
<!ENTITY % tbl.row.att     "%standard-statuses.meta.atts;
                           %id.att;">
<!ELEMENT row (%tbl.row.mdl);>
<!ATTLIST row
  rowsep      %yesorno;          #IMPLIED
  valign      (top|middle|bottom) #IMPLIED
  %tbl.row.att; >
```

Description:

Indicates a table row.

Example of Use:

```
<row>
  <entry valign="top" align="center">Proclamation</entry>
  <entry valign="top" align="center">Statutory Regulations Serial
    Number</entry>
</row>
```

Children: entry

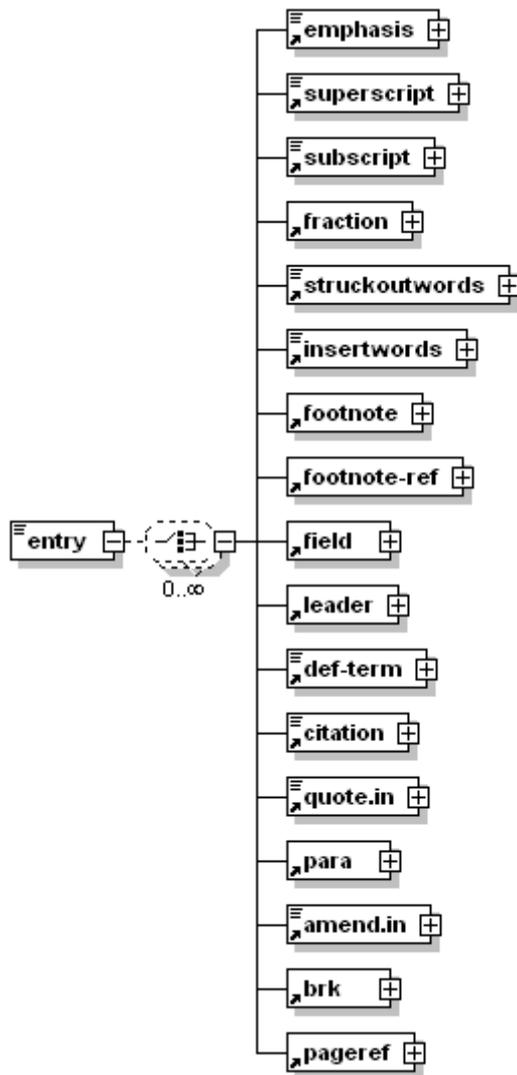
Used in: thead tbody

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
rowsep	Specifies whether the table row has a border below the row. See also the attribute descriptions in element Table (Section 9.3).
valign	Specifies the vertical alignment of entries within the row.
id	
amend.level1	See section 8.8.8
amend.level2	
by.item1	See section 8.8.8
by.item2	
quote	See section 8.8.8
deletion-status	See sections 8.7.1

9.3.7 Element entry

Diagram:



Declaration:

```

<!ENTITY % tbl.entry.mdl      "(%paracon;)*">
<!ENTITY % tbl.entry.att     "%id.att;" >
<!ELEMENT entry %tbl.entry.mdl;      >
<!ATTLIST entry
  colname      NMTOKEN          #IMPLIED
  namest       NMTOKEN          #IMPLIED
  nameend      NMTOKEN          #IMPLIED
  morerows     NMTOKEN          #IMPLIED
  colsep       %yesorno;        #IMPLIED
  rowsep       %yesorno;        #IMPLIED
  align        (left|right|center|justify|char) #IMPLIED
  char         CDATA            #IMPLIED
  charoff      NMTOKEN          #IMPLIED
  valign       (top|middle|bottom) #IMPLIED
%tbl.entry.att; >

```

Description:

A cell in a table row.

Technical Notes:

This element may either contain paragraphs or direct textual content equivalent to that found in the text element, but not both. The contents of a table cell are defined by the %paracon entity.

Example of Use:

```
<row>
  <entry valign="top" align="center">Proclamation</entry>
  <entry valign="top" align="center">Statutory Regulations Serial
    Number</entry>
</row>
```

Children: emphasis superscript subscript fraction struckoutwords insertwords
 footnote footnote-ref field leader def-term citation quote.in para amend.in
 brk pageref graphic.inline
 changeable (Acts, Bills and Draft Regulations only)

Used in: row

Attributes:

Attribute	Description
align	Specifies the horizontal alignment of text in the table cell.
char	Specifies the character that is used for aligning the table cell when @align = "char".
charoff	Specifies the character offset when @align = "char".
colname	Specifies the name of the column. The @colname in element entry should match one of the column names in a colspec element.
colsep	Specifies whether the table cell has a border on the right hand side. See also attribute descriptions in element Table (Section 9.3).
morerows	Specifies row spanning. The value of @morerows indicates the number of additional rows to be included in the span.
rowsep	Specifies whether the table cell has a border below. See also: attribute descriptions in element Table (Section 9.3).
namest	Specifies column spanning. The attribute value is the column name of the start of the span.
nameend	Specifies column spanning. The attribute value is the column name of the end of the span.
valign	Specifies the vertical alignment of entries within the table cell.
amend.level1	See section 8.8.8
amend.level2	

Attribute	Description
by.item1	See section 8.8.8
by.item2	
quote	See section 8.8.8
deletion-status	See sections 8.7.1

APPENDIX I – INTENDED USE OF AMENDS-NOTE

Purpose of amends-note

Amends-note has two purposes:

1. To provide for markup in legislation of information on when the instructions given in amending provisions are to execute, and what they will affect on execution.

Intention: Extraction of information about amendments, and automated compilation as an "editorial diary" of amendments to be brought into effect - this to assist maintenance of the data.

2. To provide for markup in legislation of information on how an amending provision should be automatically collapsed in reprints/eprints produced after execution of the amendment instructions it contains.

The information described could and probably should be regarded as metadata. Given the architect ure of the DTDs developed for the New Zealand Parliamentary Counsel Office, there should then be no specific provision for it in the DTDs. However in developing the DTDs it was thought that a model available within legislation structures would simplify development of authoring and production systems. It is expected that the information would be kept marked up inline in the legislative content, and that data would be extracted from that inline markup for storage as/refreshment of metadata.

Design of amends-note

Content model

To fulfil the purposes outlined above, four pieces of information are required:

- Identification of the amending content object;
- Identification of the amended content object;
- The date on which the amendment takes place; and
- The text that will replace the amending content object when the amendment has taken place.

Identification of the amending content object

Notes/amends-note is to be marked up within the element that is the amending content object:

Example of use:

```
<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2">
  <label>2</label>
  <heading>an amendment section</heading>
  <prov.body>
    ...
  </prov.body>
  <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2~notes">
    <amends-note>
      ...
    </amends-note>
  </notes>
</prov>
```

```

        </amends-note>
    </notes>
</prov>

```

The identifier of the amending content object will therefore be inferred from the value of the id attribute for the grandparent of amend-note.

Identification of the amended content object

The amending content object should contain a marked up reference to the amended content object, but this is not a universal rule. Moreover, the amending content object may contain marked up references to content objects that are not the amended content object. Therefore an identifier for the amended content object cannot be reliably inferred from the content and mark up of the amending content object, and must be explicitly marked up within amends-note.

- Amends-note has child amends-affect to contain expressions identifying the amended content object. An element was chosen for this role rather than an attribute because a single amending content object may amend many other content objects.
- The model for amends-affect has been defined as:

```
(citation | range)+
```

The model for range has been defined as:

```
(citation,citation)
```

Range is to be used where an amending content object amends a range of other content objects - eg "sections 49 to 60". Within range the first instance of citation marks up the start of the range, and the second marks up the end of the range.

Element citation has been used so that any authoring system features developed to assist marking up citation in the body of the legislation can also be used to assist marking up amends-affect.

Note: Amended content objects may not formally exist in the system at the time amends-affect is marked up. In that case it will not be possible to provide an href attribute for xref and leg-title elements within amends-affect/citation. The editorial diary should record unresolved xrefs and leg-titles so they may be brought up for revision on the relevant content objects entering the system.

Note: Some amending content objects may amend all legislation - eg "substitute 'dog' for 'cat' wherever it occurs". In that case it is expected that citation would contain plain text.

Example of Use:

```

<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2">
  <label>2</label>
  <heading>an amendment section</heading>
  <prov.body>
    ...
  </prov.body>
  <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2~notes">
    <amends-note>
      <amends-effective>
        ...
      </amends-effective>
      <amends-affect>
        <citation>
          <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.32A">

```

```

        Section 32A</xref>
        <leg-title href="act~1999~1999">
            The Fake Amended Act</leg-title>
        </citation>
    </amends-affect>
    <amends-text>
        ...
    </amends-text>
    </amends-note>
</notes>
</prov>
<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.3">
    <label>3</label>
    <heading>another amendment section</heading>
    <prov.body>
        ...</para>
    </prov.body>
    <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.3~notes">
        <amends-note>
            <amends-effective>
                ...
            </amends-effective>
            <amends-affect>
                <range>
                    <citation>
                        <xref
                            href="act~1999~1999~body~s.49"
                            >Sections 49</xref>
                    </citation>
                    <citation>
                        <xref
                            href="act~1999~1999~body~s.60"
                            >60</xref>
                        <leg-title href="act~1999~1999">
                            The Fake Amended Act
                        </leg-title>
                    </citation>
                </range>
            </amends-affect>
            <amends-text>
                ...
            </amends-text>
        </amends-note>
    </notes>
</prov>

```

The identifiers of amended content objects will be:

- Href attribute of element xref in context .../notes/amends-note/amends-affect/citation; or
- Href attribute of element leg-title in context .../notes/amends-note/amends-affect/citation (ie where instructions in amending content object indicate the amendment applies to an entire Act/regulation); or

- The textual content of .../notes/amends-note/amends-affect/citation where the amended content object is not yet formally a part of the system, and no id value is yet available for it; or
- The textual content of .../notes/amends-note/amends-affect/citation where the amendment affects a data set for which the system can supply no id - eg amendments that affect all legislation.

The date on which the amendment takes place

Three possible methods have been recognised for bringing an amendment into effect:

- On a date stipulated in or inferred from the legislation containing the amending content object;
- On a date to be stipulated in or inferred from legislation other than that containing the amending content object (eg "Subsection (1) of this section shall come into force on a date to be appointed by the Governor-General by Order in Council"); and
- On a date relative to that of an event (eg "These regulations, which come into effect on the 28th day after their notification in the Gazette, amend the Fisheries (Southland and Sub-Antarctic Areas Amateur Fishing) Regulations 1991 ...").

Amends-note has child amends-effective to contain expressions identifying the amended content object. The model for amends-effective is.

(date | (event,date) | (authority, date))

- Where the date amending instructions are to be executed is stipulated in or inferred from the legislation containing the amending content object, the markup will be:

.../amends-note/amends-effective/date.

- Where the date amending instructions are to be executed is to be stipulated in or inferred from legislation other than that containing the amending content object, the markup will be:

.../amends-note/amends-effective/authority/date.

That the amendment will be brought into effect by another piece of legislation is known, but what that legislation will be, and the date it provides, are usually not. Initially then the content of element authority will be a plain text record of the fact that the amendment is to be brought into effect by another piece of legislation, and element date will be empty. On the legislation issuing that brings the amendment into effect, the content of both authority and date would be revised.

- Where the date amending instructions are to be executed is relative to that of an event, the markup will be:

.../amends-note/amends-effective/event/date.

The event will be described in the amending legislation, but its date will be unknown. The content of element event will be a plain text description of the event, and element date will be empty. On the event taking place, the content of date would be revised.

Example of use:

```
<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2">
```

```

<label>2</label>
<heading>an amendment section</heading>
<prov.body>
...
</prov.body>
<notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2~notes">
  <amends-note>
    <amends-effective>
      <date>02/02/2002</date>
    </amends-effective>
    ...
  </amends-note>
</notes>
</prov>
<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.3">
  <label>3</label>
  <heading>another amendment section</heading>
  <prov.body>
    ...
  </prov.body>
  <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.3~notes">
    <amends-note>
      <amends-effective>
        <event>Ratification by United Nations of
          Cats and Dogs Convention</event>
        <date></date>
      </amends-effective>
      ...
    </amends-note>
  </notes>
</prov>
<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.4">
  <label>4</label>
  <heading>And ... the last amendment section</heading>
  <prov.body>
    ...
  </prov.body>
  <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.4~notes">
    <amends-note>
      <amends-effective>
        <authority>Authority for this amendment to
          come into effect will be given by
          order in council</authority>
        <date>...</date>
      </amends-effective>
      ...
    </amends-note>
  </notes>
</prov>

```

Replacement Text

In extant official reprints (compilations/consolidations) of legislation, amending content objects whose amendments have come into effect are collapsed, and their content is replaced with a note on the amendment:

“10. This section amended section 9A of the principal Act.”

There is a proposal that in future reprints/eprints amending content objects whose amendments have come into effect will be omitted altogether, or collapse to an ellipsis.

For the present, however, an element amends-text has been defined as a child of amends-note. The model for amends-text has been defined as:

(#PCDATA | citation)*

Example of use:

```

<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2">
  <label>2</label>
  <heading>an amendment section</heading>
  <prov.body>
    ...
  </prov.body>
  <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2~notes">
    <amends-note>
      ...
      <amends-text>Section 2 amended<citation>
        <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.32A">
          section 32A</xref> of the
          principal Act.</citation>
        </amends-text>
      </amends-note>
    </notes>
  </prov>
  <prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.3">
    <label>3</label>
    <heading>another amendment section</heading>
    <prov.body>
      ...
    </prov.body>
    <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.3~notes">
      <amends-note>
        ...
        <amends-text>Section 3 amended a lot of
          sections by substituting the word
          &quot;cat&quot; for &quot;dog&quot; on the
          United Nations ratifying the Cats and Dogs
          Convention.</amends-text>
        </amends-note>
      </notes>
    </prov>
    <prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.4">
      <label>4</label>
      <heading>And ... the last amendment section</heading>
      <prov.body>
        ...
      </prov.body>
      <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.4~notes">
        <amends-note>
          ...
          <amends-text>Section 4 repealed<citation>
            <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.90">
              section 90</xref> in the principal
              Act.</citation>
            </amends-text>
          </amends-note>
        </notes>
      </prov>
    </body>
  </act>

```

Anticipated revisions of the definition of amends-note

It is likely that the content model for amends-note is overly complex, and that the following would be sufficient:

Declaration:

```
<!ENTITY % event.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ELEMENT event %event.model; >

<!ENTITY % authority.model "(#PCDATA)" >
<!ELEMENT authority %authority.model; >
<!ENTITY % range.model "(citation,citation)" >
<!ELEMENT range %range.model; >

<!ENTITY % amends-note.model "((date | (event, date) |
    (authority, date)), (citation |
    range)+, text)" >
<!ELEMENT amends-note %amends-note.model; >
```

The critical datum for identification of amended content objects is the value given as href attribute in citation. It is possible that definition of a new element whose content model was "EMPTY", and had href attribute, would be sufficient for use within amends-note rather than citation. This would mean that the mark up could not contain any verbal description of the amended content object.

Worked Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE act SYSTEM "file:/C:/temp/DTD2xsd/nzact.dtd">
<act act-type="public" assent-copy="no" id="act~2002~2002"
official="no">
  <cover>
    <title>The Fake Act 2002</title>
    <reference>2002 No 2002</reference>
    <admin-office>The Ministry of Imposture</admin-office>
  </cover>
  <toc/>
  <front>
    <long-title>
      <para><text>An Act that's so fake it doesn't even
        bother to use correct ID schema</text></para>
    </long-title>
  </front>
  <body id="act~2002~2002~body" prov-type="section">
    <prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2">
      <label>2</label>
      <heading>an amendment section</heading>
      <prov.body>
        <para><text>This prov amends something</text></para>
      </prov.body>
      <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.2~notes">
        <amends-note>
          <amends-effective>
            <date>02/02/2002</date>
          </amends-effective>
          <amends-affect>
            <citation>
              <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.32A">
                Section 32A</xref>
              <leg-title href="act~1999~1999">
```

```

        The Fake Amended Act</leg-title>
    </citation>
</amends-affect>
<amends-text>Section 2 amended<citation>
    <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.32A">
        section 32A</xref> of the
        principal Act.</citation>
</amends-text>
</amends-note>
</notes>
</prov>
<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.3">
    <label>3</label>
    <heading>another amendment section</heading>
    <prov.body>
        <para><text>This prov amends a range of things, and
            a list of things, on an external event
            taking place.</text></para>
    </prov.body>
    <notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.3~notes">
        <amends-note>
            <amends-effective>
                <event>Ratification by United Nations of
                    Cats and Dogs Convention</event>
                <date>??/??/??</date>
            </amends-effective>
            <amends-affect>
                <range>
                    <citation>
                        <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.49">
                            Sections 49</xref>
                    </citation>
                    <citation>
                        <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.60">
                            60</xref>
                        <leg-title href="act~1999~1999">
                            The Fake Amended Act
                        </leg-title>
                    </citation>
                </range>
                <citation>
                    <xref href="act~1998~0000~body~s.70">
                        Section 70</xref>
                    <leg-title href="act~1998~0000">The
                        Different Fake Amended Act
                    </leg-title>
                </citation>
            </amends-affect>
            <amends-text>Section 3 amended a lot of
                sections by substituting the word
                &quot;cat&quot; for &quot;dog&quot; on the
                United Nations ratifying the Cats and Dogs
                Convention.</amends-text>
        </amends-note>
    </notes>
</prov>
<prov id="act~2002~2002~body~s.4">
    <label>4</label>
    <heading>And ... the last amendment section</heading>
    <prov.body>
        <para><text>This prov repeals one section in the

```

```

principal act, on an order issuing that
brings the amendment into effect.</text></para>
</prov.body>
<notes id="act~2002~2002~body~s.4~notes">
  <amends-note>
    <amends-effective>
      <authority>Authority for this amendment to
        come into effect will be given in a
        separate document</authority>
      <date>??/??/??</date>
    </amends-effective>
    <amends-affect>
      <citation>
        <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.90">
          Section 90</xref>
        </citation>
      </amends-affect>
      <amends-text>Section 4 repealed<citation>
        <xref href="act~1999~1999~body~s.90">
          section 90</xref> in the principal
          Act.</citation>
      </amends-text>
    </amends-note>
  </notes>
</prov>
</body>
</act>

```

GLOSSARY

Acts

Acts are generally considered “first-order legislation”. From the *Interpretation Act 1999*:
‘ “Act” means an Act of Parliament of New Zealand or of the General Assembly; and includes an Imperial Act that is part of the law of New Zealand:’.

Amending Legislation

Legislation which amends (updates, re-writes) another piece of legislation.

Ancestor

In SGML and XML, the metaphor of a “family tree” is often used. Hence, an ancestor element is an element which contains the current element/attribute, or its parent element, or its parent's parent element etc.

ASCII

American Standard Code for Information Interchange - roughly speaking, most of the characters on your keyboard plus some.

Assent

In New Zealand legislation, the Governor or Governor-General’s approval.

Attribute

Generally speaking, this describes a certain aspect of an element. For example, a “paragraph” element might have a “justification” attribute, which describes the alignment of the paragraph.

Case

A case refers to a written decision by a judge or a panel of judges.

Child Node

In SGML and XML, the metaphor of a “family tree” is often used. Hence, a child **node** is a node within the tag(s) of its parent element.

Clerk

Either (a) A person who keeps the records and performs the regular business of a court or legislative body, or (b) A law clerk, as for a judge.

Convention

An agreement between states, sides, or military forces, e.g an international agreement concerning the treatment of prisoners of war.

Deemed Legislation

Deemed or "Subordinate" Legislation is considered “third-order legislation”, i.e subordinate to Acts and Regulations. Deemed legislation is typically issued by a large and influential organisations.

Descendant

In SGML and XML, the metaphor of a “family tree” is often used. Hence, a descendant **node** is a node which is a child of the current element, or a child of a child element of the current element, or a child of a child of a child of the current element etc etc etc.

DocID

The ID of the **root element** of an SGML or XML document.

DTD

Document Type Definition. A blueprint for how an **SGML** or **XML** document must be structured.

Element

An element is a **node** which may contain plain text (**PCDATA**), attributes, or other elements. It is created by inserting an empty **tag** , or start and end tags, into an XML or SGML document.

Exclusion

Exclusions do not exist in **XML** syntax. An exclusion is an **SGML** construct which prevents a particular element from containing another element (or elements) inside it or any of its **descendant** elements.

Gazette

An official journal. When used in New Zealand legislation, this refers to (taken from the *Interpretation Act 1999*):

‘ “Gazette” means the New Zealand Gazette published or purporting to be published under the authority of the New Zealand Government; and this includes a supplement.’.

#IMPLIED Attribute

The attribute is not required to be specified and may be omitted from the markup

Inclusion

Inclusions do not exist in **XML** syntax. An inclusion is an **SGML** construct which allows a particular element to contain another element (or elements) inside it or any of its **descendant** elements.

Inline

Within a body of text. An inline **element** is one which can occur next to, or within plain text (see **PCDATA**).

Integer

A non-decimal, non-fractional number. that is “1” or “2” but not “2.3” or “¼”. May be positive or negative.

Metadata

Information about information.

Node

In SGML and XML terminology, a “node” is used to refer to any element, attribute, comment, processing-instruction or PCDATA section within an XML document.

NZGLS

New Zealand Government Locator Service. See *New Zealand Government Locator Service (NZGLS) Metadata Standard and Reference Manual* (Version 2.0, 31 August 2001).

Optional Element

The element is not required to appear in the given structure

Parent Element

In SGML and XML, the metaphor of a “family tree” is often used. Hence, a parent element is the element which the current **node** sits within the tags of.

PCDATA

Parsed Character DATA, or, put more simply, plain text. The reason why this is not called something like “text” is because many DTDs have an element called “text”, so plain text is called PCDATA to avoid ambiguity.

Promulgate

To issue or “publicly declare” as law.

Provision

A provision is, in New Zealand legal terminology, typically referred to as a section, rule, clause or regulation. There are other kinds of provisions that are less common in New Zealand legislation, such as orders, rights, articles and items. A provision can be loosely defined as the smallest structure in a legal document, which is self-sufficient, that is does not refer to, and is separate from, any preceding or following paragraphs.

Regulations

Regulations are considered “second-order legislation”, and are generally subordinate to an Act. They can be published alone or as part of a Gazette. From the *Interpretation Act 1999*:

‘ “Regulations” means-(a) Regulations, rules or bylaws made under and Act by the Governor-General in Council or by a Minister of the Crown:(b) An Order in Council, Proclamation, notice, Warrant, or instrument, made under an enactment that varies or extends the scope or provisions of an enactment:(c) An Order in Council that brings into force, repeals, or suspends an enactment:(d) Regulations, rules, or an instrument made under an Imperial Act or the Royal prerogative and having the force of law in New Zealand:(e) An instrument that is a regulation or that is required to be treated as a regulation for the purposes of the Regulations Act 1936 or the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989 or the Regulations (Disallowance) Act 1989:(f) An instrument that revokes regulations, rules, bylaws, an Order in Council, a Proclamation, a notice, a Warrant, or and instrument, referred to in paragraphs (a) to (e):’.

#REQUIRED attribute

The attribute value is required to be specified

Root element

The first element in an **SGML** or **XML** document. The “root” metaphor is used because SGML or XML data is tree-based (i.e heirarchical).

Semantics

In linguistics this is taken to mean “meaning in language forms”. In logic this is “the relationships between signs and symbols and what they represent”. The way that this term is used in relation to **SGML** and **XML** is somewhere in between these two definitions, but can loosely be defined as "meaning in relation to structure".

Sub-Provision

A sub-provision is what is, in New Zealand legal terminology, typically referred to as a ‘sub-section’. For reasons why we don’t call sub-provisions ‘sub-sections’, see **Provision**.

SGML

Standard Generalised Markup Language - a way of describing the **semantics** of information based on structure, not formatting.

Tag

Tags are what elements are made of. These can be empty tags (which in XML look like `<an_element />`, or in SGML like `<an_element>`), or a start tag (`<an_element>`) or an end tag (`</an_element>`). Start tags and empty tags can contain attributes. An empty tag can only be used if the element is defined as being empty in the **DTD**. If the element is not empty, the content of the element is stored between the start and end tags.

UCI ID Scheme

The UCI (Unique Content Identifier) ID Scheme is a way of generating IDs for elements within documents.

XML

EXtensible **M**arkup **L**anguage - a subset of **SGML**, designed to be easier and more programmatically efficient for the Web. XML does not have **exclusion** or **inclusion**, but adds many new features such as **namespace** s. XML is simpler than SGML.

ALPHABETIC INDEX OF ELEMENTS

act	18	act	22
admin-office	197	bill	47
amend	191	regulation	34
amend.clause.desc	248	cover.reprint-note	250
amend.in	193	crosshead	128
amended-provision	226	date	238
amending-instruction	229	date.text	238
amending-leg	228	def-para	147
amending-operation	227	def-term	107
amending-provision	227	denominator	102
amendment-date	226	description	237
amends-affect	232	editorial-note	229
amends-effective	232	emphasis	103
amends-note	231	empowering-prov	168
amends-text	233	enactment	
assent	181	act	180
assent-block	202	end	
authorisation	175	act	25
authority	234	bill	50
bill	43	regulation	38
billdetail	46	end.reprint-note	250
billnote	51	entry	271
billref	67	eqn	206
billref.alt	68	eqn-line	208
billtype	53	event	234
body		example	139
act	24	explnote	239
bill	49	explnote.crosshead	246
regulation	37	explnote.group	241
SOP	63	explnote.ird-crosshead	246
brk	111	explnote.part	244
brk.header	111	explnote.ris	242
cf	140	explnote.subgroup	243
citation	109	explnote.subhead1	246
clause.desc	247	explnote.subhead2	246
clause.ref	69	explnote.subpart	245
colspec	267	external-document	120
comm.appendix	56	extref	219
comm.lev1	54	field	105
comm.lev2	55	figure	210
comm.lev3	55	follow-text	200
comm.quote.leg	56	footnote	221
commencement	181	footnote-ref	222
commentary	53	form	174
contents	215	form.body	176
contents-note	216	fraction	101
conv	169	front	
conv.body	172	act	23
conv.end	173	bill	48
conv.front	170	regulation	36
cover		gazette-date	186

gg	183	pursuant	182
graphic	211	query-note	230
graphic.inline	112	quote	198
graphic-text	212	quote.in	108
head1	163	quoted-heading	199
head2	165	range	235
head3	167	readers-notes	196
head4	167	regulation	31
head5	167	repute	51
head6	167	reprint.amend	253
heading	125	reprint.index	251
history	224	reprint.note	253
history-item	236	reprint.notes	252
history-note	225	reprint-date	249
insertwords	95	row	270
instrument.amend	73	schedule	151
intref	218	schedule.amendments	158
ird.aids	194	schedule.amendments.group1	159
ird-crosshead	130, 194	schedule.amendments.group2	161
issue-authority	187	schedule.amendments.group3	162
item	215	schedule.forms	157
key	189	schedule.group	150
label	134	schedule.misc	156
label-para	148	schedule.provisions	154
label-para.crosshead	133	sig.officer	205
leader	106	sig.para	204
legdetail	188	sig.separator	205
leg-history	235	signature-block	201
leg-title	110	skeleton.act	256
list	213	skeleton.act.body	258
long-title	124	skeleton.act.cover	257
made	183	skeleton.act.front	257
made.at	184	skeleton.reg	259
made.present	184	skeleton.reg.body	262
member	52	skeleton.reg.cover	260
ministry	198	skeleton.reg.end	262
motion	68	skeleton.reg.front	261
notes	223	skeletons	254
numerator	102	sop	60
ocboxnote	50	sop.amend	65
omitted-provs	98	sop.newenact	70
option	99	sop.para	71
pageref	220	sop.part	66
para	142	sop.split	64
part	117	sop.subpart	67
pcnote	188	struckoutwords	97
preamble	177	subheading	127
preamble.headlev2	179	subpart	119
preamble.headlev3	179	subprov	138
preamble-block	178	subprov.crosshead	131
proclamation	35	subscript	104
promulgation	185	superscript	105
prov	136	table	265
prov.body	137	tbody	269
proviso	144	term	195

term.list	195	title.alt	122
text	145	title.former	123
tgroup	267	toc	217
thead	268	variable	209
title	121	variable-def	208